

# **KIM JONG IL BIOGRAPHY**

**2**

# **KIM JONG IL**

## **BIOGRAPHY**

**2**

**PYONGYANG, KOREA**

**JUCHE 95 (2006)**

# **KIM JONG IL**

## **BIOGRAPHY**

**2**

**Foreign Languages Publishing House**  
**Pyongyang, Korea**  
**Juche 95 (2006)**



## CONTENTS

CHAPTER 14. 1974, A PIVOTAL YEAR.....	1
1. Succession of the Revolutionary Cause of Juche .....	1
The People's Wish .....	1
Acclaimed as Kim Il Sung's Successor .....	6
2. For Modelling the Whole Society on the Juche Idea .....	10
February Declaration.....	10
For Modelling the Whole Party on the Juche Idea .....	13
To Make the People Regard Faithfulness as Their Life and Soul .....	18
Intensifying the Work of the Mass Media.....	20
3. Opening Up the New Age of the Speed Campaign.....	24
CHAPTER 15. FOR MODELLING THE ENTIRE ARMY ON THE JUCHE IDEA .....	31
1. As the General Task for Army Building.....	31
2. Party Leadership Is the Lifeline of the People's Army .....	32
3. Unit of Combatants Devoted to Safeguarding Their Leader .....	38
4. With Unparalleled Pluck and Outstanding Strategy .....	46
CHAPTER 16. THE BUILDING OF THE WORKERS' PARTY OF KOREA AS A MOTHERLY PARTY .....	54
1. Protector of the People's Destiny .....	54
Bearing Full Responsibility for the People's Destiny .....	54
Loving Care That Makes People Immortal .....	58
Embracing All the People.....	64
2. As Befitting the Officials of the Motherly Party.....	69

Party Officials Must Become True Servants of the People.....	69
To Make Officials Share Weal and Woe with the People .....	75
A Year of Rectifying Erroneous Work Method and Style.....	81
<b>CHAPTER 17. INHERITING AND DEVELOPING THE REVOLUTIONARY TRADITIONS OF JUCHE IN AN ALL-ROUND WAY.....</b>	<b>87</b>
1. Building Bases for Education in the Revolutionary Traditions .....	87
Construction of the Wangjaesan Revolutionary Site.....	87
To Build a Grand Monument on Lake Samji .....	92
2. Intensifying Education in the Revolutionary Traditions .....	97
3. “Produce, Study and Live like the Anti-Japanese Guerrillas!”.....	102
<b>CHAPTER 18. FOR KOREA’S STYLE OF REVOLUTION AND CONSTRUCTION.....</b>	<b>107</b>
1. New Method of Leadership for Revolution .....	107
2. Initiating the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement .....	111
3. “Give Free Rein to the Revolutionary Spirit of Self-Reliance!” .....	115
4. “Live Our Own Way!” .....	120
<b>CHAPTER 19. DEVOTION TO THE GOOD OF THE PEOPLE.....</b>	<b>123</b>
1. Qualities of an Ordinary Person .....	123
In Casual Wear.....	123
A Catnap and Balls of Cooked Rice .....	127
2. Field Guidance Trips.....	132
In Mines .....	132
On Farms .....	137
3. Saving Time.....	141
<b>CHAPTER 20. ON THE OCCASION OF THE SIXTH CONGRESS OF THE WORKERS’ PARTY OF KOREA.....</b>	<b>145</b>
1. The Sixth Congress of the Workers’ Party of Korea.....	145
With Greater Political Enthusiasm and Labour Achievements.....	145
Indefatigable Energy .....	150

2. Consolidating the Foundations of the Party	156
3. Bolstering the Function and Role of the People's Power	159
<b>CHAPTER 21. TO PASS ON KIM IL SUNG'S REVOLUTIONARY EXPLOITS THROUGH GENERATIONS</b>	<b>166</b>
1. Ideological and Theoretical Achievements Enriched	166
2. Monumental Edifices Mushroom	169
3. A Grand Political Festival	183
<b>CHAPTER 22. CREATION OF THE "SPEED OF THE '80S"</b>	<b>190</b>
1. Model Creations	190
2. Successful Fulfilment of the Second Seven-Year Plan	194
3. Production of Modern Large-Sized Machines and Equipment	199
4. The West Sea Barrage Built across Eight km of Water	204
5. The "Pyongyang Heyday"	209
<b>CHAPTER 23. HOLDING HIGHER THE BANNER OF JUCHE-ORIENTED SOCIALISM</b>	<b>216</b>
1. Building the Workers' Party of Korea into the Juche-Oriented Revolutionary Party	216
2. The Method of Economic Management Based on Collectivism	220
3. For the Improvement of the People's Living Standard	225
4. For a Continuous Upswing in Socialist Construction	230
<b>CHAPTER 24. THE EFFLORESCENCE AND DEVELOPMENT OF SOCIALIST CULTURE</b>	<b>235</b>
1. For Carrying Out the Theses on Socialist Education	235
2. Developing National Science and Technology onto a Higher Plane	241
3. A Grand Garden of Juche Art and Literature	247
4. Rapid Development of Public Health Service	260
5. Advancing a Juche-Oriented Policy on Physical Culture and Sports	266

CHAPTER 25. LOFTY LOVE FOR FELLOW COUNTRYMEN .....	274
1. For the Reunification of the Country.....	274
2. Developing the Work of Chongryon to a Higher Stage .....	280
3. Rallying Firmly around the Great National United Front .....	289
CHAPTER 26. FOR INDEPENDENCE, PEACE AND FRIENDSHIP ..	295
1. A Historic Visit to China .....	295
2. The 13 <sup>th</sup> World Festival of Youth and Students.....	301



---

---

## CHAPTER 14

### 1974, A PIVOTAL YEAR

#### 1. SUCCESSION OF THE REVOLUTIONARY CAUSE OF JUCHE

##### THE PEOPLE'S WISH

The year 1974 was significant in that Kim Jong Il was acclaimed as successor to President Kim Il Sung. The event provided a sure guarantee for inheriting and accomplishing the revolutionary cause of Juche through generations.

Inheriting the revolutionary cause of the leader is a fundamental problem that decides the destiny of a revolution. The cause of the leader is a long-term undertaking that should be executed through generations. Therefore, there arises the problem of defending the revolutionary cause pioneered by the leader and inheriting it.

What is essential in inheriting the revolutionary cause of the leader is to solve the problem of his successor. The successor occupies an absolute position and plays a decisive role in defending and carrying forward the revolutionary cause of his predecessor.

The historical experience and lesson of the international communist movement have shown that, if the problem of the successor is not solved properly in the period when one generation of the revolution is replaced by another, the helm of the party and state falls into the hands of political careerists and plotters, and the revolutionary cause of the leader is stopped halfway and its lifeline is severed.

The problem of succession is that of inheriting the position and role of the political leader, and the principle arising here is to, first of all, acclaim a proper man as the successor.

A working-class party must acclaim as successor to the leader an outstanding man who is faithful to the ideology and leadership of the leader, and who is possessed of the requisite personality and qualifications with which to realize his political leadership over the whole society.

The convention so far was that the successor to a leader was designated by the leader himself or appointed at a congress or plenum of the party. But in the case of the Workers' Party of Korea, Kim Jong Il, who had accomplished imperishable exploits by leading the Party and the revolution with a high level of statesmanship, won the respect and trust of the Party and people as their recognized leader, and the people regarded him as the successor to President Kim Il Sung.

In those days Kim Jong Il was a young statesman in his early thirties.

The Korean people's infinite respect for him emanated from his high profile.

With regard to a great man, some said that he should be a renowned ideologue or philosopher with clear-thinking brains; others insisted that he should be an inventor who has startled the world or a man of literature whose works are loved by the people, and still others said that he should be a brave hero or a military genius.

Human history records many great men, but not a great man who is possessed of the power of both the sword and the pen as well as of love for his country, nation and fellow people.

The Korean people found in Kim Jong Il far-sighted wisdom, unexcelled creative skill and audacity, and mettle proper to a hero. They also found in him unshakable faith and will, a crystal-clear conscience and a sense of obligation, ardent love for his country and fellow people, revolutionary comradeship, burning passion and pride in his nation, tenderness, simplicity, and modesty.

Veterans of the anti-Japanese revolution played a major part in supporting him as the leader of the Party and people.

One spring day in 1972 an official, while reporting on his work to Kim Jong Il, suggested to him that some men with high qualifications and skills be transferred from the armed forces to a project. He had learned previously that they were serving in the army.

Kim Jong Il was apprehensive lest it might hamper the work of that

sector if such talented people were transferred. He asked the official to discuss the matter with the Chief of the General Staff of the Korean People's Army, O Jin U<sup>1</sup>, an anti-Japanese revolutionary veteran.

After hearing what the official had to say, the Chief of the General Staff asked him whether it was his individual request or Kim Jong Il's.

The official could not but tell the truth.

The veteran said in earnest: "Why didn't you tell me that from the start? We must assist Comrade Kim Jong Il faithfully. We must be ready to lay down our lives if it is his wish. Comrade Kim Jong Il is the man who will carry forward Comrade Kim Il Sung's revolutionary cause. You must be ignorant of how blessed and happy the Korean nation is to have Comrade Kim Jong Il identical with Comrade Kim Il Sung. This is what we, veterans, want you young men to realize."

In those days another anti-Japanese revolutionary veteran, Rim Chun Chu<sup>2</sup>, on a business trip to Jagang Province, gave a lecture to the officials of the Party, administration, and economic and social organizations of the province.

Rim Chun Chu had fought and worked by the side of Kim Il Sung since his early days.

Under the title "Brilliant Leader Comrade Kim Jong Il", he related Kim Jong Il's birth in the snowstorm of a primeval forest, his patched quilt made of odds and ends and his growth during the anti-Japanese war, and his uncommon qualities.

In later days he gave such lectures in various places.

To acclaim Kim Jong Il as the successor to the revolutionary cause of Juche, as the leader of the Party and people, and accomplish the cause pioneered by Kim Il Sung was the immovable will and faith not only of the veterans, the first generation of the Korean revolution, but also of all the Korean people.

Kim Jong Il did his best to stop the people calling him "dear leader", saying that he was satisfied to remain loyal to the country and the people, but the people continued to call him "dear leader" of their own accord.

It was men of art and literature who first called him "dear leader".

Blessed before anybody else with his leadership in the days of the

revolution in the cinema, they respected him as their teacher and first used an honorific title for him implicative of his high position. Whenever they used the title, Kim Jong Il tried to dissuade them, saying that the title “comrade” was more intimate and reliable, and he was only a rank-and-file Party member who was accomplishing Kim Il Sung’s revolutionary cause together with them.

Not only film artistes but also the officials and artistes in other fields of art and literature respected and revered him.

They called him “respected leader” or “brilliant leader”, and later “dear leader”.

In the early 1970s a song praising him as “dear leader” was created and disseminated among the people.

In early 1971 writers and artistes agreed to create a song in praise of Kim Jong Il, who was giving energetic guidance to the work of literature and the arts; they channelled their wisdom and enthusiasm into writing the lyrics of the song and setting them to music. The song thus created is *We Will Remain Faithful through Generations*, a song the Korean people sing in reflection of their loyalty and feeling of reverence for Kim Jong Il.

The writers and artistes, who got together with Kim Jong Il on February 16 that year, sang the song in reflection of their resolve to remain faithful to him down through generations.

In the early morning bright with glow  
We are reminded of your benign smile.  
When stars twinkle in the quiet night,  
We miss your warm affection.

In those days the song was not made public through the mass media at Kim Jong Il’s stern demand. However, the song was disseminated by writers and artistes among the workers, peasants, soldiers, youth and even schoolchildren across the country.

The honorific title “dear leader” gained wider use among the people as the days went by.

At a sports meeting of officials and workers in the fields of art, literature and the mass media held at the Moranbong Stadium (the present Kim Il Sung Stadium) in April 1971, the tens of thousands of participants shouted in

chorus “dear leader”. The workers of the Kangson Steel Plant and Hwanghae Iron Works, and the peasants in Chongsan-ri—all units associated with Kim Jong Il’s activities—highly praised him too.

In these days Party and State officials called Kim Jong Il “dear leader” in and out of work hours.

From 1972 the words “dear leader” were written on the official documents of the Party and government.

Regarding it as an honour to place themselves under Kim Jong Il’s guidance, the officials of the Party Central Committee tried on their own to get his instructions.

In 1971 the Organizational Leadership Department of the Party Central Committee, upon inspecting the performance of a ministry, submitted a report for inspection by Kim Il Sung. After studying the report, Kim Il Sung spoke highly of it. The senior official of the department called the vice-heads of the department and conveyed Kim Il Sung’s appraisal to them. And he said, “The report appreciated by Comrade Kim Il Sung was given the final touches by Comrade Kim Jong Il. In future, too, we shall deal with any problem only after asking Comrade Kim Jong Il for his opinion.”

Around those days the word “guidance” in connection with Kim Jong Il was prevalent in the Party Central Committee.

Many units asked Kim Jong Il for his guidance for their work, and hung his portrait on the walls of their offices.

In March 1973 the workers of the Munchon Machine Factory, who rose up to undertake the ideological, technological and cultural revolutions, sent a letter of their pledge to Kim Jong Il. Upon receiving the news in September that year that Kim Jong Il had been appointed Secretary of the Party Central Committee, the workers of the Munphyong Smeltery sent a letter of congratulations to him. In the letter they wrote that they were extending warmest congratulations and glory to the “brilliant leader” who had taken charge of the future of the Korean revolution, stressing that the “dear leader” was the only successor who would carry forward Kim Il Sung’s revolutionary ideology and expedite the victory of the Korean revolution.

In reflection of the people’s reverence for Kim Jong Il, the Political

Committee of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea discussed on several occasions the matter of entrusting him with the overall work of the Party Central Committee.

Thus he was appointed as director of the Information Department of the Party Central Committee at the Political Committee Meeting held in July 1973, and as Secretary of the Party Central Committee at the Seventh Plenum of the Fifth Party Central Committee held in September the same year.

The senior officials of the Party and State referred to Kim Jong Il "dear leader" even in the presence of Kim Il Sung.

One October day in 1973, a senior official of the Party Central Committee, while reporting to Kim Il Sung on the result of the work of automating production at the Hwanghae Iron Works, said that the success was attributable entirely to the guidance of the "dear leader".

In this way calling Kim Jong Il "dear leader" became a "habit" among officials.

Despite the people's respect for and trust in him as the recognized leader of the Party and State, Kim Jong Il still checked them when they used this honorific title. In spite of their repeated requests, he did not change his mind.

So, the Members of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee held a meeting and, reflecting the demands of the epoch and history and the unanimous desire of the Korean people, decided to call Kim Jong Il "dear leader".

Calling him "dear leader" and acclaiming him on their own as successor to Kim Il Sung was an expression of the Korean people's attraction to him and their unshakable conviction on the inheritance of the revolutionary cause of Juche.

#### ACCLAIMED AS KIM IL SUNG'S SUCCESSOR

In his first days of working at the Party Central Committee Kim Jong Il set establishing Kim Il Sung's ideological system throughout the Party as the principal line that must be held consistently in Party work and activities,

subordinated all other types of work to the line, and performed great exploits of developing the Party into a party united in ideology and volition.

Giving personal guidance to the art and literary sector, he brought about a revolution in the cinema and opera, and ushered in a heyday for all other fields of art and literature, including music, dance, acrobatics and fine arts.

He also made great achievements in accelerating socialist construction, strengthening national defence buildup and expediting national reunification.

Placing absolute trust in Kim Jong Il, a man possessed of the qualifications and traits proper to a leader, the people expressed their desire to acclaim him as the only successor to Kim Il Sung.

Party organizations, power organs, administrative and economic organs, social organizations, armed forces, people's security organs, the organs in the fields of science, education, culture and mass media, factories, enterprises and cooperative farms sent one after another to the Party Central Committee letters or requests containing their wish to elect him to the leadership of the Party. The letters and requests reflected the people's unshakable determination to follow him and carry forward, under his leadership, the revolutionary cause of Juche pioneered by Kim Il Sung.

Appreciating the people's desire, Kim Il Sung expressed his trust in and expectations for Kim Jong Il. Saying that all Party members and people were holding Kim Jong Il up as their leader, he remarked that they were of the opinion that it was ideal that Kim Jong Il was well qualified and young, that he was intelligent, enthusiastic and devoted to his comrades, and that he would perform his duties splendidly.

The veterans of the anti-Japanese revolution were in the van in acclaiming Kim Jong Il as Kim Il Sung's successor.

In later days, Kim Il Sung said in recollection that the veterans acclaimed Kim Jong Il as his successor because they were firmly convinced that only when he led the Party, the State and the armed forces could a bright future be ensured for the nation, and the revolutionary cause of Juche be carried forward and consummated without the slightest deviation, and moreover, this meant that the armed forces too held him up as the leader of the nation. Continuing that the anti-Japanese revolutionary veterans unanimously acclaimed him as his successor because, before all else, they had been attracted by his human

appeal, he said, **“Kim Il has always said that there will be no one in the world who is as loyal and dutiful as Kim Jong Il is. Rim Chun Chu has said that there will be no one who respects the revolutionary forerunners as heartily and defends the revolutionary traditions as ardently as Kim Jong Il does, and that no great man of ideology and leadership will be his equal. O Jin U has said that Kim Jong Il is the general of generals who displays unexcelled audacity and outstanding intelligence. Choe Hyon<sup>3</sup> and Ri Jong San have often said that Kim Jong Il is a man of the richest human sympathy.”**

As they had perceived the image of a great man in him from his early days, the anti-Japanese revolutionary veterans revered him and regarded him as Kim Il Sung’s successor.

One day in early 1974, when he had an opportunity to meet Kim Il Sung, Kim Il proposed to him to elect Kim Jong Il to the leadership of the Party, saying, “You started the revolution in your teens, formed the anti-Japanese guerrilla army in your twenties, liberated the country in your thirties, and have led the Party and the people since. Kim Jong Il is now in his thirties as you were at that time. Though I’m making this proposal, this is the unanimous wish of all the people, including the anti-Japanese revolutionary veterans.”

The Members of the Political Committee and Secretaries of the Party Central Committee said that they would work well in support of General Secretary Kim Il Sung but there should be a man presiding over their meetings, asking Kim Il Sung to ensure that Kim Jong Il oversaw the overall Party work and presided over their consultations.

In February 1974, a pivotal year, when succession to the revolutionary cause became the order of the day, and the entire Party and all the people were enthusiastic about acclaiming Kim Jong Il as the successor to the revolutionary cause of Juche, the Eighth Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Party Central Committee was held.

The meeting discussed and decided on the problems related to achieving the ten long-term objectives of socialist economic construction, and on February 13, the last day of the meeting, discussed the matter of reinforcing the leadership of the Workers’ Party of Korea.



O Jin U, a veteran of the anti-Japanese revolution and Member of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee, took the floor and said that he proposed electing Kim Jong Il, who was applying President Kim Il Sung's cause into practice, to the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee.

His proposal received a standing ovation.

The Plenary Meeting unanimously elected Kim Jong Il to the leadership of the Party, as a Member of the Political Committee of its Central Committee.

Kim Il Sung entrusted Kim Jong Il with the organizational and information work of the Party, and stressed that all problems related to Party work should be taken to Kim Jong Il for their solution.

Kim Jong Il, after the Plenary Meeting, began to lead the Workers' Party of Korea and the Korean revolution as a leader and representative of the Party.

In this sense, the Eighth Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea was a historic meeting that solved the problem of succession to the revolutionary cause.

Acclamation of Kim Jong Il as successor to the revolutionary cause of Juche was an expression of infinite reverence and respect for and trust in Kim Jong Il by all the people and the Workers' Party of Korea; it constituted a source of their greatest honour and happiness, and was a great event for the Korean nation.

At a get-together of the Members of the Presidium of the Political Committee of the Party held after the Plenary Meeting, the Members assured Kim Il Sung that they would assist Kim Jong Il well.

Kim Il Sung said that it was laudable that all Party members and other people were supporting Kim Jong Il.

That day, at a gathering with Kim Jong Il, officials took the floor one after another and said that election of Kim Jong Il to the Party leadership would ensure a bright future for the revolution, and they would devote their all to accomplishing the cause of Juche under his guidance. Expressing his gratitude to them for their warm congratulations and expectations, Kim Jong Il said that he was only a man who was supporting Kim Il Sung's revolutionary cause, and called on them to make more achievements. He

continued that what was most important in supporting Kim Il Sung was to cherish unchanging loyalty, and they should all follow the road of revolution by dint of loyalty that would not waver in any adversity.

Kim Jong Il went on: Without comrades, without faithful companions, no leader can accomplish a great cause single-handed. This is why President Kim Il Sung always treasures his revolutionary comrades and sets great store by their assistance. I am convinced that, as in the past, you'll remain faithful to the Party and the leader.

Acclamation of Kim Jong Il as successor to Kim Il Sung proved to be the solution to the question of succession of the revolutionary cause in Korea.

## 2. FOR MODELLING THE WHOLE SOCIETY ON THE JUCHE IDEA

### FEBRUARY DECLARATION

In 1974 Kim Jong Il formulated Kim Il Sung's revolutionary ideas and set imbuing the whole society with the Juche idea as the highest programme of the Party.

Keenly realizing that formulating Kim Il Sung's revolutionary ideology in a scientific way was his noble duty, Kim Jong Il conducted energetic ideological and theoretical activities to accomplish this historic cause.

Having been well-versed already in his school days in Kim Il Sung's revolutionary ideology and having deepened his studies into it, Kim Jong Il studied for more than three years from his early days at the Party Central Committee the preceding revolutionary ideologies of the working class in a comprehensive way, reviewing and analyzing them, so as to define Kim Il Sung's ideology as the guiding ideology of the revolution. He set a higher goal in the late 1960s and early 1970s—formulating Kim Il Sung's ideology in a scientific way. Busy as he was dealing with all the problems arising in the revolution and construction while assisting Kim Il Sung in his work, Kim Jong Il directed his energy to formulating Kim Il Sung's ideology.

The difficult ideological and theoretical task of clarifying its essential characteristics distinguishable from those of the preceding revolutionary ideologies of the working class and its position in world history demanded creative passion, ability for original discovery and cogitation, and outstanding writing ability.

While engaged in his own work, Kim Jong Il did not cease to deeply ponder the outline of his writing.

Once, an official asked him how he could write in a short time works which are so profound ideologically and theoretically. Kim Jong Il replied: I have no time exclusively set for writing, but I have many things to write. A proverb has it that a thirsty man digs a well. So I always ponder, framing sentences while taking meals, connecting sentences while walking, finding themes while travelling by car and expanding the themes intermittently while working. And then in the office I copy on paper what I wrote in my mind and committed to memory.

Kim Jong Il followed this routine not only in his office, but also while giving field guidance.

In September 1971 Kim Jong Il undertook field guidance in Ryanggang Province. In those days he met the officials of the central and local organs during the day and discussed business; at night he contemplated and wrote to formulate Kim Il Sung's ideology.

One day, together with some officials, he went to Mupho, a site associated with Kim Il Sung's activities during the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle. On Dam No. 7 on the Amnok, he cast a line. Oblivious of chars taking the bait, he was immersed in deep contemplation. When an official who accompanied him came near, he said: As you have said, Mupho is picturesque. As I sit here I can work out what has puzzled me.

Only then did the official realize that Kim Jong Il had been contemplating, not angling.

On a winter day in 1973, during field guidance, he called an official, and said: The revolutionary ideology of a leader has been formulated, without exception, by his successor. Only the successor is well acquainted with his predecessor's revolutionary ideology, and is able to defend it staunchly and

develop it. Formulating President Kim Il Sung's revolutionary ideology is my mission.

In the mid-1970s the objective and subjective conditions for imbuing the whole society with Kim Il Sung's revolutionary ideology matured.

In this historical period Kim Jong Il, who had made up his mind to formulate Kim Il Sung's revolutionary ideology and make public imbuing the whole society with the Juche idea as the highest programme of the Party, gave much thought to whom he would rely on in undertaking the cause. He then decided to rely on the armed forces.

It is a historical lesson that a revolution devoid of unqualified support from the revolutionary armed forces cannot advance victoriously.

The history of the revolutionary cause of Juche was the history of Songun-based revolution pioneered and developed by force of arms under the banner of Songun. The Korean People's Army defended the Party and the leader in the van in every difficult period. The armed forces were the most reliable core force, a vanguard the Party should continue to rely on in the future, too, in its effort to advance the revolutionary cause of Juche.

On the evening of February 18, 1974, Kim Jong Il called the commanding personnel of the Korean People's Army, and said: Tomorrow at the National Training Course for Party Information Workers I am going to make public officially the formulation of President Kim Il Sung's revolutionary ideology and the modelling of the whole society on the Juche idea as the Party's highest programme. This has become possible as the objective and subjective conditions and requirements for imbuing the whole society with one idea have matured, and as we have such a revolutionary force as the Korean People's Army which is loyal to the Party's cause. President Kim Il Sung started his revolutionary activities by rallying like-minded people and forming an armed unit. I am also going to accomplish the causes of national reunification and modelling the whole society on the Juche idea by relying on the armed forces. I believe that, as in the past so also in the future, the army will stand in the van in the struggle to accomplish the Party's cause. The time has come to accelerate the advance toward a new world. Let us remember this historic night when a gigantic advance of a new, higher stage is about to be started.



**Kim Jong Il concluding the National Training Course  
for Party Information Workers (February 19, 1974)**

On February 19, 1974, at the National Training Course for Party Information Workers, Kim Jong Il formulated Kim Il Sung's ideology as an integral system of idea, theory and method of Juche, and defined the modelling the whole society on the Juche idea as the highest programme of the Workers' Party of Korea.

Modelling the whole society on the Juche idea was presented as the highest programme of the Workers' Party of Korea because it clearly indicates the ultimate objective of the Party and the basic method of attaining this objective.

Modelling the whole society on the Juche idea, the highest programme of the Workers' Party of Korea, was, before being an ideology or theory, Kim Jong Il's answer to the theoretical and practical problems presented by the times and history.

Identification by Kim Jong Il of modelling the whole society on the Juche idea as the highest programme of the Party was a historic declaration of the working-class party for the accomplishment of the Juche cause.

#### FOR MODELLING THE WHOLE PARTY ON THE JUCHE IDEA

After proclaiming the programme of modelling the whole society on the Juche idea, Kim Jong Il first directed his efforts to modelling the whole Party on the Juche idea.

Modelling the whole Party on the Juche idea was a prerequisite for and key to modelling the whole society on the Juche idea. The Party, the heart of the society and the motive force of the revolutionary transformation of the whole society, had to be modelled on the Juche idea; only then could the Party infuse into the whole society the nutrients of the Juche idea and transform the people better and faster as required by this idea.

One February day in 1974 Kim Jong Il said that training the hardcore of the Party was essential for laying its foundation for carrying forward the cause of Juche, stressing that building the Central Committee of the Party, the General Staff of the revolution, with the hardcore who are unfailingly faithful to Kim Il Sung was the key to this end.

Kim Jong Il established a new work system so as to concentrate efforts

on the guidance of Party life in conformity with the requirements of laying the foundation of the Party for carrying forward the cause of Juche.

Meanwhile, he saw to it that Party work was orientated to assisting Kim Il Sung in his work and solving the problems the latter was concerned with.

In June 1974 Kim Il Sung was planning a field guidance to North Hamgyong Province because he was not satisfied with the work in the province.

Before the President set on the field guidance tour Kim Jong Il organized a guidance team involving officials of the Party Central Committee, and sent it to the province with the task of grasping the real situation there in detail. Kim Jong Il told a senior official of the Party Central Committee that the team should direct its efforts in the province to pinpointing the reason for the unsatisfactory work result, and analyze and estimate the work of the province objectively. He encouraged him to perform the task with a sense of responsibility so as to give satisfaction to Kim Il Sung.

On the night of June 10, Kim Jong Il received a report from the team about the actual situation in the province. From the report he realized that the unsatisfactory production in the province was ascribable to an erroneous work attitude among the officials of the enterprises in the province and the diversion of a large number of skilled workers to other posts. He instructed the team to delve deeper into the situation with focus on the two problems. He continued that the team should compile a report of the actual situations at the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex and Musan Mine by reflecting the problems arising in the order of production processes for the convenience of Kim Il Sung in grasping the situation so that the report should serve as his eyes and ears.

The team compiled the report as Kim Jong Il instructed.

As soon as he arrived in the province, Kim Il Sung received the report from the officials of the Party Central Committee. The report was detailed and correct. Kim Il Sung was able to grasp the situation of the province without having to go so far as studying the situation on the spot by himself as before.



**Kim Jong Il going over documents related to Party work**



Basing himself on the report Kim Il Sung proposed clear-cut solutions to the problems arising in the production of iron, thus solving knotty problems and boosting steel production.

On June 15, Kim Il Sung told Kim Jong Il on the phone that he was obliged to the officials of the Party Central Committee for getting him well acquainted with the situation in the province as soon as he arrived there, and that he had studied their report from an objective point of view, finding that it was quite correct and analytical.

Soon afterwards, Kim Jong Il called a senior official of the Party Central Committee who was still in the province, and said that he was happy as Kim Il Sung was satisfied with their work, and they should work with an increased sense of responsibility, cherishing Kim Il Sung's remarks. He added that he felt he would sleep well that night.

Expressing his great satisfaction at Kim Jong Il's measure of having officials of the Party Central Committee assess the actual situation of a unit in advance of his field guidance to it, Kim Il Sung said that it was an ideal method of giving field guidance, and it was good method for not so many people were required. Moreover, he could come to a correct conclusion.

In order to equip the officials in the field of organizational work of the Party, who would do a great deal of work in the accomplishment of the cause of modelling the entire Party on the Juche idea, with the new theories and policies of Party work, Kim Jong Il proposed holding a National Training Course for Party Organization Workers.

One day in early March 1974 he told the officials of the Party Central Committee that Party organization workers were making mistakes in the work because they had no clear understanding of the new policies advanced by the Party. He added that it would be good to organize a national-level training course for Party organization workers to equip them with the new policies of Party work that met the requirements of the undertaking of modelling the whole society on the Juche idea.

After giving them tasks, he inquired into the preparation of the training course several times and led them to make full preparations for the training course.

When they submitted a draft agenda for the training course and

timetable, he instructed them that, as the training course was aimed at improving Party work fundamentally, the teaching plans should be formulated in that direction, that the agenda should be drawn up in disregard of the conventional pattern so that they could comprehend Party work in general, that the timetable should be set so that all the participants could digest the contents of each agenda item, and that the contents of the training course should reflect Kim Il Sung's teachings and the Party's policies on Party work. When they submitted draft lecture plans, he went over them and, pointing out their failure to reflect in them the problems arising in actual situations, ensured that the lecture plans included several new problems including the problem of carrying out the Party's policy on bringing about a revolutionary turn in the organizational work of the Party. In this way, 21 agenda items were selected.

Paying deep attention to compiling lecture plans, he ensured that they reflected the Party's policies and intentions in every plan.

One day he told them that the purpose of the forthcoming training course was to effect a fresh turn in the organizational work of the Party by bringing the Party's policy on the principles and methods of Party work home to the organization workers of the Party, adding that they should make preparations for the training course with the attitude of beginning anew. He continued that, in order to fundamentally improve Party work, the conventional style and standards of Party work should be replaced with a new style and standards, which in other words were a style and method of modelling the whole Party and society on the Juche idea, and the lecture plans should be formulated to meet this demand.

He encouraged the officials who were preparing teaching materials to develop them in a fresh way without referring to the conventional outlines and materials, and went several times over thousands of pages of teaching materials prepared by them, giving the finishing touches to the materials.

In order to do so, he studied each submission for several days, and in one night corrected it time and again, first in red, after that in blue, and last in black, thus making it full of new ideas.

He also ensured that the training course would be held in a big way for an entire month.

After full preparations, a month-long National Training Course for Party Organization Workers was held from early July to early August 1974 in a big way unprecedented in the history of the Workers' Party of Korea. During the training course, the organization workers freed themselves from the pattern and standards of conventional Party work, and equipped themselves with the new contents and methods of Party work Kim Jong Il had clarified.

On August 2, the last day of the training course, Kim Jong Il went to the Pyongyang Indoor Stadium, the venue of the training course, and concluded the course. In his concluding speech, Kim Jong Il advanced the policy of imbuing the entire Party with the Juche idea, and put forward this as a foundation stone of Party building.

He instructed that all Party members should qualify themselves to be cadres so as to improve the quality of the Party ranks.

With regard to this, he said: This means raising the level of all cadres of the Party to a higher level and the level of rank-and-file Party members to that of cadres. Fundamentally speaking, this undertaking is aimed at improving the political and professional qualifications of cadres and Party members, and training them to be faithful to General Secretary Kim Il Sung of the Party Central Committee and well prepared for the tasks the Party and revolution entrust them. To this end, the political, ideological and class foundation of the Party ranks should be strengthened and Party members should improve their technological, cultural and professional qualifications. Moreover, cadres should consolidate their revolutionary identity, eliminate bureaucratic ways of working, take the stand of becoming masters of the revolution and true servants of the people, and improve their own political and professional qualifications as quickly as possible.

He also set forth the tasks for effecting a fresh change in the system and method of Party work as follows: A system of superiors controlling and assisting their subordinates should be established; unity and cooperation between departments, and between sections, of Party committees should be intensified; the outdated method and style of work should be eliminated and a revolutionary method and style should be established in their place.

He finished the concluding speech by expressing his expectation and

conviction that the participants in the training course would make great efforts to effect a sweeping change in Party work true to the Party's policy, and fulfill their mission of modelling the entire Party and the whole society on the Juche idea.

The participants gave him a standing ovation.

### TO MAKE THE PEOPLE REGARD FAITHFULNESS AS THEIR LIFE AND SOUL

Kim Jong Il saw that what was most important in modelling the whole society on the Juche idea was to transform all members of society into revolutionaries of the Juche type unfailingly faithful to Kim Il Sung.

The most essential quality of a revolutionary of the Juche type is faithfulness to Kim Il Sung. Only when he or she is faithful to Kim Il Sung will he or she be able to make Kim Il Sung's revolutionary ideas an unshakable faith and work devotedly to implement the ideas.

Regarding faithfulness to Kim Il Sung as one's life and soul is the basic ideological and spiritual feature of a true revolutionary.

Kim Jong Il clarified the principles to be adhered to in making the people Juche-type revolutionaries who are possessed of this basic feature. The principles are to educate them to hold Kim Il Sung in high esteem, make his prestige absolute, have firm faith in his ideas, regard his instructions as immutable principles, and carry them out unconditionally.

He was convinced that the basic method for accomplishing the revolutionary cause of Juche was faithfulness to Kim Il Sung, the pioneer of the cause. He saw that imbuing the Party, people, army and country with faithfulness to Kim Il Sung was most important, and the Party was making a positive effort to this end. He was convinced that when the entire Party and whole society brimmed over with faithfulness to Kim Il Sung, the cause of Juche would be accomplished.

In this regard, Kim Jong Il took measures to celebrate Kim Il Sung's birthday as the greatest holiday of the nation. Greeting that day in a most auspicious way was a unanimous desire of the Korean people. For them there was no national holiday more auspicious or more meaningful than that day. But for Kim Il Sung, they would not have witnessed such historical

events as the liberation of their country and the founding of the Party and State. Before liberation, even the New Year's Days had been full of tears.

It was perfectly natural that they should celebrate the birthday of Kim Il Sung, their saviour, as the greatest national holiday. However, April 15, Kim Il Sung's birthday, had not been instituted as an official holiday.

In January 1974 Kim Jong Il told the officials: But for Kim Il Sung, our people would not have celebrated the New Year's Day in a happy atmosphere as they have done this year. I am of the opinion that we should make it a tradition and law to celebrate April 15 as the greatest holiday of the nation. I have long thought about it, and I am going to have this issue discussed throughout the Party and make it public.

On April 14, that year Kim Jong Il said, **"From this year we should celebrate Comrade Kim Il Sung's birthday as the greatest holiday of the country every year, not only in name but in reality, and make it a tradition."**

And the Central People's Committee of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea made public a decree, titled, "On Instituting April 15, the Birthday of Comrade Kim Il Sung, the Great Leader of the Revolution, as the Greatest National Holiday".

Since 1974 the Korean people have celebrated April 15 as the greatest national holiday every year.

This was an event of great significance in the life of the Korean people, who wished to honour Kim Il Sung as the founder of socialist Korea down through generations.

On April 20, Kim Jong Il gave a talk to the Secretaries of the Party Central Committee under the title, ***Let Us Cherish Loyalty to the Party and the Leader as an Article of Our Revolutionary Faith and Obligation.***

In the talk he said to the following effect: Loyalty to the Party and the leader must always remain unchanged and unstained. Loyalty that is stained by an ill wind and changes with the situation is a sham. What is desirable is loyalty that is as clear, transparent and pure as the morning dew; what is most detestable is the "loyalty" of a man who becomes a "loyal" man in good times and a traitor in bad times. What is needed is a loyal man who remains unflinching in good times and bad. Loyalty to Kim Il Sung must be warm and clear, deep and wide, and solid and everlasting.

Another characteristic of loyalty to the Party and the leader is that it is inherited generation after generation. All cadres and Party members, cherishing this form of loyalty, should remain loyal to the Party and accomplish the revolutionary cause of Juche.

With regard to cherishing loyalty to the Party and the leader as an article of faith, he said: A revolutionary who is determined to devote himself or herself to the righteous cause of the leader must not lose faith even if his or her flesh is torn to pieces, like a white crystal that does not lose its brilliance even if it is shattered, must not forsake this faith even if he or she has to die on the gallows, like a pine tree that remains green even if it is buried in snow, and not compromise this faith even if he or she is buried alive, like a bamboo that remains upright even after it is burned.

And with regard to cherishing loyalty to the Party and the leader as an unshakable obligation, he said: Loyalty cherished as an unshakable obligation is most sincere and solid. Cadres and Party members should feel keenly the trust and affection Kim Il Sung bestows on them, and work to prove themselves worthy of his trust and affection.

That day Kim Jong Il clarified the concrete methods for encouraging the cadres and other Party members to cherish loyalty to the Party and the leader as an article of faith and an obligation—equipping them with a revolutionary outlook on the leader, training them in the practice of revolutionary struggle and following the examples set by the prototype loyal men.

#### INTENSIFYING THE WORK OF THE MASS MEDIA

Having paid deep attention to the work of the mass media, Kim Jong Il decided to make a revolution in the mass media so that they would fulfill their mission and role as an ideological weapon contributing to modelling the whole society on the Juche idea.

Kim Jong Il formulated a plan to make innovation first in the editorials of the Party's organ, *Rodong Sinmun*, and by popularizing the experience make a revolution in the mass media in general.

He lit the torch of the revolution in writing editorials on February 12, 1974, one day before the closing of the Eighth Plenary Meeting of the Fifth

Party Central Committee. The meeting adopted a letter of the Party Central Committee to all Party members. With a view to conducting a sweeping ideological campaign for carrying out the task advanced in the letter, Kim Jong Il gave the officials of the Party newspaper a task to write an editorial within that day and publish it in the newspaper along with the news of the closing of the meeting.

Aware of his intention to rouse all Party members and other people to a new advance, officials of the newspaper set to writing an editorial. After writing the draft editorial in a few hours, they submitted it to him. He went over the draft and instructed them to carry it in the newspaper followed by other editorials in the following days.

The newspaper conducted a campaign to write editorials. Busy as he was on the eve of making public the February Declaration, Kim Jong Il read all the editorials and lead articles, polishing them if necessary.

Thus the newspaper carried editorials which reflected the Party's ideas, theories, plans and intentions, every day. After carrying the first editorial on February 14, along with the news of the closing of the Plenary Meeting, the newspaper carried editorials on the following five days, and from February 20 it carried editorials putting forward the tasks of the five major fronts of socialist construction<sup>4</sup> by fronts and sectors.

In order to intensify the revolution in writing editorials, he gave the senior officials of the Party Central Committee a talk on February 22, titled, ***On Waging a Revolution in Editorials***, in which he clarified the task and methods for writing meaningful and weighty editorials and lead articles in a great number.

Pointing out that how the Party newspaper played its function and role hinged on how it wrote editorials and lead articles, he said that if ordinary articles can be called rifles, editorials and lead articles can be called cannons. He continued that, in order to improve the writing of editorials, it was essential to raise their political standard, write them in a mature way, ensure their logical character and theoretical depth, select a proper style of writing and renovate the way they were edited, stressing that the speed campaign principle should be applied in writing editorials and that the qualifications of journalists should be improved.

He went over all the editorials and lead articles of the Party newspaper, skipping meals sometimes, and gave his opinions on their composition, style and even expressions. Reading several times the article to be carried in *Rodong Sinmun* dated March 30, 1974, he polished the style, some sentences and expressions, first in red, then in blue and last in black.

In the days of leading the revolution in writing editorials, he used for the editorials such phrases as *in a big and aggressive way, full of mettle of youth, not in a lax way*, and *bugle of advance of the speed campaign*, and such words as *diligent reader, passionate person, all-out campaign*, and *all-out offensive*. Once, he revised “Let Us Further Step Up Grand Socialist Construction,” the title of an editorial, into *Let Us Drum Up Support for the Revolution on All Fronts*.

He clarified the concrete methods of editing editorials so that they would look high-toned and weighty.

His guidance brought about a revolution not only in the contents of the editorials of the Party newspaper but also in their edition. It had been a usual practice for the newspaper to carry five or six editorials, seven or eight at the most, in a month. From February 14 to April 3, it carried 39 editorials.

The editorial revolution was a watershed for bringing about a revolutionary turn in publications, the press and broadcasting, and it marked the beginning of a revolution in the fields of newspapers, news services and publications.

During the course of the revolution in writing editorials, a change was brought about in the ideological and spiritual traits of Party members and other working people, and an unprecedented upswing was effected in economic and cultural construction.

Basing himself on the success and experience of the revolution in editorials, Kim Jong Il led all means of mass communication to make a major contribution to transforming the whole society on the basis of the Juche idea.

In the concluding speech he delivered at the Fifth Enlarged Plenary Meeting of the Third Central Committee of the Korean Journalists Union on May 7, 1974, he crystallized and systematized the idea of effecting a



radical change in mass communication by making a revolution in the media.

He said to the following effect: Journalists should apply in mass communication the method used by the anti-Japanese guerrilla journalists in the forests of Mt. Paektu, who mingled with the guerrillas and the masses, carrying their mimeographs on their backs and breathing the same air as them, and thus produced revolutionary publications, and make the Party's media appealing, fresh, varied and popular. Thorough implementation of the policy of the speed campaign and ideological campaign is another major guarantee for bringing about a revolutionary change in mass communication. Once Kim Il Sung's instruction or Party policy is put forward, the mass media should accept it promptly and sensibly, explain and disseminate it like lightning and use every possible means to carry it out, with the attitude of masters, and assiduously and in a responsible manner.

Along with the revolution in the field of newspapers, Kim Jong Il led the effort to effect a fresh change in writing, editing and publishing in radio and TV broadcasts, books, periodicals and other mass media.

An article-writing contest was held every year with the aim of steadily improving the political and professional qualifications of journalists and editors and their skills. A revolution was brought about in taking and editing photographs, a major element in newspapers, and the photographs of Kim Il Sung carried in newspapers became more lifelike and vivid.

Kim Jong Il set the task of improving radio broadcasts, and led the effort for implementing the task. Having already advanced the policy of broadcasting famous songs by radio, he selected hundreds of famous songs and ensured that they were broadcast intensively by radio. He also ensured that radio broadcasts by cities and counties and on trains were improved and information work by means of radio broadcasts was conducted substantially and suited to their audiences.

With deep attention to TV broadcasting, Kim Jong Il ensured that preparations for transmitting colour TV images were made with all speed. Thus, colour TV broadcasting was officially introduced.

And under his leadership a revolution was brought about in writing, editing and publishing books and periodicals.

This enabled all the mass media of the country to render active contributions to arousing the entire Party, the whole army and all the people to implement the cause of modelling the whole society on the Juche idea.

### 3. OPENING UP THE NEW AGE OF THE SPEED CAMPAIGN

In the dead of night on December 31, 1974, Kim Jong Il was standing lost in thought before a huge map of Korea that showed the nationwide network of industries. After a while, he shifted his gaze out of the window upon the garden carpeted with soft snow.

Then he said to a senior official of the Party Central Committee: We are at the turn of the years 1974-75. At this moment in history, I am in a meditative frame of mind and feel a burden growing on my shoulders. The year 1974 witnessed unprecedented progress in the socialist economy, spurred on by the speed campaign.

Actually, he had initiated the speed campaign on February 19, as the major form of work for socialist construction, in order to carry through the policy of grand socialist construction that had been put forward at the Eighth Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Party Central Committee.

He said:

**“The projected drive of grand socialist construction is the speed campaign in the true sense of the word. The speed campaign is the only way to ensure success in the drive, and is the major form of work for socialist construction whereby all undertakings can be pushed forward with overall vigour.”**

The speed campaign, an embodiment of the Juche idea and the idea of uninterrupted revolution, was a revolutionary principle of work, geared to leaping from miracle to miracle in socialist construction under the revolutionary banner of self-reliance and by drawing on the lofty political consciousness and creative activity of the masses of the people. Its prime requirement was to enlist all forces available for the maximum speed in work while ensuring its best possible quality.

The speed campaign is the most dynamic form of work that suits the intrinsic nature of the socialist system and the revolutionary aspirations of the people, Kim Jong Il stressed, and it is the only way to realize the law governing the continuous, rapid development of socialist society, as well as the only way to give free rein to the extraordinary revolutionary zeal of the people to rush forward like a whirlwind.

He detailed the ways and means to give the most powerful fillip to socialist construction by means of the speed campaign: Pushing ahead with the ideological and technological revolutions, and backing them up with organizational leadership.

The Korean people were thus involved in massive socialist construction under the slogan, *All out for the speed campaign!*

It turned out, however, that by the close of the third quarter of the year, there was little prospect for fulfilling that year's plan, what with shortages of raw and other materials, a strain on transportation and a passivist and defeatist attitude among officials.

On October 3, Kim Il Sung, concerned about the lacklustre industrial performance, declined his rare chance for leisure, and convened a meeting of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee in Changsong County, North Phyongan Province. Kim Jong Il was also in attendance.

The President made an analysis of how matters stood with the national economic plan for that year, and said that the rural economy had hit an all-time record of yields, attaining the target of the Six-Year Plan two years ahead of schedule. Continuing that he was worried about the different situation in the industrial sector, he asked those, who had any inspiration about a solution, to come forward with it without hesitation.

A solemn, heavy silence fell.

The year 1974 was a significant one in that it witnessed a powerful launch of Korea's grand socialist construction, and it was reckoned to be of decisive importance for the whole ambitious Six-Year Plan. Hinging on the fulfillment of the production plans for the year were the prospects for attaining all the goals of the Six-Year Plan and for making a breakthrough in the engagement in massive socialist construction which had just got off to a start. But the economic officials had little confidence in the possibility of

meeting the tight schedule of the plan for the few remaining months. All those present only hung their heads in the oppressive silence.

Kim Jong Il rose to his feet, and said that it appeared that the economic officials were in a dilemma and he would try his hand at economic matters by calling in the Party organizations.

The President's face lit up. Solutions to economic problems are well within our capacity, once we're determined to tackle them, he said and continued; but it seems that we fear difficulties instead of tackling them. Then, he entrusted the matter to him.

After the meeting, Kim Jong Il told a senior official of the Party Central Committee that come what may, they should exceed the targets of the economic plan for that year, and that campaign was necessary to tackle the economic matters before them, an all-out 70-day campaign till the end of the year. Then he spoke at length about the priority projects and an appropriate system of guidance.

On October 5, he instructed the senior Party Central Committee officials to launch a 70-day campaign.

As a step to involve the entire Party, the whole country and all the people in the campaign under a single system of direction, he installed a guidance group of the Party and the Administration Council of an unprecedented size, and staffed it with senior officials of the Party Central Committee and Party secretaries of the commissions and ministries under the Administration Council.

On October 7, he nominated the members of the central guidance group as well as the officials to be dispatched to every province, and urged them to do their bit for the campaign.

These people set to work on their assignments, but were not sure what to do to begin with. On October 9, Kim Jong Il delivered a speech, titled, ***Let the Whole Party Be Enlisted in the Vigorous Promotion of the 70-Day Campaign!*** at a consultative conference of the senior officials of the Party Central Committee and the Administration Council and chief secretaries of provincial Party committees.

He shed full light on the ways and means to push the campaign at full throttle.

He defined the extraction, transportation and export sectors as the top-priority concern, and elucidated the measures to be taken. He stressed that the guidance groups staffed with senior officials at both central and provincial levels should be organized, that they should go down to subordinate units to conduct a powerful ideological campaign backed up by a scrupulous organization of affairs, and that Party officials should cooperate with the economic officials in the direction of the campaign, with a proper view regarding socialist economic construction.

Rallies were held in the capital and provinces, as well as at industrial establishments, as a step to rouse all the Party members and other working people to intensive efforts. The guidance groups and the masses brimmed over with revolutionary enthusiasm.

The 70-day campaign got off to an enthusiastic start on October 21.

Perceiving the key to success in ideology, Kim Jong Il fostered a sweeping ideological campaign among the officials and working people.

While pursuing ideological education of the Party members and other working people throughout the campaign, he organized lively media publicity and lecture tours, and deployed all available means of information. The art promotion teams, art troupes, brass bands, mass culture halls and speaker vans in all provinces were employed, and the artistes from the capital and provinces engaged in on-the-spot entertainment, sharing board and lodging with the workers.

In addition, Kim Jong Il prompted an intensive ideological struggle against the tendencies detrimental to the success of the campaign, with the result that all the units involved were able to concentrate their forces on the campaign, with a determination to make it through to the end.

Once, when he was informed of an obvious tendency in the railway sector to exaggerate or readjust to its own time-table the results of its performance, he set in motion a struggle against such fame-seeking and expediency.

One late-October day, with the 70-day campaign in the intensive stage, he stated that its successful conclusion would be impossible without a speedy elimination of departmentalism. He took a firm step by dispatching authoritative inspection and reserve-mobilization teams to all the units

across the country, so that they could effectively combat the departmentalistic practices of maintaining redundant stocks of materials. The stage was thus set for employment of the vast, idle stock of resources, which provided an appropriate solution to the core problem in the successful campaign—the supply of equipment, and raw and other materials.

Concentrating on the pilot sectors in the campaign was a matter of vast proportions given the virtually equal importance of shoring up all other branches.

The ore and coal mines were assuming foremost importance, and Kim Jong Il sent authoritative guidance groups and entertainment teams to them, and took steps to tackle their short supply of manpower and materials. This enabled the mines to regain their momentum and maintain their daily production at peak levels through the precedence given to tunnelling and removal of overburden.

The smooth running of the extractive industry prompted a wave of improved productivity in all other industries, the machine-building and chemical ones included.

Kim Jong Il saw that transport was mainly to blame for the lacklustre performance in several industries. He stressed the need to concentrate on railway transport, chiefly for the delivery of ores and other raw materials, and adopted all possible steps to make the railways geared to centralized and specialized transport and to supply steel for repairs of rolling-stock. This went a long way to easing the strain on transport.

He also pressed for a speedy boost in production of export goods in different industries by dispatching guidance and entertainment groups to the export-commodities factories and trading ports. He foresaw that the ports might ill afford the fast-growing shipment of export goods, and had the crane cars and barges sent to them from all the provinces. Still, the production of port cranes was going with a hitch, and he rose to the occasion by coming up with a way to bolster it speedily. With a sufficient supply of cranes and the construction of transit-goods warehouses and storage yards, the capacity of the ports for loading and unloading, and storage was doubled—a brilliant solution to the export problem.

Throughout the campaign, Kim Jong Il never left his office, except for

inspection trips, always immersed in work and racing against time—sometimes consulting Party officials for the summing up of work done and for the improved leadership function of the Party organizations, and at other times meeting the economic officials to help them tackle their problems, or placing a long-distance call to the chief of a guidance group at a factory to receive information and give assignments.

In the early morning of one October day, a certain mine faced an urgent problem, the solution to which needed an immediate go-ahead from Kim Jong Il. But the manager hesitated, for it was still before dawn. Then he remembered that Kim Jong Il had urged him to turn to him in any difficult situation. He decided to call him.

Kim Jong Il said that he was grateful for the prompt information about such an important matter, and that he should ring him without delay whenever he had such a problem, as he would always be in his office.

The management officials and workers, for all their intensive efforts, had at least a few hours of sleep every day. Kim Jong Il, however, sat up all night in his office, with hardly a moment for a catnap. He also went out to the Jaeryong and Thaethan mines, Haeju Port, the Hwasan Cooperative Farm in Sinchon County and other places to give on-site guidance to the campaign.

Finally, the campaign was wound up with flying colours, and the successful testing of the speed-campaign policy opened up a new history of the 70-day campaign speed, a fresh vintage of Chollima speed.

During the campaign, industrial production grew on average 1.7 times as much as before. The production for the whole of 1974 was 17.2 per cent up from the previous year and nearly 1.9 times up from 1970—the attainment of a higher goal than that set by the Fifth Party Congress that envisaged an annual average 14 per cent growth during the Six-Year Plan.

Kim Jong Il now informed President Kim Il Sung of the brilliant results of the campaign, and the latter expressed huge satisfaction, saying that it was an unparalleled feat and Kim Jong Il had solved the problem he had been worried about.

On February 15, 1975, the DPRK Central People's Committee adopted a decree on awarding the title of DPRK Hero to Kim Jong Il.

But he declined the distinction, although he had ensured that the title of Labour Hero was conferred on close to 300 people credited with feats in the campaign. The officials tried to talk him around, but he said that to see the people delighted at receiving distinctions from Kim Il Sung meant to him much more than his own honour and what he had done thus far was only the first step on the road to fulfillment of Kim Il Sung's revolutionary cause. He continued that he was not worthy of the title until he had worked better and performed a heroic feat.

Kim Il Sung was informed of this by an anti-Japanese veteran, and stressed that the title was only too natural for Kim Jong Il.

On hearing this, Kim Jong Il said to the following effect: Kim Il Sung's remark makes me thoughtful. With his lofty will deep in my mind, I am going to do more for the good of the country and people, always regarding the welfare of the people as my own happiness. What else but the unqualified trust and support from the people could be a greater wish and higher distinction for a revolutionary? If the President and the people earnestly wish me to receive the title, then I'll think about it again.

This was how the title of DPRK Hero was awarded to Kim Jong Il.



---

---

## **CHAPTER 15**

# **FOR MODELLING THE ENTIRE ARMY ON THE JUCHE IDEA**

### **1. AS THE GENERAL TASK FOR ARMY BUILDING**

Following the proclamation of the programme for modelling the whole society on the Juche idea, Kim Jong Il geared all his attention to this end, primarily to modelling the entire army on the Juche idea.

One day in mid-April 1974, a few days before the 62<sup>nd</sup> birthday of President Kim Il Sung, he told the high-ranking officers of the People's Army that the army should be an exemplar in taking the lead in the process of modelling the whole society on the Juche idea.

On the New Year's Day of 1975, meeting senior officials of the General Political Bureau of the People's Army, Kim Jong Il told them that the army was to discharge a heavy responsibility and duty that year, when the Party would celebrate the 30<sup>th</sup> anniversary of its founding. He then expanded at length on the detailed task and ways for materialization of the project of modelling the entire army on the Juche idea: Conducting brisk ideological education among the soldiers by applying various forms and means with stress on education of loyalty to the Party and the leader, on the principle of combining logical explanation about the Juche idea with other forms of education; making the rank and file participate voluntarily in organizational life with a correct viewpoint on revolutionary organizational life; and especially, inducing the commanding officers to fully rely on their respective Party organizations on and off duty.

He also emphasized that the Party leadership is the lifeline of the People's Army, referring to the need to establish a strict leadership system of the Party.

The entire army, he said, should act as a single body under the leadership of the Party Centre, and unconditionally implement the decisions and instructions of the Party Centre. When the Party Centre orders “Forward!” the entire body of the People’s Army should move forward, and when the Party Centre orders “Break through the wall!” it should break through the wall. The army should establish a strict discipline of reporting to the Party Centre each and every important matter of principle arising from army building and activities, and deal with everything as instructed by the Party Centre.

Cadres of the People’s Army are the backbone and leading personnel responsible for organizing the process of implementing the Party’s military lines and policies and the educators in charge of the masses of soldiers. Therefore, Kim Jong Il stressed that sound ranks of cadres of the army should be built up and effective education conducted among them so that they could perform their role with credit as educators of the rank and file in the process of implementing the policy of modelling the entire army on the Juche idea.

## 2. PARTY LEADERSHIP IS THE LIFELINE OF THE PEOPLE’S ARMY

The People’s Army, the revolutionary armed forces of Korea, can hardly imagine its existence and activity apart from the Party’s leadership. Only under the leadership of the Party can it discharge its mission and duty with credit.

While putting forward the programme for modelling the entire army on the Juche idea on the New Year’s Day of 1975, Kim Jong Il said:

**“A strict system of Party leadership over the People’s Army should be established.**

**“Party leadership is the lifeline of the People’s Army.”**

Kim Jong Il had long since attached importance to Party and political work within the army, a matter which he considered vital to success in the work of establishing the Party leadership system in the People’s Army.

One day in late March 1970 he met a senior official of the General Political Bureau of the Korean People's Army. He said that the official's recent promotion by President Kim Il Sung to a higher military rank with assignment to a responsible post on the General Political Bureau was an expression of the President's high expectation and demand on him that he would strive for a remarkable improvement in the Party and political work within the People's Army.

Kim Jong Il continued that he had recently been feeling more keenly the need to develop the People's Army as the invincible revolutionary armed forces in order to carry forward to completion the revolutionary cause of Juche pioneered by President Kim Il Sung. Historical experience and lessons show, he emphasized, that no political party can accomplish its cause unless it is supported by the faithful revolutionary armed forces. He explained that most important in strengthening the People's Army is to prepare the soldiers politically and ideologically, making them genuine revolutionaries of the Juche type. He reminded the official that the might of a revolutionary army is immediately evident in the politico-ideological superiority of its rank and file.

In order to continue to strengthen and develop the People's Army as an army of the leader and of the Party, as ever, he said, it is important, above all, to establish a strict system of Party leadership throughout the army; the Party leadership is the lifeline of a revolutionary army, and, therefore, it is imperative to realize the full leadership of the Party over the People's Army.

The starting point, a model set for the work of establishing a strict system of Party leadership over the entire army, was the Korean People's Army Song and Dance Ensemble, where Kim Jong Il established a new work system through his energetic guidance of the work of the ensemble.

One day in September 1971 he met a senior official of the General Political Bureau of the KPA to ask about the state of affairs at the ensemble. The official, however, was not aware of the fact that a small band of the ensemble was staging performances in local areas for the purpose of bringing about innovations in economic sectors, or that the main force of the ensemble was engaged in the creation of a revolutionary opera, an assignment given to it by Kim Jong Il. Kim Jong Il made the criticism that

the officials of the General Political Bureau were too insensitive to the idea and intention of the Party to show concern about the work of the ensemble.

He said that what he was expecting from the ensemble was to establish a working manner of sincerely approaching the guidance of the Party Centre in the course of creation and production of works of art; then, with this as an example, he was intending to establish throughout the army the work system and revolutionary discipline required for fully ensuring Party leadership.

He exhorted the official that he should immediately offer effective guidance for the creation of the revolutionary opera *The Story of a Nurse (A True Daughter of the Party)*, and that he should initiate the process of creating the opera in the course of laying the foundation for establishing a work system whereby the guidance of the Party Centre is received readily.

As a result of the establishment of the work system providing full scope for Party guidance throughout the process of creating the opera, the system of Party leadership was set up more firmly within the Korean People's Army Song and Dance Ensemble, and unprecedented innovations were recorded in due course in the work of artistic creation. Thus, the revolutionary opera was produced within a short period of time.

On December 11 that year President Kim Il Sung enjoyed the revolutionary opera, *A True Daughter of the Party*, and spoke highly of the work as a masterpiece, rejoicing in the production of this excellent revolutionary opera.

Upon receipt of the report on the performance of the opera in the presence of the President and on the impressions of the audience, Kim Jong Il said that production of a new revolutionary opera in a short span of time was, of course, a success, but what he considered more valuable was the fact that the work system of taking the guidance of the Party Centre was thoroughly established within the Korean People's Army Song and Dance Ensemble in the process of the production of the revolutionary opera. He instructed that officials should take a sincere attitude to the guidance of the Party Centre.

Kim Jong Il paid deep concern to making the political officials of the People's Army loyally uphold the leadership of the Party, keeping in

their minds the requirements of the Party and the developing revolution.

One day in the autumn of 1975, when the whole army was seething with excitement about the new programme for army-building, Kim Jong Il told the officials of the General Political Bureau of the KPA about undesirable events occurring in some countries, commenting predictively that twists and turns would be inevitable unless the problem of succession to the cause of leader was resolved satisfactorily.

No matter what others do, he said, we should stride along the road we have chosen of our own accord, making headway towards completion of the revolutionary cause of Juche, by establishing a thoroughgoing Party leadership system.

His prediction was proved accurate some time later by the events that took place in some countries. Schemers and careerists, who had been competitively shouting loyalty to their leaders at the tops of their voices, scrambled for Party and State hierarchy as soon as the leaders died.

Kim Jong Il informed the senior officials of the General Political Bureau of the KPA of the grave situation in some countries and emphatically instructed them to establish a strict Party leadership system for carrying forward the revolutionary cause of Kim Il Sung to completion, so that the entire army could uphold the Party leadership with utmost loyalty.

Having led the People's Army to stand in the van of the work to establish the leadership system of the Party, he took steps for the establishment of the Party leadership system more thoroughly throughout the Party and society, and pointed out the tasks and ways for the purpose on April 28, 1979.

The 20<sup>th</sup> Enlarged Plenary Meeting of the Sixth Party Committee of the People's Army held in December 1979 marked the occasion of a remarkable turn in the process of establishing the Party leadership system in the People's Army. At the meeting Kim Il Sung made an important speech on the need to make the People's Army develop the best qualities as befit the army of the Party by establishing the Party leadership system more firmly within the army.

One day in late December that year, a few days after the plenary meeting, Kim Jong Il called up a senior official of the General Political

Bureau, and told him that the bureau should make an efficient arrangement of the work to transmit Kim Il Sung's instructions made at the plenary meeting to the relevant officials and discuss matters concerning their implementation. Special concern in the discussion, he said, is to be directed at further intensifying the Party leadership of the People's Army. The People's Army, he said, is an army of the leader, an army of the Party, and the revolutionary armed forces in defence of our Party's revolutionary cause.

He continued: The People's Army cannot even think of its existence divorced from the leadership of the Party; it must place itself under the Party leadership and implement the Party's decisions and instructions to the letter, and make it rule to obey the Party's decisions and instructions without question.

On the New Year's Day of 1980, he again met the senior official of the General Political Bureau, and said emphatically: You should endeavour to foster the loyalty of all soldiers to the leadership of the Party as their deep-seated conviction, not merely as empty talk; loyalty to the Party should be unflinching among the staff members of the General Political Bureau before anyone else. Establishing a strict system of Party leadership of the army is essential for carrying forward the Juche revolutionary cause down through generations. The government owes its setting up to the might of gun, the fact of which is proved by the revolutionary career of President Kim Il Sung. Bearing this truth in mind, we should fully ensure Party leadership of the People's Army.

Thanks to Kim Jong Il's repeated instructions and guidance, army-wide discussions on the implementation of Kim Il Sung's instructions at the enlarged plenary meeting of the Party Committee of the People's Army proceeded at a high level of political and ideological intensity, and the logical education about the leadership of the Party went through intensively, resulting in remarkable progress in the work of establishing the Party leadership system throughout the army.

In the course of this undertaking the ties of kinship between Kim Jong Il as the leader and his revolutionary comrades-in-arms were firmed up on the basis of revolutionary comradeship.

Setting great store by the extraordinary militant spirit, pure-hearted

loyalty and righteousness possessed by Choe Hyon, Minister of the People's Armed Forces and a veteran anti-Japanese fighter who had been safeguarding the Party and the leader with arms in hand ever since he embarked on the anti-Japanese revolution under the leadership of Kim Il Sung, Kim Jong Il lavished benevolence on him so that he could constantly live up to his conviction and will.

For the sake of Choe Hyon's convenience, Kim Jong Il sent him a car used by President Kim Il Sung and a hunting rifle, as hunting was Choe's favourite pastime, and provided him periodically with war films he personally selected for him to satisfy the former's liking for battle scenes in motion pictures. And he also took the measure of allowing the surgeon's car during important State and Party functions to follow Choe Hyon's car, unrestricted by the rank or order of the convoy—a measure hitherto unknown.

Each time he was shown the loving care of Kim Jong Il, Choe Hyon said, with a lump in his throat: "It is our dear leader Kim Jong Il who knows best my wish to live to the last in full dress uniform of revolution with arms in hand."

Fully aware of the fact that establishing Kim Jong Il's leadership system was a fundamental matter essential to the future of the building of the revolutionary armed forces, Choe Hyon sincerely held Kim Jong Il in high esteem as the leader of the revolutionary armed forces.

One day in October 1975 Kim Jong Il went early to the newly-constructed February 8 House of Culture (the present April 25 House of Culture) to check on the preparations for receiving Kim Il Sung. The moment he alighted from his car, Minister of the People's Armed Forces Choe Hyon shouted, "Attention!" and marched towards him, with his right hand in full salute.

Kim Jong Il hurried toward him, waving to him to stop.

Yet this old gray-haired veteran general reported to young General Kim Jong Il in his thirties. He then told Kim Jong Il on behalf of the entire officers and men of the People's Army: "Dear leader Kim Jong Il, you deserve the salute as you are the wise leader of our Party and revolutionary armed forces."

In the process of establishing the Party leadership system, the People's

Army grew strong, capable of discharging its mission with credit as an army of the leader and of the Party, and the Party and the army forged an unbreakable organism.

During the events in celebration of the Sixth Congress of the Workers' Party of Korea, Zimbabwean Prime Minister saw O Jin U, a veteran anti-Japanese fighter and Minister of the People's Armed Forces, stand beside Kim Jong Il all the time, and asked President Kim Il Sung how both of them were related to each other.

Kim Il Sung gave a meaningful answer to his question: Their relationship could be likened to that between the Party and the army. His terse reply implied his praise of Kim Jong Il's exploits of having developed the People's Army as a powerful army of the Party, with the Party leadership system thoroughly established within it.

### 3. UNIT OF COMBATANTS DEVOTED TO SAFEGUARDING THEIR LEADER

Supporting and safeguarding the Party and the leader is precisely the basic mission and duty devolving upon the People's Army. In this light, it is imperative for the People's Army to raise the slogan: Defend the leader at all costs.

Almost at midnight of the New Year's Day of 1976, when he met the officials of the General Political Bureau of the KPA, Kim Jong Il told them about the need to undertake ideological education more efficiently among the rank and file so that they could keep loyalty to the Party as their own conviction, and recalled his visit to a women's coastal battery company early the previous year.

On January 5, 1975, Kim Jong Il inspected an outpost on the west coast, in spite of the biting cold. The women soldiers, overcome with joy at seeing him at the post, vied with one another to greet him and inquire after the health of President Kim Il Sung.

As he replied that the President was getting well, they were so delighted that they all cheered.



He observed their ardent wish for the President's good health for a little while before approaching one of them and taking her by the hand.

He saw that the hands were chapped and cracked, and said that they were wishing him good health and yet he would be unhappy to know that their hands were in such a state.

"We are all right so long as the President is in good health," replied the soldier. Her comrades agreed in chorus.

Calling up in his memory the unforgettable images of the women soldiers, Kim Jong Il asserted that the hearts of the Korean people and soldiers of the People's Army were overflowing with a sense of spotless loyalty of thinking of only the well-being of Kim Il Sung. Noting that the core of this loyalty was their staunch revolutionary conviction that they would fight even at the risk of their lives if only for the leader, he said that now that the ideological and mental qualities of the soldiers of the People's Army had been developed to such an extent and their life aim had been set at the highest level, a new and suitable slogan must be put forward.

The officials were excited at the mention of "a new slogan". Kim Jong Il continued that previously the People's Army had carried out its activities under the slogan "Let us safeguard the Party Central Committee headed by Comrade Kim Il Sung at the risk of our lives!" and that slogan had been very rewarding. Remarking, however, that it was high time a new slogan was put forward, he said that ***Let us fight for the great leader at the risk of our lives!***—this was the new slogan he was advancing for the People's Army. Their main duty, he added emphatically, was to train all soldiers to make up shock brigade and death-defying corps which would carry out the orders of Kim Il Sung at all costs, and they would have to step up education among soldiers under the slogan, ***Let us fight for the great leader at the risk of our lives!***

As soon as the new slogan, the core of which is to defend the leader at all costs, was made public, it stirred the blood of the officers and men of the People's Army. The slogan ***Let us fight for the great leader at the risk of our lives!*** was placed in all barracks and posts of the army, and politico-ideological education with stress on education in loyalty to Kim Il Sung was conducted briskly among the soldiers.

One day in May 1976, Kim Jong Il summoned a senior official responsible for ideological work within the People's Army. He first apologized for calling him in the dead of night before asking him about the state of affairs with regard to the ideological work within the army. While listening to the official's account, he got acquainted with the politico-ideological work done within the army.

It is necessary, he said, to bring the soldiers to a logical understanding of the mutual relationship between the leader, the Party, the class and the masses of the people, what sort of role the leader plays in the revolutionary struggle and what the essential nature of a revolutionary army is, which all resolve themselves into the question of loyalty to the leader.

Kim Jong Il paid close attention to making the Party and political officials within the army conduct education in loyalty in plain words understandable to the rank and file, in accordance with their preparedness, while intensifying overall education in loyalty with emphasis on education in logical principle.

He explained: The effect of politico-ideological education depends in large measure on how plainly it is conducted; the Party is now emphasizing that education in logical principle be intensified among the people so that they can develop a thoroughgoing Juche-oriented revolutionary outlook, a Juche-oriented world outlook. Education in logical principle should not be conducted in a complicated manner; principle itself is a profound yet simple, clear truth.

At the same time as improving the standard of logical principle of education in loyalty, Kim Jong Il ensured that the soldiers made intensive efforts to emulate the anti-Japanese revolutionary martyrs and other loyalists.

He initiated a campaign for the soldiers of the People's Army to emulate O Jung Hup<sup>5</sup>, involving his absolute and unconditional implementation of Commander Kim Il Sung's orders and instructions, a high sense of iron-like discipline and organization and an immaculate manner of management of his unit.

On December 6, 1976, he arranged a grand national memorial service in honour of O Jung Hup on the occasion of the 40<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the

latter's death, with a view to helping the entire army to emulate O.

Meeting an official of the General Political Bureau after the memorial service, Kim Jong Il said that O Jung Hup had been a prototype revolutionary soldier who was truly loyal to Kim Il Sung and his unfailing loyalty and the noble revolutionary spirit with which he had implemented the orders of his Commander to the last at all risks and under any adversity and staunchly safeguarded the Headquarters of the revolution at all costs was an invaluable model that explained how a genuine revolutionary must support and serve the leader of the revolution.

He then referred to the need for the People's Army to launch an all-out campaign to emulate O Jung Hup, and continued: Especially, the commanding officers should emulate O's heartfelt loyalty to Kim Il Sung, noble qualities worthy of a commanding officer of the revolutionary army and the manner of unit management typical of the anti-Japanese revolutionary army, acquire such noble qualities and high qualifications as he had acquired, and manage their units in the manner of the anti-Japanese revolutionary army; then, bureaucratism will disappear and any challenge can be dealt with by the People's Army.

Kim Jong Il also induced all soldiers to emulate not only the anti-Japanese revolutionary martyrs but also the heroic soldiers in the days of the Fatherland Liberation War, including Hero Ri Su Bok, who blocked an enemy pillbox with his chest to facilitate the advance of his unit.

One day in October 1976 he fully acquainted himself with Hero Ri Su Bok's life in service and spoke highly of the fact that he had treasured and taken loving care of each and every tree and blade of grass of his motherland more than anybody else. He said: Hero Ri Su Bok was, indeed, a loyal soldier. He was a true son of our Party who deemed it the greatest honour and joy to lay down his life for Kim Il Sung, and proved himself in deed. Therefore, the People's Army should take Hero Ri Su Bok as the prototype and model in the work of implementing the Party's new slogan, ***Let us fight for the great leader at the risk of our lives!*** and encourage all the officers and men to emulate Ri.

With a view to creating a new turning point in information and propagation work geared to the implementation of the faith-inspiring

slogan, *Let us fight for the great leader at the risk of our lives!* he arranged the Seventh Meeting of Propagation Workers of the Korean People's Army in late November 1977.

The meeting gave a full introduction to the achievements and experience gained in the course of smashing the obsolete framework of formalism and carrying out information and propagation activities in a fresh and militant manner, and made heated discussions about the tasks and ways for their generalization. It marked a new, revolutionary turn in the information and propagation work within the People's Army.

One day in February 1979, when the preparations for a meeting and a short course of chiefs of information and propagation sections of the political departments of the corps (services and arms) and divisions (brigades) of the Korean People's Army were in full swing, Kim Jong Il emphasized the need for arranging the meeting and short course in a significant way, and said that he would take this chance to dwell on the matter of improving and intensifying the Party work within the army.

On February 14 he addressed a letter, titled, *On Improving and Intensifying Information and Propagation Work within the People's Army*, to the participants in the meeting and short course.

In the letter he gave detailed accounts of the important contents of information and propagation work. For a revolutionary army standing face to face with the aggressive imperialists, he stressed, a period of relaxation is not allowable and not a slight aspect of peaceful atmosphere is permissible in its politico-ideological work. He continued that the Party now demanded that all information and propagation work of the People's Army be changed into battle-line information and propagation.

After their receipt of this letter the information and propagation workers of the People's Army conducted brisk battle-line information and propagation activities at their posts and training grounds, as well as sites of grand socialist construction where soldiers were dispatched to work. In this process the political and ideological awareness of the soldiers of the People's Army was enhanced beyond measure.

In the meantime, Kim Jong Il channelled his efforts into stepping up intensive education in the greatness of Kim Il Sung within the People's

Army. He frequently met the commanding officers and instilled Kim Il Sung's great qualities in their minds.

On the occasion of the 30<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the founding of the Workers' Party of Korea all officers and men of the People's Army and the entire Korean people expressed their sincere wish to confer the title of generalissimo upon Kim Il Sung, an ever-victorious brilliant commander and military strategist. The army designed with all sincerity the decorations to be sewn on the uniform of the generalissimo.

In mid-July 1975 Kim Jong Il examined the design. He offered his opinion that the design of the epaulettes of the generalissimo should duly reflect Kim Il Sung's great qualities as the title was to be accorded to him. He then gave detailed guidance for the design.

When a senior official of the People's Army came to see him a few days later with the design and a sample that had been revised and supplemented, Kim Jong Il examined them and expressed his full satisfaction. Then, to the surprise of the official, he said that the matter of the design should be deferred, informing him that Kim Il Sung was dead set against the matter of the title of generalissimo. He continued in a tone of regret that the matter had to be considered later now that Kim Il Sung had expressed an objection to it.

Consequently, this matter was shelved and the uniform of the generalissimo made with all devotion had to be put aside. It was only in 1992, about two decades later, that the ardent wish of the entire army and people finally materialized.

The two decades spent up to that time were, however, a period during which all officers and men absorbed the concept of the greatness of Kim Il Sung.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that the People's Army burnished for all eternity the exploits performed by Kim Il Sung in army-building, on the basis of a deep understanding of its historical roots.

In early February 1976 Kim Jong Il was giving guidance to various units of the People's Army on the spot. While getting acquainted with Party and political work within the army he came across the fact that April 25 was being celebrated as a holiday only every tenth year, a fact he took issue with. Now our officials, he said, are spending April 25 without attaching

political significance to it, and he continued: The revolutionary traditions established by Kim Il Sung in the flames of the anti-Japanese war constitute the historic roots of our Party and revolution, and their bloodline; our revolution, which took root in them and is being carried forward from generation to generation, must maintain succession and consistency in due course in all its undertakings.

A few days later, on February 8, Kim Il Sung summoned high-ranking officers of the People's Army and instructed them that the People's Army had better celebrate its founding anniversary in the future on April 25, the day when the Korean People's Revolutionary Army, the first revolutionary armed forces in Korea, was founded in 1932.

Kim Il Sung's instructions brought the officials to think about the hidden import of Kim Jong Il's remarks made during his on-the-spot guidance a few days before, a comment about the ordinary spending of the holiday of April 25.

On December 14, 1977, an order of the Supreme Commander on the celebration of April 25 as the anniversary of the founding of the Korean People's Army was issued.

Later, Kim Jong Il took the historic measure of celebrating as a national holiday April 25, which had been an exclusive holiday of the People's Army previously.

Kim Jong Il inspected a number of companies and posts of the People's Army, inspiring the soldiers to minute-to-minute feats with loyalty in service.

One day in March 1975 he inspected a women's AA artillery unit located in the capital city of Pyongyang. He looked round the AA gun positions, and then said to the soldiers: You must defend as securely as possible the air space over the capital city. Working on the Party Central Committee you are safeguarding, Kim Il Sung has been leading our revolution to victory, mapping out the plan for a bright future.

Some time later he came to this unit again, and exhorted the soldiers to cherish unflinching loyalty to Kim Il Sung.

In early January 1975 he sailed across rough waters to inspect a unit on an islet lying in the forefront of the frontline, and instructed the servicemen there to turn the islet into an unsinkable battleship. Upon his inspection of a



**Kim Jong Il with People's Army soldiers**

solitary military post on the frontline, he said to the soldiers that their post was what had been defended by heroic soldiers at the cost of their lives, a fact they should always bear in mind, asking them to defend the land at all costs. That day he had a souvenir photograph taken with the soldiers. When he realized that one soldier had not raised his head before the photo was taken, he felt sorry for the soldier's parents, and so he arranged for the photo to be taken again.

And he made sure that the loyalty of the soldiers of the People's Army was given fullest play in the thick of their training geared to enhancing the combat efficiency of their respective units.

With a view to intensifying decisive combat and political training within the People's Army, Kim Il Sung inspected on February 8, 1975, the field training of a unit on the spot, and put forward the important task that the entire army should train each soldier to be a match for a hundred foes through intensive training as the unit was doing. At the Tenth Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Party Central Committee held a few days later, he assigned to the People's Army a five-point training programme: Indefatigable revolutionary spirit, clever and adroit tactics, marksmanship, strong physique and iron discipline.

The day the plenary meeting was over, Kim Jong Il summoned the high-ranking officers of the People's Army, and informed them that the five-point training programme was a task that had been set by Kim Il Sung from the early days of the building of the regular armed forces and reaffirmed and decided by the Party. He told them to launch a vigorous campaign to that end.

In late March on receiving a report from a senior official of the General Political Bureau on the state of organizational and political work geared to implementation of the five-point training programme, he dwelt on the need for the People's Army to organize down to the minutest detail the work for absolute implementation of the programme, and establish a system of granting high commendation to the units or combined units that recorded collective innovations in the process. He then said to the following effect: During the Fatherland Liberation War those units that won the title of guards fought well. This shows that a commendation granted to the



collective is very rewarding in improving the morale of the soldiers and encouraging the relevant unit to implement any military assignment. It is necessary to institute a new title to be accorded to the units and combined units of the People's Army in accordance with the requirements of the developing situation.

He asked the official if he had any title in mind, before revealing his own idea about the title of "Kum Song Guards" that he thought appropriate for institution.

The new title of "Kum Song Guards" gave great encouragement to the officers and men engaged in the implementation of the five-point training programme, making a great contribution to enhancing the combat efficiency of the People's Army units. As a result, the loyalty of the officers and men to Kim Il Sung found its fullest expression in their practical endeavour for the enhancement of the combat efficiency of the People's Army.

Afterwards, the campaign to win the title of "Kum Song Guards" reached a crescendo in close combination with the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement, proving its worth as a powerful driving force for strengthening and developing the People's Army to be a loyal force fighting for Kim Il Sung at the risk of their lives, an invincible combat force capable of dealing a crushing blow at any enemy at a stroke.

#### 4. WITH UNPARALLED PLUCK AND OUTSTANDING STRATEGY

Man is the most powerful creature in the world. The masses of the people are omnipotent, and if one draws on the strength of the people, nothing is unconquerable—this is the iron conviction and will Kim Jong Il acquired in his childhood.

One summer day in 1952, when the Fatherland Liberation War was still raging, Kim Il Sung exchanged meaningful dialogues with young Kim Jong Il.

Kim Il Sung placed on the operations table two colour pencils separately from one another and asked Kim Jong Il which one of them he

would take, assuming that one was a man and the other was gun.

Kim Jong Il was pensive for a while, looking at each of the pencils in turn, before replying confidently that he would take man.

Kim Jong Il's pluck was cultivated in his childhood on the basis of his man-first conviction and will, and tempered in the crucible of practice.

His unparalleled pluck found expression, above all, in his unyielding spirit of standing firm come what may.

Once he addressed a group of commanding officers in the following vein:

Our one step backward as a concession to the enemy would lead to two steps backward, which would put our heads in the noose of the enemy. And if we ever took three steps backward, that would cause our doom. Therefore, we should on no account yield to the enemy.

Kim Jong Il always dealt a crushing blow at any attempt of the enemy by dint of his pluck.

His pluck found its fullest expression in the late 1970s, when the manoeuvres of the United States and its stooges for the provocation of a new war against Korea were reaching a more dangerous phase.

The ever-tense military and political situation on the Korean peninsula was particularly strained by the shocking "Panmunjom Incident"<sup>6</sup> on August 18, 1976.

On the morning of August 18, more than 10 US soldiers turned up with axes and clubs to chop down a poplar standing in the DPRK's side of the joint security area of Panmunjom, on a preposterous plea that the tree was hampering their vision. Chopping down the tree in the joint security area without agreement between the two sides and prior notice to the Military Armistice Commission was illegal, an undisguised act of provocation.

The guards of the Korean People's Army on routine duty prevented the provocative chopping.

Then the US soldiers pounced upon them, wielding axes and clubs.

Given the sudden and critical situation, the KPA guards were compelled to take self-defensive action. This is the background of the "Panmunjom Incident".

As if playing out a premeditated scenario, the enemy put hundreds of troops and numerous heavy arms on standby into the joint security area

of Panmunjom. The incident was not accidental, but a plotted provocation. Nonetheless, the United States took this incident as an excuse for a renewed anti-DPRK campaign, while ordering its army to be ready for an “emergency”, “military action” or “retaliatory action”. Numerous US battleships were sailing towards Korea and troops in full combat readiness were taking their positions across the whole Military Demarcation Line.

The Korean peninsula was plunged into a hair-trigger, touch-and-go crisis.

The entire Party, the whole army and all the people in the DPRK prepared themselves for a showdown the moment the enemy dared unleash renewed aggression.

In the dead of night on August 18 Kim Jong Il summoned a senior official of the General Political Bureau to his office at the Party Central Committee.

The official hurried to him, carrying the latest information on the military and political situation related to the “Panmunjom Incident”.

Kim Jong Il greeted him as he entered the office, and asked what had made him so tense. He then said that he wanted to listen to some new songs for relaxation.

The official was completely nonplussed for a while by this unexpected request.

In fact, according to that day’s programme, the official was supposed to present recordings of new songs produced by the Korean People’s Army Song and Dance Ensemble to Kim Jong Il. But he had not brought the recorded tapes because he thought Kim Jong Il could not spare the time for the songs due to the tense situation.

As the official finished telling the truth, Kim Jong Il threw back his head and roared with laughter, asking why he should not listen to music or do his job just because of the tense situation and whether it should be the case that he should be doing nothing for fear of trouble.

He continued in the following vein: We should keep a careful watch for any possible manoeuvres of the enemy, but we need not assume the defensive on all occasions. If they pounce upon us, we will fight with full confidence.

When the official gave a full account of the facts, Kim Jong Il spoke

highly of the guards, praising them as a match for a hundred foes each, and proposed granting the highest commendations to all of them.

Affected by Kim Jong Il's extraordinary pluck of taking challenges in his stride even in a tense situation when dark clouds of a new war were gathering, occasioned by the "Panmunjom Incident", the official felt relieved and convinced of a sure victory.

One of those days when the whole country was in a state of top emergency, preoccupied with a possible war, Kim Jong Il came across a fact that the unit that had been constructing a modern park in downtown Pyongyang had recalled the workers it had dispatched to a local area to collect rocks as soon as the situation of the country became tense, to prepare for a possible war. He instructed there and then that the unit re-dispatch its workers for uninterrupted promotion of the park project as scheduled, saying that the construction could not be discontinued even for a single moment, though it was true that the prevailing situation was very tense. Subsequently, despite the touch-and-go situation when a war could break out anytime, a flurry of trucks loaded with rocks, instead of ammunition, ran into the capital city of Pyongyang.

With his pluck of standing unperturbed by the onrush of the enemy tens of millions strong, Kim Jong Il smashed the enemy's offensive and brightened the dignity and honour of the country.

One day when the situation was strained to the extreme in the wake of the enemy's Team Spirit joint military exercises for 1981, Kim Jong Il summoned the chief of the General Staff of the Korean People's Army.

The chief thought some military issue of grave importance might have cropped up now that the situation was becoming tenser than ever before, and hurried to Kim Jong Il.

Kim Jong Il, smiling with all composure as ever, asked him if it was all right for the chief of the General Staff to move around now that the enemy were becoming restive. The chief, still alert and tense, reported to him on the dangerous movements of the enemy. Kim Jong Il looked at him a little while before saying: It's not surprising that the enemy are getting restive; their behaviour is habitual and the growing frequency of their rough acts nowadays is nothing but a bluff. We do not necessarily have to respond to

their behaviour all the time, but need to wait and watch their actions a little longer. If they go over the limit, then we need to take an unusual step.

Kim Jong Il told the agitated man that he had wanted him not for military matters, but because the Party Centre had decided to entrust the People's Army with the construction of the West Sea Barrage.

Far-sighted Kim Jong Il has always forestalled the US imperialists in their military attempts.

A battle is a contest between the brains of opposing commanders, and a war is a competition between the generalship of supreme commanders. This applies to both the war with gunshots and the war without gunshots. A fierce confrontation between the imperialist aggressor army watching for a chance of invasion and the revolutionary army forestalling the enemy is, in essence, a war without gunshots. The generalship of a brilliant commander is the key to victory in this type of war as well.

Kim Jong Il's protean generalship pushes the enemy onto the defensive by a single stroke in any strategic or tactical confrontation with the enemy.

One day in July 1977, on a visit to Panmunjom, Kim Jong Il stood on the balcony of the Panmun Pavilion, from where he could see the enemy nearby. For his personal safety the commanding officer of the unit doubled the number of his guards. Seeing the change in the guards of the Korean People's Army, the enemy followed suit and went on the alert. Thus a tense atmosphere was created between both sides in the joint security area of Panmunjom. The officials became strained at the unexpected situation. But, composedly watching the enemy's moves, Kim Jong Il ordered an army officer by him to withdraw the reinforced armed guards.

Seeing the People's Army guards reduced, the enemy also withdrew their extra armed guards. After a short while Kim Jong Il gave another order to increase the number of armed guards again. That was done, but the enemy did not follow suit, probably feeling a sense of disgrace. Finally the tense atmosphere was eased, and the enemy, who had reinforced their armed guards and blindly rendered the situation strained, were on the defensive.

One spring day, when the Team Spirit joint military exercises were being staged on an unprecedented scale, large enemy forces advanced

rapidly towards the Military Demarcation Line (MDL) firing bullets and shells. If they crossed the MDL, it would develop into a war.

When the enemy were approaching the frontline, Kim Jong Il ordered the People's Army units to advance all at once towards them, a bold and audacious operation to fight fire with fire. The People's Army units immediately moved to the MDL.

The enemy, who were advancing towards the frontline, were thunderstruck by the People's Army units moving down against them like a gale. Thinking that there would be a war at once, and changing from the state of training emergency to the state of combat emergency, the enemy fell into complete confusion. As a result, the exercises ended in a mess.

Hearing the report about the enemy situation from the General Staff, Kim Jong Il gave a hearty laugh, saying that the enemy must have misjudged the move of the People's Army units as manoeuvre for the formation of an attacking force.

The enemy, who were acting recklessly as if ready to cause a catastrophe, slumped down dumbfounded.

On February 1, 1983, the US forces had a plan to start the Team Spirit joint military exercises for 1983 by mobilizing about 200,000 troops, a large amount of weapons and equipment, and even nuclear weapons. That day, in the presence of Kim Il Sung and Kim Jong Il, a conference of the Political Bureau of the Party Central Committee was held in Pyongyang. The conference discussed the measures to provide against the adventurous war game of the enemy, who could provoke a war at any time.

The conference, which proceeded in a tense atmosphere, decided to place the whole country on a state of semi-war in the light of the prevailing grave situation. The point at issue was when to announce the state of semi-war.

After a heavy silence a high-ranking officer of the Ministry of the People's Armed Forces rose from his seat and suggested that in view of the enemy plan of carrying out the military exercises in three stages, it would be effective to announce the state of semi-war in mid-March, just when the exercises would be at its climax. By doing so, he added, it would be

possible to frustrate the enemy's scheme. It was a tactic which had been applied several times in the past.

Sizing up the atmosphere of the conference, Kim Jong Il stood up and said with a dignified mien: The enemy have raised an aggressive war racket by mobilizing a large amount of military manpower and equipment for Team Spirit exercises in the past. Each time we put the enemy on the defensive by dispiriting them at the proper moment, but this time they are committing the largest ever aggressive forces, and have invited even the generals and military experts of their allies. So the eyes of the world are on their reckless antics. If we keep silent, not only the enemy but the people of the rest of the world may get a false impression that we are on the defensive. We must announce the state of semi-war today, February 1, when the enemy start the military exercises.

Feeling consensus on this correct judgement and firm resolution, Kim Il Sung said that he thought his idea seemed to be right, and he agreed with him.

Straightaway, all the media simultaneously carried the report of the Supreme Headquarters that the Supreme Commander of the Korean People's Army had ordered all the units of the People's Army and all the members of the People's Security Forces, the Worker-Peasant Red Guards and the Young Red Guards to go on the alert in a state of semi-war from February 1 to mid-April. The whole country was afire with determination to frustrate the enemy's scheme.

The People's Army units were fully ready to give a crushing blow to the enemy if they invaded the country, and all the members of the Worker-Peasant Red Guards, who had been working in factories or hurrying up with farming preparations, and even the Young Red Guards, took up arms and occupied their battle positions.

The world's attention was focused on Korea. With the wireless report of the Supreme Headquarters of the Korean People's Army resounding throughout the continents and oceans, the world expressed solidarity with the self-defense measures of the Korean people and denounced the aggressive moves of the United States.

The enemy, who were blustering after massing large aggressive

forces, began to hesitate. They were overawed from the beginning.

At this moment the Supreme Commander ordered the People's Army units to shift to manoeuvres before the enemy's operation entered the "stage of actual war".

About that event the world exalted that north Korea's knockout blow had played havoc with the United States.

During the Team Spirit 84 joint military exercises the following year, Kim Jong Il made a correct judgement of the target area of the enemy's exercises, and swiftly moved a powerful strike force to the area, frustrating the enemy's second-stage offensive exercise.



## CHAPTER 16

# THE BUILDING OF THE WORKERS' PARTY OF KOREA AS A MOTHERLY PARTY

### 1. PROTECTOR OF THE PEOPLE'S DESTINY

#### BEARING FULL RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE PEOPLE'S DESTINY

No love for a man is warmer than that expressed by taking full responsibility for his destiny. It can be said that human history is, in a sense, a history of seeking love.

Kim Jong Il provides priceless political integrity for the people and looks after it to the end with motherly care and on his own responsibility.

One day when he had started working on the Party Central Committee Kim Jong Il said to the officials:

**“Our Party is a maternal Party which bears full responsibility for the people’s fate, and our Party officials are the workers of the maternal Party. The noble title of a worker of our maternal Party implies a profound meaning that you should approach people with the heart of a mother and always look after their political integrity to the end on your own responsibility.”**

One early October day in 1975 Kim Jong Il said that it would be improper to preclude a veteran film actor from attending the celebrations of the 30<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the Workers’ Party of Korea because the actor had made a mistake.

He was a film star who had been the hero in the first Korean feature film, *My Home Village*. During the Fatherland Liberation War he had participated in travelling performances for the People’s Army units, advancing as far as the Raktong River<sup>7</sup>. In the days of the temporary

strategic retreat he had followed the Party through thick and thin. He was greatly loved by the people.

Kim Jong Il went on in the following vein: Party workers must always approach Party members and working people with the heart of a mother. The Party organization should understand his feelings. A mother sternly scolds her child for its mistake, but she does not discriminate against it when feeding or clothing her children. Since he has made every effort to correct his mistake, he should be invited to the celebrations of the 30<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the Workers' Party of Korea.

Kim Jong Il's motherly care for people's political integrity was also expressed in his love and solicitude for the teachers who were enlisted for the production of a mass gymnastics display, titled, *Song of Korea*, performed by 50,000 children and students.

In August 1977, practice for the mass gymnastics was at its height in Pyongyang in the run-up to an important political event.

One day at the Moranbong Stadium (the present Kim Il Sung Stadium) Kim Jong Il directed a rehearsal of the mass gymnastics performance. On his way back he said that the children and students were taking great pains but the teachers greater pains. He asked an official concerned how many teachers were doing the work, and said that watches inscribed with Kim Il Sung's name should be awarded to them, telling the official to prepare a written recommendation for the purpose as soon as possible. The draft document left out the names of 16 persons who had been considered ineligible.

Kim Jong Il received the list and asked whether there was anyone excluded.

The official told him why the 16 teachers had not been recommended. Listening to him, Kim Jong Il, deep in thought, told him to examine them in detail and make the list again.

The official and his colleagues carefully examined the 16 teachers one by one, and added 11 of them to the list.

Kim Jong Il told them to re-investigate the five excluded teachers, querying why they should have no merits, and why there should be no faithful ones among their family members and relatives. Soon after he

dismissed the official he called him again over the phone to emphasize that as many merits as possible should be discovered.

Moved by his warm heart the officials investigated their records again in detail and recommended four of them, excluding only one female teacher.

Kim Jong Il, who was waiting for the report till dawn, was quite disappointed at the recommendation, a shadow passing over his face, and asked why one was still excluded.

The official answered, after much hesitation, commenting on the result of the investigation of her record.

Kim Jong Il fully understood why the official was hesitant. After a good deal of deep thought he said: I understand you, but think how miserable she would look if she sobbed bitterly alone when all the other teachers were delighted at their awards. I feel tears in my eyes even at the thought of her in such a sad plight. For what do we carry on the revolution? We make the revolution to bring happy and pleasant smiles to the people. The Party and its officials exist to this end. Both you and I must embrace and take warm care of all the people who follow the Party. According to your findings she has trained her class into a Chollima Class and helped it win in the several district academic contests. We must value it highly. If you hesitate, I myself will recommend her.

Then he wrote her name on the list and even the name of the watch to be awarded.

Eventually all the 1,200 teachers were recommended for official commendation.

Kim Jong Il spared nothing for the lives and health of the people and looked after them as his own flesh and blood, sending honey which the people had presented to him for his health to the women who had delivered children in the Pyongyang Maternity Hospital, and tonics to miners.

Under his warm care many people have been snatched from the jaws of death.

One mid-February day in 1975 a girl of a West Sea fishery cooperative, who had been hunting sea shells on the tidal flat, was carried out to sea on an ice floe. Informed of the accident, Kim Jong Il immediately ordered the People's Army to send helicopters to rescue her without fail.

Searchlights blazed through the dark, helicopters flew low over the sea, naval vessels, army units and people took part in the search. But it was as difficult as finding a needle in a haystack to find her on the vast sea.

Kim Jong Il did not leave the phone all night, encouraging the officers not to lose confidence. He asked, if they lost confidence, what would become of the girl on the sea, stressing that she might be looking up at the sky of the motherland believing in the Party to the end of her life.

Hearing a report that she had still not been found the next morning, Kim Jong Il sternly admonished the messenger not to inform him until she was rescued.

Moved by Kim Jong Il's concern for an ordinary fisherwoman, the pilots took to the skies again. One of the pilots, who had swept the boundless sea hundreds of times, discovered a small dot on an ice floe after 20 hours. At last the fisherwoman, who was at the crossroads of life and death, was saved. When she came back home by air, her mother who was thinking her daughter must have died, said in tears: "It was Kim Jong Il, not your mother, who saved you." All the villagers unanimously shouted, "Long live the dear leader Kim Jong Il!" and "Long live the Workers' Party of Korea!"

It was a shout of their thanks and praise to Kim Jong Il for rescuing the girl by three-dimensional operations.

The villagers were convinced that the warm love of Kim Jong Il would reach them or their children even in greater danger.

There are so many people who have been saved at the crossroads of life and death by the warm love of Kim Jong Il, including a girl operator of a VHF radio at a relay station on a remote mountain, three coal miners of a mine in the northern end of the country, two students who were members of a volunteers' team for grand socialist construction at the Pukchang Thermal Power Complex and two members of the crew of the trading ship *Hyoksin*, which was sailing across the Indian Ocean. To save these people, Kim Jong Il dispatched military planes, gave medical instructions over the radio, and sent skilled doctors, medicines and medical appliances.

## LOVING CARE THAT MAKES PEOPLE IMMORTAL

Kim Jong Il's Juche-based theory of man's socio-political integrity paves the way to immortality.

Kim Jong Il said, **"It is only when people form a social organism and acquire socio-political integrity that they can shape their destiny independently and live like men, as the masters of the world and of their own destiny. A man's physical life is mortal, but his socio-political integrity as part of the social organism is immortal."**

Socio-political integrity is what a man, as a social being, acquires through his socio-political activity for independence and creativity.

Kim Jong Il has provided immortality for the revolutionary martyrs, patriotic martyrs and heroes who performed distinguished services in different periods of the revolution.

Kim Jong Il had the Revolutionary Martyrs Cemetery and the Patriotic Martyrs Cemetery built for revolutionary and patriotic martyrs and heroic soldiers, and has ensured that their hometowns, schools, factories, farms and units of the People's Army are named after them, and that wide publicity is given to their feats. And he has also made sure that literature and art works, including feature films, operas and novels, are produced with them as prototypes to hand down their achievements to posterity.

Kim Jong Il gave wise guidance to the reconstruction and expansion project of the Revolutionary Martyrs Cemetery on Mt. Taesong and immortalized the anti-Japanese revolutionary martyrs who had laid down their lives for the liberation of the country and for the freedom and welfare of the people. His decision to reconstruct the cemetery was motivated by a touching event.

One winter night when the snow was falling in large flakes, Kim Jong Il, who was absorbed in his work, received a phone call from President Kim Il Sung.

The President said: The large snow flakes remind me of my guerrilla warfare days in the mountains. I used to stand outside a log cabin in the falling snow, waiting for the guerrillas who would come back from their

mission in the enemy area. Looking back on those days, I cannot sleep. As everyone else is asleep now, I decided to phone you.

Recollecting the arduous anti-Japanese armed struggle, they had a talk on the phone for more than an hour.

Thinking of the President who was unable to sleep that night Kim Jong Il sat up all night in his office.

Next day Kim Jong Il summoned officials and told them about his conversation with Kim Il Sung the previous night, saying that during the arduous anti-Japanese armed struggle many veterans fell in battle, that the President never forgot the martyrs, and that the martyrs cemetery should be improved.

Thus the project to reconstruct and expand the Revolutionary Martyrs Cemetery on Mt. Taesong got under way.

While directing the project, Kim Jong Il paid close attention to rebuilding the cemetery in a perfect way, so as to hand down the noble revolutionary spirit and achievements of the anti-Japanese fighters to posterity.

One summer day in 1984, while the project was in full swing, he came to the construction site and examined the samples of the martyrs' busts made of several kinds of materials.

After looking at the busts made of artificial marble and of aluminum coated with copper, he said that his conscience did not permit him to make the revolutionary martyrs' busts with artificial marble, noting that copper-coated aluminum busts were inferior to those made of copper plates. He recommended that making them with copper might be the best.

He asked how much copper would be needed to make the busts, and, learning that it would be a large amount, said that no matter how short the country was of copper, they must make the martyrs' busts with copper to make them look imposing as well as elegant, and more importantly to impart their devotion to the martyrs to improve their dignity.

That day, while examining the design for the background at the top of the cemetery, Kim Jong Il heard the explanation that dwarf pine trees would be planted and that turf would be laid there. He said that it would be more significant and characteristic to erect a waving red stone flag at the top of the cemetery.

Emphasizing the artistic significance of the red flag to the officials who were picturing it in their minds, Kim Jong Il said that, wrapped in the red flag, not enshrined in a pine grove, the revolutionary martyrs would be remembered with greater respect and the cemetery would look more solemn.

Kim Jong Il's efforts dedicated to the anti-Japanese revolutionary martyrs did not end there.

One day, in the run-up to the inauguration of the Revolutionary Martyrs Cemetery on Mt. Taesong, Kim Jong Il went to the construction site and looked at the Hero Medals on the busts of the revolutionary martyrs who had been awarded the title of Hero after liberation. He said to the following effect: It would be improper to regard them alone as heroes. O Jung Hup's bust has no Hero Medal, but he is a real hero. Had there been the system of awarding the title of Hero during the anti-Japanese struggle, all of the martyrs would have been awarded the title; all the revolutionary martyrs buried in the Revolutionary Martyrs Cemetery are heroes.

That day Kim Jong Il said that it would be better to emboss a large Hero Medal in bold relief on the centre of the wreath-laying stand than to emboss it on some individual busts. He instructed the officials in the proper way to make the bronze Hero Medal of the DPRK.

Although they were not awarded the "Gold Star" Medal in their lifetime, all the anti-Japanese revolutionary martyrs basking in the warm love of Kim Jong Il became the first-generation heroes whom the Korean nation had produced and who will be immortal with their motherland.

With the monument bearing an inscription written by Kim Il Sung, **"The lofty revolutionary spirit of the anti-Japanese revolutionary martyrs will live forever in the hearts of our Party and people,"** the anti-Japanese revolutionary fighters are immortal in the ranks of the sacred struggle to accomplish the revolutionary cause of Juche.

Although decades have passed since the anti-Japanese revolutionary martyrs died, and their images are fading away even from the memory of their own families and relatives, Kim Jong Il never forgets them, ensuring that national memorial services of political significance be held on every tenth anniversary of their death, so that the coming generations remember and emulate them.

Kim Jong Il got the Patriotic Martyrs Cemetery built to immortalize the revolutionary and patriotic martyrs and the heroes who had devoted themselves to the struggle for liberty and welfare of the people, construction of a new Korea and the victory in the Fatherland Liberation War, the postwar reconstruction and the building of socialism, the defence of the socialist country and the reunification of Korea.

Kim Jong Il also immortalized the heroic soldiers of the 1950s.

Saying that the heroes of this era were the models of true human beings who were boundlessly loyal to the Party and leader, he stated, **“The heroes of our era will remain long in the memory of the Party and the people. A hero not only shines in his or her lifetime, he or she also enjoys an immortal life. A hero never dies.”**

Only a person who achieved brilliant feats in realizing the people's desire for independence could be loved and respected by the people, Kim Jong Il said, immortalizing the heroic soldiers who fought at the cost of their lives for the Party and the leader, the motherland and the nation during the Fatherland Liberation War.

He spoke highly of their brilliant achievements, and encouraged the younger generation and other people to emulate the heroism and patriotism displayed by the heroes.

One mid-October day in 1975, inspecting the eastern front where Hero Ri Su Bok had fought, Kim Jong Il praised Ri Su Bok as a genuine hero who had devoted himself to the destiny of the nation and proved not only in his famous poem but also in reality how precious the life devoted to the motherland's future was, and said that without ardent love for his country it would have been impossible for him to fight heroically.

And he went on to say that Ri Su Bok's determination to devote his one and only life to his one and only motherland was an expression of ardent love for his motherland, and that the dedication of the bloom of his youth to the beautiful hope and the happiness in the great future was a manifestation of true patriotism.

Referring again later to Ri Su Bok's brilliant feat, Kim Jong Il said that it was his obligation to give the heroes eternal lives. Thus, Ri Su Bok was buried in the Patriotic Martyrs Cemetery to be immortalized as



an 18-year-old youth half a century after he had fallen in battle.

Under Kim Jong Il's warm care, An Yong Ae, an ordinary nurse during the Fatherland Liberation War, was portrayed as the heroine of the revolutionary opera *A True Daughter of the Party* in the early 1970s, two decades after she had sacrificed herself to save her wounded comrades-in-arms.

One evening in the presence of Kim Il Sung a performance was given of the revolutionary opera *A True Daughter of the Party* produced by the Korean People's Army Song and Dance Ensemble under the guidance of Kim Jong Il.

Music and moving scenes flowed on the stage:

Yon Ok, a nurse, carries a stretcher in combat in a unit of the People's Army advancing southward. She and wounded soldiers make a temporary retreat crossing the rolling Namchon River and steep mountains. They arrive at their destination with great difficulty, but the hospital on Mt. Thaebaek already moved away. She sings, *Where Are You, Dear General?* looking at the Big Dipper in the night sky.

At the climax of that opera, Yon Ok shields a wounded soldier from strafing by an enemy aircraft. At the last moment of her life, she produces her blood-stained Party membership card and dues and asks to send them to the Party Central Committee, saying, "I'd like to see the General." The curtain then falls.

The President and high-ranking officials left their seats, but a veteran revolutionary, Choe Hyon, An Yong Ae's former corps commander, was still sitting with his head bowed.

Kim Jong Il, on his way out of the theatre, noticed this and approached him.

The veteran was sobbing. Once widely known as a "tiger", Choe Hyon was deeply moved by the opera.

Only when his aide-de-camp whispered to him of Kim Jong Il's approach did he hurry to dry his tears and rise from his seat.

"Dear Kim Jong Il, I am so sorry for indiscretion," he blurted out.

With a smile, Kim Jong Il said, **"It can't be helped. I too shed tears."**

The veteran, calming down, said, "Dear Kim Jong Il, I shed tears of

deep thanks. I thank you very much for giving prominence to a nurse of my corps, An Yong Ae, who fell in battle 20 years ago.”

Kim Jong Il told Choe, as the latter dried his tears with a handkerchief, that all the Party members, the working masses and the soldiers of the People's Army should emulate the fighting spirit and the noble spiritual world of the heroine who performed her revolutionary task by overcoming all the trials and at the cost of her own life and asked to send her Party membership card and dues to the Party Central Committee at the last moment of her life.

After a period of deep thought and giving the revolutionary veteran a significant glance, Kim Jong Il asked him why An Yong Ae had not been awarded the title of Hero.

Choe had no answer. She had been beloved by her comrades-in-arms not only because she was kind and beautiful but also because she had faithfully carried out her combat tasks, and had been honourably admitted to the Party on the frontline. Hearing of her death the veteran had grieved, but he had not thought of her commendation. For 20 years An Yong Ae had sunk into oblivion. Choe's heart ached with deep remorse at his own irresponsibility as her commander.

Looking at the veteran and other officials, Kim Jong Il, in an earnest and determined tone of voice, said that though during the Fatherland Liberation War An Yong Ae was not awarded the title of Hero, now they must award it to her as she was entitled to be lauded as a Hero of the DPRK.

She was from south Korea and none of her blood relations was in the north.

Anxious about this, Kim Jong Il saw to it that An Yong Ae's Hero Medal and its certificate were kept on display at the Victorious Fatherland Liberation War Museum so that her heroic deed was handed down to posterity.

Kim Jong Il gave prominence as role models of self-reliance to the heroes and labour innovators in the days of the grand Chollima upsurge and the forerunners of the Chollima Movement including the ten Party members of Ragwon and workers of Kangson who had made a great contribution to the development of Korea into a socialist country, independent, self-sufficient and self-reliant in defence on the debris after the war.

Kim Jong Il also immortalized the heroes in the 1970s and 1980s who had performed great feats, struggling in the spirit of the 1950s.

One December day in 1974, an unexpected danger was threatening the miners at a face of the Youth Pit of the Pongchon Coal Mine. At that critical moment the Party cell secretary of the coal mining team had sent the other miners out away from the face, and then ignited the fuse alone for the last blast in the 70-day campaign, and died a heroic death. Informed of this fact, Kim Jong Il made sure that the miner loyal to the Party was awarded the title of Hero of the DPRK.

Moved by the great benevolence shown by Kim Jong Il, who had immortalized an ordinary miner as a hero, the miner's wife thanked him from the bottom of her heart, saying, "My husband is not dead."

The lives of the revolutionaries, who are always in the memory of the Party and the leader, the motherland and the people, will last forever. In the van of the advancing revolutionary ranks they inspire the coming generations to heroic exploits.

### EMBRACING ALL THE PEOPLE

Kim Jong Il leads all the Party organizations and Party workers to do Party work and work with people in an effective way.

One day in August 1974, Kim Jong Il, who was innovating Party organizational and ideological work, was informed that the Party committee of the Radio and TV Broadcasting Committee of the DPRK was going to transfer an announcer, one of his acquaintances, because of the questionable record of the announcer's parents.

One midnight Kim Jong Il could not calm himself down due to the thought of the announcer's mental suffering. He summoned a senior official of the Party Central Committee, and said that he liked the announcer's voice best, that each of his words connoted the great pride and happiness of living in the motherland of Juche, that his voice always sounded high-spirited and passionate, and that his high spirit, ardour, rich emotion and art of persuasive speech excited his audience and earned him the love of the people.

Kim Jong Il asked the official how long the man had worked as announcer.

Hearing that he had been on the job ten years, Kim Jong Il said to the official: They say rivers and mountains change in a decade; and you still don't trust him? Our Party is a motherly Party, and the workers of the motherly Party must always have a mother's heart in dealing with the people. No matter how many children she has, a mother looks after them equally without discrimination. If she has an unhappy child, she is more concerned about that child.

The night was advancing. Kim Jong Il, with sad steps, walked to the table and switched on a tape recorder. The familiar voice of the announcer filled the room.

Listening to the announcer's voice for a while, Kim Jong Il said: It isn't easy to be a mother. Nothing is more honourable than worrying about the people. Party officials can regard themselves as worthwhile only when they work devotedly for the people. Party workers must keep this in mind and take warm care of not only the people's political integrity but also their work and lives.

To the official, who was filled with remorse for his failure to discharge his duty as a Party worker, Kim Jong Il said that the Party should bear responsibility for and take care of the announcer on and off duty from then on.

Kim Jong Il makes strict demands on a man whom he trusts and loves. When the man makes a mistake, he is most anxious about him and does not spare the rod.

One day Kim Jong Il said to senior officials of the Party Central Committee in the following vein:

You should have a correct understanding of punishment. Punishment is a very useful means of revolutionary education, which gives officials who have made a mistake an opportunity to reflect and temper themselves. I think it is a tonic. In the past, the genuine revolutionaries regarded it as a good chance for revolutionary self-cultivation. Nowadays some officials, when punished, often grow timid and discouraged. Officials should encourage themselves rather than be dispirited by punishment. Revolutionary transformation is a good way of becoming a genuine person and a true revolutionary. Just as steel is tempered by heat, so a man is

tempered by revolutionization. In the first days of revolutionary transformation one may feel it hard to endure, but in the end one will find it a real tonic for improving oneself.

Kim Jong Il sees to it that all Party organizations and Party workers work well with people of all walks of life, to rally them around the Party. He sternly reproaches officials who approach the masses in a narrow-minded way, but he is delighted beyond measure when he sees officials who rally them behind the Party by dint of trust and love, and has the example publicized throughout the Party.

One day in July 1977 he was informed that the chief Party secretary of a county in South Hwanghae Province, a county lying along the Military Demarcation Line, was working efficiently among the masses. He assigned an official of the Party Central Committee to the task of inquiring into the matter in detail.

The chief secretary had been criticized several times previously for his leftist deviations in his work with the masses. While reflecting upon his view in the light of Kim Jong Il's earnest instructions on how to work among the people, he buckled down to work with the masses of all strata. This new approach did him credit.

On a busy weeding day he went out to a paddy field in the company of the ri Party secretary of a farm, where they offered a helping hand to two women in their weeding.

He did not stand on ceremony with them, although the husband of one of them had gone over to south Korea during the war. They sat together for the break. He gave them a simple account of the Juche farming method<sup>8</sup> set forth by Kim Il Sung, amusing the women with jokes quite often during the talk.

In the afternoon he moved to a tobacco field, and helped an old man, father-in-law of the abandoned woman.

Awe-stricken as he had been with the official at first, the old man soon opened his heart, confessing at last that he felt guilty about his only son, who had defected to the south for fear of punishment for a crime.

The chief secretary said to him in a soothing tone that he knew about the old man's son, and he were not to blame for his son's misdeed, and all the blame should go to the US aggressors in the long run.

As dusk drew near, they called a halt to the weeding. On the way back he asked the old man if he could stay at his home for the night. A dubious look crossed the face of the old man, but the official reaffirmed that he would visit the house after dinner. The old man protested that his house was unsuitable for such a high official as the chief Party secretary of the county. He tried to persuade the guest to stay at the workteam Party cell secretary's, still feeling ashamed of his family background. The guest did not relent and countered that as they worked together in the daytime, so should they share a bed at night.

That night the official, lying side by side with the host, talked until the small hours on many topics, ranging from the previous year's income of the family to its household affairs. He fell asleep almost at dawn. The old man, still awake, kept tearful eyes on the official in a peaceful slumber through the rest of the night. First thing in the morning the only daughter of the abandoned woman, who had been working some 8 kilometres away on secondment, ran all the way back home to confirm the truth of the fact that the chief secretary had worked together with her mother the previous day.

Seeing the chief secretary sitting at their breakfast table, she felt overwhelmed beyond measure. "Chief secretary..." she said, but trailed off and plumped down, tears welling up in her eyes. The secretary felt the same emotion. He took a long while soothing and having her seated beside him.

The whole family thanked him time and again, and plied him with their best dishes.

The chief secretary thanked them for all their services and said, "Your thanks should go to Kim Jong Il. Some of our Party officials, including me, have been biased against people like you. He is very worried about it. Some days ago he taught us again to treat the people fair and square and assist them in every possible way. This is the Party's policy."

He expanded on the Party's mass line in plain language.

His explanation brought the old man to express his innermost thoughts in the following way: "Occasionally some biased officials of the ri Party committee rubbed salt into my wounds, throwing me into a state of lethargy; however, I used to jolt out of it into action, prompted by the thought that their offensive behaviour would not accord with the Party's

policy. Although my son has forsaken us, the Party embraced us, attending to our needs in every possible way. Who should we trust, and where on earth should we go? It is only the Party we must follow no matter what we may face in the process, either deserted or driven away.”

Later on, the chief secretary dropped in on them whenever he passed by, and inquired about their conditions.

The story was passed from mouth to mouth, exceeding the boundaries of the ri and the county, until it spread throughout the area along the Military Demarcation Line, exerting a strong influence upon those of the same ilk.

An official, who had been sent on a fact-finding mission to that county, put together every bit of data about the chief secretary and brought it to Kim Jong Il.

Kim Jong Il, judging that the issue was of great political significance, made time to listen to the story from the beginning to the end, and said to the following effect:

This issue is worth considering. It convinces us that the people will open their hearts to the Party, following it devotedly, as long as the latter trusts the former without reserve. But some narrow-minded officials tend to keep such people at arm’s length, far from guiding them along the Party lines. This is a serious matter. We must rally the broad masses of the people around the Party. Therefore, the Party officials must always mix with the people and shower the Party’s trust and love upon them. They should frequently meet those with complicated pasts, to say nothing of the basic sections of the masses of the people. Mingling with them at work, they should heal their sores, treating them kindly and winning them over in a broad-minded manner, so that they come to open their hearts. This is precisely the process of bringing the Party’s trust and love home to them, a process of the Party winning them over. It is only when the Party showers its trust and love upon the people that they will remain loyal and sincere to it. **“Let’s build a new society with trust and love,”** this is my invariable motto.

The Party officials, he continued, should keep this motto in mind as they work among the people. Trust and love will open the door to the people’s minds. After winning their hearts the officials should look after their destiny with a full sense of responsibility.

That day he urged the official to search out such exemplary cases across the country, and arrange an experience-swapping seminar.

## 2. AS BEFITTING THE OFFICIALS OF THE MOTHERLY PARTY

### PARTY OFFICIALS MUST BECOME TRUE SERVANTS OF THE PEOPLE

Developing the Workers' Party of Korea into a motherly party requires all its officials to become true servants of the people with genuine traits of a mother and a noble sense of devotion for the well-being of the people.

With regard to this, the traits of a mother required of Party officials, Kim Jong Il said as follows:

**“In order to fulfil their responsibility and play their role as the workers of a motherly Party, and to prove themselves worthy of the people’s trust and expectations, Party officials must have the genuine traits of a real mother.**

**“A real mother wishes to give her children all the best things in the world, and so she faces whatever dangers or difficulties there are unhesitatingly for the good of her children. That is what a mother’s heart is like. Her benevolence towards her children is pure, profound and genuine. That is why children call for their mothers when they are happy, when they are sad, and even when they are grown up.**

**“Mothers lavish all their efforts on raising their children normally. It takes a mother 50,000 days’ labour to rear a child, so she used to be called *omani* (50,000—the ‘50,000-er’). In some parts of our country a mother is still called *omani*, although the standard word is *omoni*.”**

He explained that the word *omoni* implies the unreserved care and pains that a mother takes to rear her offspring. She considers all of them her own pleasure, he said, however hard to manage them might be, and so long as the Party officials possess such traits and work heart and soul for the people’s well-being, regarding it as their top concern, no solution



will be impossible for any problems related to the people's lives.

Kim Jong Il led all the Party officials to live and work in this way.

One February day in 1974 Kim Jong Il appointed a junior official to work as a senior official of the Party Central Committee, and told him there and then that Party officials must serve the people faithfully bearing in mind the lofty idea of Kim Il Sung who loves the people most of all, and that only when they mingled well with the masses of the people and worked devotedly for their interests would the masses come to entrust their destiny to the Party with an unshakable faith, and the Party and the people form an integral whole.

Kim Jong Il went on that a genuine Party official is a person who respects and loves the people from the bottom of his or her heart anytime and anywhere, lends a sincere ear to their opinions, takes their pains for his or her own and finds timely solutions to their needs and discomforts, noting that the experience showed that cadres, even if they are of working-class origin, are apt to be forgetful about their class origin, tending to become bureaucratic and aristocratic, unless they strive to complete their revolutionary training.

Kim Jong Il also exhorted the nominee to correct his hot-tempered disposition. His remarks brimming over with confidence and sincerity, the official, full of emotion, vowed that he would always serve the people faithfully as befits a worker of the motherly Party.

It turned out, however, that translating this vow into deeds was not as easy as he had thought.

At the outset of his assumption of the new post, he did his best to control his temper. But with the lapse of time his controversial attitude reasserted itself, and he again tended to lose his temper every time things did not go his way.

Around this time Kim Jong Il summoned him for a heart-to-heart talk. He said to him in the following vein:

You must keep in mind that you are working on the Party Central Committee. You are demeaning yourself by holding on to your abusive style towards officials of the central organs and industrial complexes subject to your guidance. Among them are officials of working-class origin, scholars and technicians. Many of them are your seniors in terms of age, and people

who have long held important posts. You are the last person to earn their favour because you often adopt an arbitrary manner and use abusive language with no respect for their background. A bureaucratic manner is the last thing which can win them over. You don't seem to realise that such a style and manner may undermine the Party's foundation. I don't see why you keep making the same mistake which you know yourself is wrong. I suppose love holds the key in the long run. You know the importance of revolutionary tasks, but you do not know how much the officials, the very performers of the tasks, count. You cannot make revolution alone.

Kim Jong Il's perspicacious remarks made a tremendous impact on the man. They pinpointed the cause of the mistake he was straining to remedy but to little avail, and mirrored the speaker's invariable intention to train him to be a true official of the Party.

Afterwards, the official showed respect for the people and officials of the relevant organs, took as much loving care of them as if they had been his blood relations and devoted himself to the benefit of the people, bearing deep in mind his class origin and duty, thus proving himself worthy of the title of a genuine Party worker, a servant of the people.

Kim Jong Il led all the Party officials to faithfully serve the people.

In mid-May 1974 a document was submitted to the Party Central Committee regarding an official of a county Party committee. It accused the man as follows: He arranges many things but fails to finish any of them. Worse still, he puts on airs and seeks preferential treatment. It is said that he puts a ri Party secretary under implicit pressure for alleged unsatisfactory treatment of the aforesaid.

Having read the document, Kim Jong Il speculated that there must be something behind these accusations. He arranged an immediate check on the county Party committee involved.

The check revealed that matters concerning the official had assumed a grave character, and his bad manner was affecting many of his equals on the committee. The way in which the officials of this committee were seeking special treatment from the county residents while paying no heed to their living conditions had nothing in common with the traits required of officials of the motherly Party.

In late June an overview of the check was brought to Kim Jong Il's notice. After perusing it, he said, in a serious tone: The case in hand is very serious. Some Party officials are idling away their time while seeking privileged services because they are still influenced by the old working manner characteristic of reactionary bureaucrats in the previous exploiter society. Any Party official who is pompous and given to seeking special treatment in return for no service while abusing his or her Party position can hardly expect support and respect from the people; what we need are Party officials who work devotedly for the interests of the people, the Party officials who enjoy the support and respect of the people, not those scorned by the people. If a Party worker abuses Party authority and behaves arbitrarily, looking merely for preferential treatment, he or she should be judged as having already degenerated, and unmindful of his or her duty as a servant of the people.

Kim Jong Il reiterated that aristocratic and bureaucratic behaviour would do nothing but tarnish the image of Party officials among the people and weaken the public trust in the Party, and, worse still, place a drag on the full implementation of the Party's policy. At the moment, he said, Party officials are held in respect among Party members and other working people not because they are superior to others, but because of the high prestige and dignity of the Party. However, some Party officials are tarnishing the reputation of the Party by behaving arbitrarily, thinking that their superiority entitles them to special treatment.

Kim Jong Il asserted that he would avail himself of this opportunity to single out those of such a sort for trenchant criticism—the officials who sought preferential treatment and treated people unfairly on the basis of their personal interests.

He saw to it that additional data regarding the misdeeds of officials of other city and county Party committees would be compiled and presented to the forthcoming national workshop of Party organization workers scheduled for August the same year. He stressed that the data should be a theme for the ideological campaign at the workshop.

Kim Jong Il took personal care to train the Party officials to be loyal servants of the people.

One midnight in June 1976 he made a long-distance call to an official of the Party Central Committee who had been working at the Musan Mine on a mission of rousing the miners to increased production. He asked the official about the living conditions of the miners there, particularly the newly-posted discharged soldiers and their boarding conditions.

The official faltered a moment, since he had neglected this matter, focusing solely on the production of concentrate in urgent need.

Reading his mind, Kim Jong Il changed the subject to the situation of the mine.

The official informed him about the total amount of concentrate production and the current development of the ongoing stope extension project.

To this report, Kim Jong Il responded to the following effect: It is not enough. You skipped the subject of the building of residential houses for the miners. In consideration of the importance of the mine, the Party sent a large reinforcement composed of discharged soldiers and technical experts. Building houses for them should have been your priority concern.

The official admitted that he had fudged the issue.

Kim Jong Il answered in a resolute tone, **“You must immediately build houses, wonderful ones.”**

He continued: Neither materials nor manpower is in question; the point at issue is your lack of revolutionary viewpoint concerning the masses and lack of spirit to serve the people devotedly. The day we parted I stressed there and then that concentrate production would not take place of its own accord, and that, therefore, you should first think of the miners, the very producers of the mineral. To my regret, however, you paid little attention to their living conditions. In view of the fact that the miners trust our Party as their mothers, your mistake is deplorable.

He then advised the official to make sure the housing project was completed before winter, and continued: In my opinion, arranging rows of cozy buildings at the foot of the mountain would be aesthetically pleasing, each flat with more than one living room and furnished with a full set of furniture. We should spare nothing for the well-being of the miners.

Upon hearing the news of his instruction, the whole mine was roused to a high pitch of enthusiasm.

Even the local housewives volunteered to work at the construction site, and the miners joined them straight after the working day, laying the foundations and making weathered-gneiss blocks.

The whole mine pitched in and finished the project for building 1,000 flats. In the meantime, the daily output of iron ore jumped from 6,000 to 10,000 tons, while the projects for the development of a new stope and Conveyor Belt No.1 saw their completion half a year ahead of schedule and on schedule, respectively.

One summer day Kim Jong Il came to know that certain workers seconded for an important project were having to live in tents pitched on river bank, and were unable to get enough sleep because of mosquitoes. This state of affairs was hampering the progress of the project.

Kim Jong Il immediately phoned an official of the Party Central Committee on the spot, and told him that the offices and living quarters belonging to staff members of the project headquarters should be transformed into lodgings for the workers as soon as possible.

Soon afterwards, he arranged a supply of mosquito nets for the site.

Kim Jong Il's paternal concern for the people found expression also in the introduction of the paid vacation system exclusively for workers on long-term service away from their work places.

Around this time, a construction project was under way involving mostly young workers. They were away from their families for so long that some of them often went home without permission and returned several days later. Several admonitions had been of little avail.

After learning about this, Kim Jong Il made a long-distance call to a Party official dispatched there, and advised him as follows:

It is natural that the young newly-weds miss their families. You should have understood their feelings with a correct viewpoint of the people. If they are allowed to take turns to spend a week or so with their families every quarter, those young people will make up for their one-week absence in a few days and overfulfil their weekly quota. Then, they will have no more reason for absence from duty.

This was how the vacation system came into being.

As mentioned above, it was solely thanks to Kim Jong Il's meticulous

care and principled guidance that Party officials could train themselves to be true servants of the people and genuine workers of the motherly Party, who valued the people most of all and served them by all means.

### TO MAKE OFFICIALS SHARE WEAL AND WOE WITH THE PEOPLE

Kim Jong Il once quoted a teaching of Kim Il Sung: It is easier to become a mother in name than to become a mother in practice. Likewise, it may not be difficult to become a Party official, but it is not easy to prove himself or herself worthy of the name; when her baby cries, a mother discerns the trouble, whether from hunger, illness, fatigue or a wet diaper, and then offers her helping hand accordingly.

He continued in a similar vein: Some Party officials are working by rule of thumb as a silly mother might try to breast-feed her baby crying with fatigue. The key to winning the people is in their minds. To acquaint oneself with the people, one must live with them, and to get to know them inside out, one must understand their feelings. They say that the real test of a river is to cross it and the real test of a man is to live with him. There is also another saying that sitting close evokes a feeling of intimacy. Therefore, if a Party official is to know the people, he or she should always mix with the people, working together with them and solving their problems both at work and outside work, all the time trying to understand their true feelings.

To mingle with the people and share weal and woe with them—this is what Kim Jong Il defined as the best way for understanding people’s minds and the basic means of finding the master key to motivating them.

From his first day of taking office on the Party Central Committee, Kim Jong Il shared a room with his colleagues and was on close terms with them. On the first day he was guided to a room reserved for his exclusive use, an ordinary room furnished with a desk and a chair, a small filing cabinet and a telephone. Stepping into the room, he solemnly said that he would not use it, adding that during the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle Kim Il Sung, although he was the commander, was always with his soldiers and shared weal and woe with them, sometimes standing on

sentry duty and eating from the same pot. Kim Jong Il stated that he was just another Party worker serving the President.

Afterwards, Kim Jong Il asked his fellow officials to inform him of any visitor's call at any time, saying: In order to make the people call our Party the motherly Party from the bottom of their hearts, the Party's line and policy must reflect the interests of the people; what is more, Party officials should treat, educate and lead the people as mothers would do their children. By a person of profound humanity that I ask a Party official to become I never mean a soft-hearted man who even tolerates wrongdoing. I do not think people call at a Party committee only for soft words, nor do I ask Party officials to mingle with the masses indiscriminately. Party officials should be so warm-hearted that all the people become as willing to call on them as they call on their own mothers.

Kim Jong Il paid primary concern to ensuring that Party officials made it a rule and a daily routine to go among the people with knapsacks on their backs, just as the anti-Japanese guerrillas did.

He once said as follows:

**“We hope to meet with county Party officials of ideological work whenever and wherever we visit. If Comrade Kim Il Sung during a tour for field guidance asks a man in a field who he is, the answer should be ‘I am a county Party secretary for ideology.’ If he asks what he is there for, the answer should be ‘I am here to explain the Party’s policy.’ I think this is the ideal situation. Then the Party’s voice will always ring out among the masses, and the masses will breathe the same air as the Party.”**

Bearing his instructions in mind, all Party officials strove to go among the masses. They always worked with the people as the anti-Japanese guerrillas had done, awakening the masses and rousing them to the implementation of the Party's policies. In the process, they gained many good experiences.

Each time he heard a report of an experience gained by officials or units, Kim Jong Il was delighted more than anybody else, and took immediate measures to publicize it throughout the Party.

One day in March 1975 Kim Jong Il visited the newly-built Three-Revolution Exhibition.

Looking around the relief maps and other materials on display, all of which concerned the process of the ideological revolution, he stopped before the visual aids consisting of a large relief map and photographs regarding the work of officials of the Party committee of Anju County, South Phyongan Province.

The visual aids presented a detailed introduction of activities carried out by the officials on this committee, ranging from their discussion about the plan of going down to lower units, through their actual deeds of going among the masses with knapsacks on their backs explaining Kim Il Sung's teachings and Party policies among them, breathing the same air with them, rousing them to increased efforts, arranging lecture meetings and study sessions to guiding the impression meeting after a film show, disseminating revolutionary songs and talking with farmers at home. An array of charts explained a well-regulated work system whereby the officials would come up to the county Party committee for ideological re-arming and re-arrangement of things before going down to the fields again. Also displayed were a typical knapsack and a variety of materials and other visual aids used to rouse the masses to increased production. The knapsack was filled with Kim Il Sung's works, reminiscences of the anti-Japanese guerrilla fighters, papers explaining Party policies and the Juche farming method, a harmonica, watercolours and painting brushes.

After going over the display, Kim Jong Il highly praised the officials for having carried such knapsacks as they went down for propagation purposes, saying that they correctly grasped the intention of the Party Centre.

Kim Jong Il asserted that this was one of the key points for which he had decided to effect a turn in the Party ideological work and on which he had put stress on several occasions, and took measures there and then for publicizing the experiences gained by the officials on the Anju County Party Committee. Looking at the knapsack, ordinary as it was, he visualized the new images of Party officials engaged in Party work in a fresh manner in the style of the anti-Japanese guerrilla army by discarding the outmoded conventional work style.

Each time he found officials lingering around their offices, unwilling to go among the people, Kim Jong Il reasoned with them about their mistaken



viewpoint or scolded them if necessary, leading them all to work faithfully as intended by the Party.

Once when he went to the area along the Military Demarcation Line, on a mission of on-the-spot guidance, he conversed with the inhabitants. In the course of conversation he came across a fact that the senior official of the provincial Party committee concerned was making little trips to the fields. On his way back Kim Jong Il took time off to see the official and advised that he should make frequent visits to subordinate organs and meet the residents of the area along the Military Demarcation Line.

This advice was a timely alarm call for officials there who were still lagging behind in adopting a new work style. They used to acquaint themselves with the situation of the subordinate units through reports, meetings or other documents, locked up in their own offices for much of their working hours, hardly venturing into the vibrant reality. Oral instructions and pressing demands remained their single way of guiding the subordinates.

Bearing this advice deep in his mind, the senior official did his best to work as urged, determined to spend at least a fortnight every month with the people.

Some days later Kim Jong Il called him long-distance, but failed to get him on the line for he had gone out to a subordinate organ.

The official learned about the call later, and was mortified. It was quite a long time after that before he could apologize to Kim Jong Il for his failure to answer the call.

Kim Jong Il responded that he did not mind a bit about the matter, and praised the official's work style as commendable.

Many Party officials followed suit, discarding their short-sighted manner of working in offices or on the phone, and plunging in the thick of things where the people were working, carrying knapsacks on their backs, the way the anti-Japanese guerrillas had done.

On February 6, 1976, Kim Jong Il convened a consultative meeting of senior officials of the Party Central Committee, and stressed the need for Party officials to keep to the letter the principle of assisting subordinate units on the spot. Noting that Party officials can neither grasp the particular circumstances of the subordinate units nor take appropriate measures in

accordance with their specific conditions unless they go there themselves, he said that only when they bring their guidance close to the lower units, will they be able to give fullest play to the political enthusiasm and creative vigour of the masses, and mobilize them for full implementation of the revolutionary tasks on hand. Down at the subordinate units, he stressed, Party officials must mix with the people.

He said:

**“Party officials must mingle well with the masses of the people, working unreservedly and sharing bed and board with them.”**

Sharing bed and board with workers and farmers at the subordinate units—this is one of the guiding principles Kim Jong Il stressed that Party officials should adhere to.

One day Kim Jong Il called a consultative meeting in his own office—a surprise call for the attendees. He led off the meeting by reading a report on a Party official who had been on a guiding mission at a machine factory.

The official in question did not share meals with the workers there but ate and slept at a good hotel. At the outset of his mission he gained a good reputation among the workers by wearing overalls and work boots the same as the ordinary workers in the work place. During breaks, he sat together with them, offering them cigarettes and explaining the Party’s policies in plain language, thus stimulating them to redouble their efforts. He thus stood high in their favour.

However, his reputation soon faded away, because he was staying not at the workers’ hostel but at a hotel located in the county seat, not far from the factory. In fact, although he was with the workers on the production site during the day, he enjoyed special treatment at the hotel in the evening. As they came to know about this, the workers started to regard him as a stranger.

The case seemed to concern only a single official, but Kim Jong Il knew better. Therefore, he called the surprise meeting for an ideological campaign against such deviation.

Kim Jong Il cast a solemn glance at the officials one by one for a little while, and said in a serious undertone in the following effect: That official should have shared bed and board with the workers; while leading lax life at a place other than the factory he had to work at, how efficient could he have

been in his guidance mission and how much could he have learnt, if anything, from the working people there? Officials on a guiding mission at a subordinate unit must eat corn if it is the meal for the workers. Nothing serious occurred as far as this case is concerned, just because our working people are good-natured. They are making every effort to produce more by the sweat of their brows, facing up to all challenges. If they see a Party official relaxing at a hotel, what would they say? How can a Party official behave like that?

He paused a little, as if to calm down, and went on: He should be ashamed of his conduct. He went down on a mission to ease the strain on the national economy by relying on the working class, but I wonder why he could not eat from the same wok with the workers at their hostel. Why, then, did he go down as far as the factory if he was to stay at a hotel away from the workers? Who can believe that such a man who went to a hotel for better meals than those of the workers would not turn traitor when the revolution undergoes trials? Such an egoist, who did not hesitate to betray the workers and walk away to a hotel today, may still not hesitate to betray even the Party in future.

To the officials, who became remorseful during his speech, Kim Jong Il continued: You should not dare to say that you're among the workers just because you are at their factories or enterprises, and wearing overalls. Only when you share weal and woe, and bed and board with the people in the thick of things, can you say that you are among the masses. It is only when you go among the producer masses that you will be able to give free rein to their inexhaustible strength and wisdom so as to give a strong impetus to production and construction. Directives or a few lecture meetings can hardly work in this regard. If our officials take the lead, sharing meals with the masses, the latter will come to follow them sincerely, regarding them as true servants of the people.

The attendees took Kim Jong Il's criticism as directed both at the official in question and at themselves.

Afterwards Kim Jong Il took every opportunity to advise Party officials on how to cultivate their manners and warn them not to pursue preferential treatment.

Thanks to his principled advice and detailed guidance, Party officials

trained themselves to become kind-hearted educators and assistants of the masses, always mingling well with them and sharing bed and board with them as if they were their blood relations.

### A YEAR OF RECTIFYING ERRONEOUS WORK METHOD AND STYLE

Kim Jong Il strove to help Party officials to apply a concrete methodology in their work.

In August 1975 a false report was submitted to the Party Central Committee that a recent flood had washed the whole store of fish away from a fish farm located in Yonam-ri, Unryul County.

The truth behind the report was as follows: The senior official in charge did not verify the issue personally but assigned it to a junior, who, for his part, relayed the assignment to a subordinate. The latter made a single call to the farm for confirmation of the issue.

Kim Jong Il commented that such a bureaucratic and formalistic manner of ordering subordinates to take care of things without indicating a proper method for the purpose was something akin to the outdated method of work inherent in the bureaucrats of an exploiter society. He said that in the case of a senior official assigning his or her junior to verify a report, he or she should make clear such details as where to go, whom to meet, how to confirm the report and when to report the result. The way senior officials merely dictate assignments to their subordinates without giving detailed instructions on the methodology, and pass the buck to their juniors when things go wrong, he said, is precisely bureaucracy. Such a haphazard style is one of bad habits that date far back; so long as there remain such evils as bureaucracy, formalism and dogmatism, it will be impossible to develop our Party. We must sweep away the outmoded method of work, he emphasized.

Kim Jong Il defined the following year, 1976, as a year for rectifying the erroneous work method and style of Party officials, and launched a vigorous campaign against outdated ideological trends and for intensive ideological education.

At a consultative meeting of chief secretaries of the provincial Party

committees and senior officials of the Party Central Committee, on January 1, 1976, Kim Jong Il delivered a speech, titled, ***On Some Key Tasks to Be Tackled in Party Work This Year***. In his speech he pinpointed the work method and style of the Party officials as the knottiest problem in Party work, and emphasized the importance of launching a sweeping campaign that year for rectifying them. Stressing that the key to the solution is to master Kim Il Sung's work method and apply it in one's work, he clarified its revolutionary essence and characteristics as follows:

**“Comrade Kim Il Sung’s work method is, in a nutshell, a Juche-orientated method. It enables the masses of the people to keep their stand as masters of the revolution and construction, and faithfully play their role as such.”**

Kim Jong Il asserted that the Workers’ Party of Korea must apply General Secretary Kim Il Sung’s work method in all its activities and set forth concrete ways to this end.

In order to produce a greater effect in ideological education and campaigns geared to improving the work method and style of Party officials, he saw to it that it was closely combined with the actual process of their Party work.

In early January 1976 Kim Jong Il assigned a senior official of the Party Central Committee to write an overview of the agricultural situation across the country in an effort to make adequate preparations for the year’s farming.

On February 6 the same year he summoned a consultative meeting of senior officials of the Party Central Committee, and summarized the drawbacks in the work of the agricultural sector during the previous year. Some cooperatives had not secured an adequate amount of compost for maize-seedlings, and, therefore, they stuffed soil into many of the humus cakes. Worse still, they did not finish rice transplantation in time. In other local areas they indiscriminately planted seedlings unsuitable for their specific soil conditions, running counter to the principle of the right crop in the right soil; they also did not set up a scientific fertilizing system. Consequently, the country failed to reap more crops in that year.

Party organizations and officials at all levels must review those

drawbacks critically, and adopt substantial measures to intensify their guidance of farming, he emphasized. To this end, he said, Party officials must effect a radical improvement in the method and style of work.

Around that time bureaucracy prevailed in local areas. Some county Party officials used to bully their subordinates, complaining about the latter's authentic reports on grain production and criticizing them on the ground that the grain output of the farms under their charge was far less than that of others. One of them even mobilized a huge crowd of people to apply the remaining quantity of additional fertilizer overnight, alleging that the fertilizer should be applied by June 20.

Kim Jong Il commented on the above issues as follows: Such bureaucratic deviations derive from the officials' backward ideology and poor qualifications, with the result that the Party's policies were distorted. Agricultural officials may be accountable for the shortcomings revealed in the last year's farming, but most of the blame should be laid on the local Party officials who blindly danced to the tune of administrative officials and worked in a bureaucratic manner. Frankly speaking, the officials of the county and other local Party committees must bear the full responsibility for the situation.

He then referred to the need for Party officials to work hard to rid themselves of the outdated method and style, and thus acquire Kim Il Sung's work method, Chongsanri spirit and method, and expanded on the detailed ways for the purpose.

While perusing the overview of the agricultural situation, Kim Jong Il gained a deep knowledge of the Party officials' bureaucratic and formalistic work style and its harmful effects. On February 9, 1976, three days after the consultative meeting, he called another meeting of senior officials of the Party Central Committee, plus the chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees, and elucidated the urgent tasks for Party organizations.

He said:

**“At present improving the work method and style of the Party officials is not simply a business matter, but a fundamental requirement for developing Party work in greater depth. For this reason, the Party Centre has defined this year as a year of setting right**

**the work method and style, and presented it as the central task in Party work to make the Party officials establish the revolutionary work method and popular work style.**

**“Senior officials of the provincial, city and county Party committees must keep in mind that they will no longer be able to stay at their posts unless they radically improve their work method and style, and work hard to master our Party’s revolutionary work method and popular work style.”**

In response, the Party officials pitched in and made a tangible improvement in this regard that year, through a vigorous ideological campaign and in the actual process of their work, and, particularly, under the wise and personal guidance of Kim Jong Il over the details of their Party work.

Kim Jong Il led them to put greater input into their endeavours the following year, on the basis of their success in this regard.

On the New Year’s Day the following year Kim Jong Il dwelt on the main tasks to be tackled by Party organizations that year. One of them was to launch an uncompromising struggle against any manifestations of the outmoded method and style in order that all Party officials would strive to fully apply Kim Il Sung’s work method and style to their work and raise their political and practical qualifications to play their role faithfully.

On January 14, he delivered a speech, titled, ***On Eliminating Formalism from Party Work***, at a meeting of senior officials of the Party Central Committee.

On April 9 the same year he summoned a meeting of chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees, and talked about the process of improving and intensifying the work of the provincial, city and county Party committees. He upbraided them for the fact that some Party officials lacked maternal love for the people, who regarded the WPK as the motherly party.

A couple of days later, while meeting relevant officials of the Party Central Committee, he stressed again the significance of the ceaseless struggle to rectify the erroneous work method and style, saying that Party officials should take maternal care of the Party members and other working people.

In mid-August he emphasized the same point in a speech, titled, *The Core of Party Work Is Work with the People*, delivered at the workshop for the secretaries and chiefs of the organizational departments of the provincial, city and county Party committees.

As a result, all the Party officials strove hard to work well among the people with maternal care, as intended by the Party.

Kim Jong Il showed no mercy to any Party officials who tended to violate the laws of the State. Once in a while they made light of the laws and infringed upon them mindless of the consequences. Each time he reproved such people in the following vein: In our society no one is exempt from the State laws and regulations; every one of us must observe the laws and regulations of the State. Party officials, too, if they have inflicted losses on national property caused by violation of laws or regulations, must be punished accordingly, as management officials are.

In 1977 a senior official of a province was charged with breach of law by causing a car accident. Some officials of the provincial Party committee made an effort to condone his wrongdoing, seemingly out of kindness.

Kim Jong Il brought up the issue at a meeting of chief secretaries of provincial Party committees and senior officials of the Party Central Committee and commented that this attempt was an expression devoid of class character. Party officials, he said, should refrain from speaking in favour of an offender, however high-ranking he or she might be, and instead induce the relevant judicial institutions to punish him or her appropriately. He stressed that our legal system requires every citizen to observe the law, and, in case of a violation, the offender is to be put squarely in the dock.

Kim Jong Il also got tough with those who would jockey for special treatment, throwing their weight about.

It happened that the chairman of a provincial people's committee dropped into a restaurant in a casual suit. That day he witnessed a batch of late-comers who were seemingly high-ranking officials of the province, being served out of turn and behaving rudely.

Kim Jong Il learned about the issue and disclosed it at a meeting of chief secretaries of provincial Party committees and senior officials of the Party Central Committee held in August 1977. He pointed out as follows:



Some officials are abusing their authority and demanding preferential treatment. This is mainly due to lack of ideological education among the officials. There can never be a special being in our society. They are all Korean citizens and WPK members; they differ from others in nothing but in Party assignment and duty. A Party-wide campaign should be launched to put an end to abuses of authority among officials.

Kim Jong Il's designation of 1976 as the year for rectifying erroneous work method and style of Party officials, followed by his wise leadership and detailed guidance over the Party-wide campaign geared to the purpose and to following up the success gained in the process were rewarded with all Party officials ridding themselves of the outdated work method and style and acquiring traits required of workers of the motherly party.

---

---

## CHAPTER 17

# INHERITING AND DEVELOPING THE REVOLUTIONARY TRADITIONS OF JUCHE IN AN ALL-ROUND WAY

### 1. BUILDING BASES FOR EDUCATION IN THE REVOLUTIONARY TRADITIONS

#### CONSTRUCTION OF THE WANGJAESAN REVOLUTIONARY SITE

Defending and properly taking over the revolutionary traditions is the only way to unswervingly advance the revolutionary cause started by the leader, and negotiate all trials and difficulties on the way.

Kim Il Sung created the Party's revolutionary traditions during the arduous anti-Japanese struggle, and enriched them while leading the revolution and construction to victory after the country's liberation.

Kim Jong Il consistently and staunchly safeguarded these traditions, and, in the early 1970s, started carrying them forward in an all-round manner.

One of his overriding concerns with regard to the revolutionary traditions of Juche was to develop the historical sites and battlefields of the revolution associated with Kim Il Sung's undying exploits and use them as a medium for intensified education.

The 1970s witnessed a transformation in the construction of many such sites.

Kim Jong Il decided to wind up in a grand manner the construction of the Wangjaesan Revolutionary Site in Onsong County, North Hamgyong Province, a project of significance in developing the revolutionary traditions of Juche, ahead of the 30<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the founding of the Party.

On March 11, 1933, Kim Il Sung crossed the Tuman River and headed into the mountain, leading the guerrillas. There he convened a meeting and put forward the strategic policy of extending the armed struggle into the homeland.

Kim Jong Il planned to have a grand monument to the revolutionary traditions erected on the mountain and effectively enlisted the whole Party, the entire nation and all the people in the project.

He organized a powerful construction force, and adopted measures to supply construction machinery and materials, establish a well-ordered direction system, and for all the provinces and central organs to render substantial assistance.

On May 15, 1974, shortly after the project got off to a start, he went all the way to the construction site on the Tuman River at the northernmost tip of the country for field guidance.

He did not stop to rest after the 800-km train journey but trudged straight along the muddy, rutted road around the site. Viewing the master plan, he checked every structure on it and gave detailed advice.

The officials and builders had planned to erect the monument, not on the mountain in question but on the adjacent Mt. Jangdok. The grounds for this were that Mt. Wangjae was not wide enough to allow the monument to give a magnificent impression, and that the adjacent Mt. Jangdok was, in a broad sense, included in the limits of the revolutionary site, so erecting it on one or the other would make little difference.

Informed of this, Kim Jong Il remonstrated with them: Building the monument on the adjacent mountain instead of on the side of Mt. Wangjae would be to no avail. In that case, the visitors might mistake one mountain for the other. The guides too might have difficulty explaining. They might have to say the venue of the meeting was not the mountain with the monument but the one next to it. The visitors would have to climb Mt. Wangjae only after looking round the monument. That is not desirable. The principles of monument construction justify using the side of Mt. Wangjae, the actual historical site.

And he said: **“The basic principle is for the monument to be as close as possible to the historical site.”**

Several days after his return from the trip, he examined an altered design of the monument, and said that it was good to erect the monument on the side of Mt. Wangjae, the meeting place, and that an erected monument could not be moved elsewhere, so a suitable site should be chosen in the first place.

He also led the officials and builders to make the project geared to affording a touch of sublimity and awe to Kim Il Sung's statue.

On March 16, 1975, a little less than a year after the inspection trip, he made a second tour and looked round the towering monument, his mind set on the appearance of the President's statue, the centre-piece of the grand monument.

A proper judgment of the interrelation between the tower and the statue was essential to make the statue magnificent and conspicuous. The design, however, showed the statue smaller than, and placed too close to, the tower. That would inevitably draw much more attention to the tower.

Kim Jong Il saw this defect, and reminded the officials that if the statue was too near the tower, it would not look conspicuous, and the tower might cast a shadow on it. He stressed that the visitors should be more interested in the statue than in the tower. He proposed placing the statue about two metres forward from the tower, and explained how this was to be done.

Still not content, he emphasized the top most importance of placing the statue properly in the construction project, and urged the officials to avoid subjectivism and consult specialists to that end.

Informed of the refashioned design, he examined it for hours. The statue and the tower should form an integral whole, and be regarded as an organic chain, he said. He continued that the tower should give the impression not simply of height but of guarding the statue, and that the statue should not be overshadowed by the tower.

Throughout the project, he lavished loving care on the builders.

He provided new uniforms to all the young shock-brigade members working on the project.

On April 14, 1975, he inquired about how the young workers were preparing for the April 15 holiday. Then he asked if the first cucumber

harvest had been completed at the Pyongyang Greenhouse, and took an immediate measure to airlift the cucumbers to Mt. Wangjae in time to be served on the breakfast table.

Such trust and care yielded its rewards. When the Party was worried about the pedestal of the monument, some of the builders ferreted around the mountains and valleys in Onsong and Kyongwon before discovering a suitable stone weighing 70 tons and transporting it over a distance of 28 km in the biting northern cold. Others, working on the 66-metre-high beacon tower, were not deterred in having to stay far up in the air on the 60-kg scaffold swaying wildly in stormy weather. They brilliantly finished their work on schedule, as was their pledge to the Party.

Under Kim Jong Il's wise leadership and warm care the mammoth project was completed in less than two years—the Wangjaesan Revolutionary Site made up of the grand monument centring on Kim Il Sung's statue, the venue of the historic Wangjaesan meeting, the crossing-point at Thamak Valley and the Wangjaesan Revolutionary Museum.

Informed of this, Kim Jong Il visited the site on October 13, 1975, for the third time, and expressed his immense satisfaction with the grand monument on the mountain side.

He examined every room of the Wangjaesan Revolutionary Museum. He advised the curators that the museum should display a lot of materials on Kim Il Sung's revolutionary struggle, and detailed ways to do so.

In October 1975, just after the significant celebration of the 30<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the founding of the Party, the unveiling of the grand monument took place on Mt. Wangjae amidst the great interest of all the people.

The monument is a giant edifice covering a total area of 60,000 square metres, and comprising the 66-metre-high beacon tower, relief group sculptures with a total length of 170 metres, a monument to a paean to Kim Il Sung and a monument to his revolutionary activities, which all centre on his statue.

Kim Il Sung visited Mt. Wangjae on June 24, 1978, nearly half a century after the memorable meeting there. Looking round the grand

monument and the revolutionary site, he expressed great satisfaction with the transformation of the place where the guerrillas and the people had fought the Japanese imperialists.

The construction of the Wangjaesan Revolutionary Site was of great significance in the course of taking over and developing in an all-round way the Party's revolutionary traditions, the historical roots and eternal cornerstone of the Party and revolution. This set the stage for major endeavours to discover the revolutionary battlefields and historic sites at home and build them up into bases for education in the revolutionary traditions.

On his three inspection trips, Kim Jong Il passed Hoeryong, the hometown of his mother Kim Jong Suk, but found no time to stop there each time.

At the crack of dawn one July day in 2001, decades after his first journey to Mt. Wangjae, Kim Jong Il's special train bound for Russia swept onto the railway bridge across the Tuman River. He was overcome with emotion at the sight of the river that rises in the ancestral Mt. Paektu and streams down some 500 km. Musing over the swaying water, he said in an undertone:

**“The Tuman indeed evokes deep memories.”**

He paused for a while, probably picturing in his mind Osan Hill thick with white-apricot trees in Hoeryong, and the ferry crossing where his mother had crossed the Tuman to an alien land, leaving her dear old home village for good. Then he asked an accompanying official if he had ever been to Hoeryong.

The official answered yes. Kim Jong Il lapsed into a sad memory. He recalled how his mother's comrades-in-arms had often urged her to visit her home village after liberation, and how his mother had each time declined, saying that she was too busy and that she would do so at her leisure, and how she had not been able to do so before her death.

He wanted to visit Hoeryong whenever he longed for his mother, he noted and said in a cracked voice that he was too hard pressed to afford the time. He recalled that once, when he visited Onsong to direct the construction project for the Wangjaesan Revolutionary Site, he could not

spare time to stop at Hoeryong, and the whistle of his train passing Hoeryong seemed to cut into his heart, adding that it was an ingrained memory.

He turned his eyes from the Tuman after a while, and continued to the following effect: The river was formerly a symbol of sorrow and bitter tears. It turned into a symbol of struggle and hope when Kim Il Sung waged the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle. Now it is a synonym for happiness. The river conveys to us a profound item of philosophy. A river, be it of any nation with a long history, may symbolize happiness or agony, depending on whether the nation has a great leader or not. In order not to let the bitter past repeat itself, we must redouble our efforts to build a great, prosperous, and powerful country.

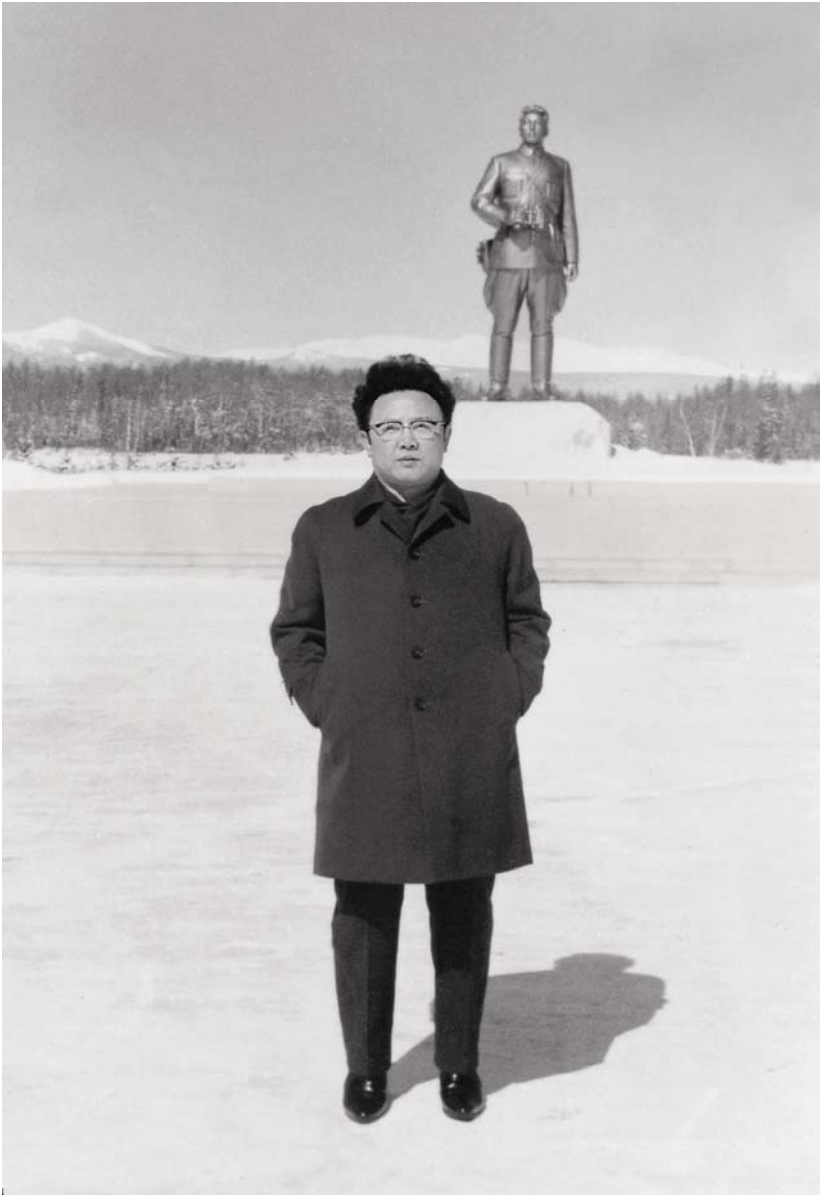
What he had to say was impregnated with the revolutionary history of Kim Il Sung, the Party's traditions, his sheer devotion to the country and people, his confidence in the rosy future and his will to bring it about at the earliest possible date.

#### TO BUILD A GRAND MONUMENT ON LAKE SAMJI

The Mt. Paektu area has a concentration of battlefields and historic sites of the revolution that are associated with Kim Il Sung's leadership feats and that make up an everlasting treasure of the Party and people. Kim Jong Il was determined to build up the area into a complex for intensified education in the revolutionary traditions so that he could pass on the traditions as a whole and carry the revolutionary cause of Juche through to the end over generations.

In July 1968, he visited Lake Samji and conceived a plan of building a grand monument on the shore. Kim Il Sung, during the anti-Japanese armed struggle, had stopped there on his march into the Musan area with the main force of the Korean People's Revolutionary Army under his command, and inspired the guerrillas with confidence in national liberation.

With this plan in mind, Kim Jong Il visited Ryanggang Province in early July 1976, several months after the unveiling of the Grand Monument to the Meeting on Mt. Wangjae.



**Kim Jong Il inspecting the Grand Samjiyon Monument (March 22, 1979)**



His car arrived in Hyesan after bouncing along the rugged, bumpy road over Huchi Pass, a ridge so high that they say the birds have to rest before crossing it, and along the mountain roads in the then Phungsan and Kapsan. Kim Jong Il immediately made for the Monument to the Victorious Battle of Pochonbo and then the Pochonbo Revolutionary Battlesite. He got to Lake Samji in the late evening.

In the lodging he stayed up late discussing the activities concerning the different sectors in the province with the local senior officials. In the early morning of July 4, the next day, he came out to the lake to designate a site for Kim Il Sung's statue.

The officials had envisaged erecting it on the opposite shore, to bring out the full background of Mt. Paektu. Actually, the opposite shore was narrow in area and not easily accessible for visitors. Also, one side of the shore was not really different from the other in the quest for a full background effect.

Kim Jong Il sensed this on the spot. He designated the site on the shore where there is a birch tree in front of which Kim Il Sung had posed for a colour stereopicture in early June 1972.

Back then, Kim Jong Il had accompanied Kim Il Sung to take the first stereopicture of the latter since the establishment of a modern stereopicture printing base. Now, he first walked around the shore with the officials to select a site for picture-taking. He stopped before a shapely birch with a forked trunk, and looked around for a while, before saying that it seemed to be an ideal place for photographing the President. He remarked that it was a wonderful place, with the harmony of the magnificence of the distant Mt. Paektu and the scenic beauty of Lake Samji in front.

Kim Il Sung strolled out, his face radiating energy, in the brilliant morning sunshine. Looking around, he said in delight that it was a wonderful place and that he had been there several times, but had not known about that site. He praised for the good work finding a place so good.

This was the story behind the stereopicture titled "President Kim Il Sung on Lake Samji".

Kim Jong Il was now pointing to this very place as the site for the

statue, saying that in May 1939, Kim Il Sung had stopped to rest with his guerrillas on that side of the shore with the birch. Wondering why they should select the opposite shore, he pointed out that placing the statue there would make no sense, continuing that they must put in good shape the area from that shore to the entrance to the Kapsan-Musan Guard Road<sup>9</sup> to build the statue, a monument and a museum.

He instructed that the construction of the Samjiyon Revolutionary Battlesite should start within that year and be completed in May 1979, when the 40<sup>th</sup> anniversary of victory in the battle in the Musan area<sup>10</sup> would fall.

A few days later, he again stressed the need to channel major efforts into the project in question, and gave detailed instructions on adopting a decision of the Party Central Committee Secretariat concerning the significant celebrations for the above-mentioned anniversary, on the need for the Administration Council to organize a central guidance committee for the project and allocate a preferential item in the following year's State plan for the relevant construction materials, and on the measures needed to supply rocks and transport vehicles.

He examined the designs of the monument several times and helped make them impeccable in content, form and scale.

On July 28, 1976, he checked the designs and table-top model of the project and said that the statue was good in that it has a full background of Mt. Paektu, and that the background was not symbolic but real, so the statue must be made magnificent.

He gave his advice on the general layout of the grand monument centring on the statue. He referred to the advisability of erecting a tower and a monument beside the statue, and group sculptures opposite the tower and on either side of the statue, a layout different from that of other monuments.

In accordance with the decision of the Party Central Committee Secretariat on this project the Administration Council set up the Central Guidance Committee for Construction of Revolutionary Battlesites in Ryanggang Province and the General Bureau of Construction of Revolutionary Sites, and a construction force was formed with builders from all provinces.

The construction of the Samjiyon Revolutionary Battlesite was a colossal programme: It comprised a grand monument involving Kim Il Sung's statue surrounded by five groups of sub-thematic sculptures and a monument to his revolutionary activities, as well as a broad square, the Samjiyon Revolutionary Museum, hotels for visitors from the Children's Union, students and working people respectively, a visitors' hall and facelifting of the seat of Samjiyon County. All these projects would have to be promoted at the same time. The project got off to an enthusiastic start.

On April 29, 1977, Kim Jong Il examined an altered plan of the project. He admired the plan, location and scale of the monument.

Then he said that as for the President's statue, he should be clad not in a spring coat, but in a belted military uniform, with binoculars in his hand, which would boost his appearance as a general.

He also checked the designs for the group sculptures around the statue. He stressed the need to get the sculptures based on the theme of "March into the Homeland". He noted that the *Bugler for the March* was the best of any part of the grand monument because of its new style, different from the previous styles of tower and that it looked inspiring. As the monument is a significant edifice to be handed down to posterity, he noted, measures should be taken to get the colour of the granite sculptures to be preserved for thousands of years.

He solved every problem raised, and lavished trust and care on the builders so as to speed up the project.

Actually, the schedule of the project was impossible to meet in view of the existing methods and experience: A colossal amount of labour force, materials and equipment was needed, and, worse still, the area was locked in winter for more than half a year.

On May 30, 1977, informed of the arduous conditions, Kim Jong Il took concrete action to keep sufficient supplies of stones, and dispose of the greatest difficulty, the problem of transportation.

After acquainting himself with the supplies and services for the builders, he took steps for the Commission of Public Welfare and Pyongyang City to supply Ryanggang Province with goods locally unavailable. He provided

the builders with many musical instruments and coaches, and management officials with cars.

In loyal response, the builders put more zest into the project. But they faced a severe challenge: To continue in temperatures of minus 30-40°C in that alpine area 1,400 metres above sea-level. The fall set in, and then snow fell in the thick forests of Mt. Paektu. How to press on with the groundwork emerged as a problem decisive of the whole project.

Informed of this, Kim Jong Il instructed that ways to proceed with the foundation work in winter should be found.

A consultation with the builders convinced the officials of the vital need for measures against freezing. They told Kim Jong Il that tents and lagging materials were being secured for concrete tamping in the temperature of minus 30°C.

He gave the go-ahead for the initiative of the builders, and urged the officials to proceed as long as the workers supported it. The shock-brigade members and volunteer workers dug out a mountain of earth through a round-the-clock campaign, and set to work on concrete tamping for the groundwork for Kim Il Sung's statue. To prevent freezing and secure quality engineering, they covered the groundwork with huge tents and installed many stoves inside them; in this way, thousands of cubic metres of concrete tamping was completed. They beat the schedule by a broad margin by winding it up in 14 days instead of the several months as originally planned. The quality of concrete tamping turned out to be as good as in the summer time.

They worked doggedly in this manner, and finally erected Kim Il Sung's statue before September 9, 1978, the 30<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the founding of the DPRK. In March 1979, they informed Kim Jong Il that they had completed the construction of the Samjiyon Revolutionary Battlesite.

He immediately left for the site despite his packed schedule, and arrived at the Hyesan railway station at 8 a.m. on March 21.

Snow was falling, and the officials asked him to wait until it let up before going to Lake Samji. He declined, saying that climbing a mountain in the snowstorm would give one the real taste of Ryanggang Province.

On getting there, he headed for the grand monument forgoing breakfast.

Though exhausted by the night-long journey, he made a round of the Samjiyon Revolutionary Museum and the hotels. In the afternoon he toured the grand monument once again, as well as the newly-built Samjiyon Schoolchildren's Palace, House for the Study of the Revolutionary Ideas of Comrade Kim Il Sung, and streets and houses in the county town of Samjiyon.

Uppermost in his mind was the appearance of Kim Il Sung's statue.

His first stop in Samjiyon was at the statue, which he checked both in overcast and clear weather, both in the morning and afternoon. He found it satisfactory in every respect.

The next day Kim Jong Il went to the grand monument for the third time, and took in its whole perspective for a while.

He looked round the large granite sculpture *Bugler for the March* and the group sculptures standing in its background—*March, Reverence, Water of the Homeland, The Homeland* and *Camping*. He expressed great appreciation of the monument from its planning to construction, giving it “full marks”.

On May 21, 1979, the unveiling of Kim Il Sung's statue and a national celebration of the 40<sup>th</sup> anniversary of victory in the battle in the Musan area took place on the shore of Lake Samji.

## 2. INTENSIFYING EDUCATION IN THE REVOLUTIONARY TRADITIONS

On the need for intensified education in the revolutionary traditions, Kim Jong Il said,

**“By increasing education in the revolutionary traditions as never before, we should demonstrate to the world the fact that we are holding the red flag of the revolution invariably and steadfastly.”**

For the defence and development of the revolutionary traditions of Juche in all aspects, it is essential to intensify education of the Party members and other working people in that line. This is the way for them to take their cue from the noble spirit of the revolutionary forerunners and devote themselves

to consummating the revolutionary cause of Juche pioneered by Kim Il Sung.

This was urgently needed, also in view of complex international situation.

Kim Jong Il put special stress on this task one day in late October 1976, at a conference of senior officials of the Party Central Committee.

He described a person's approach to the revolutionary traditions as a basic determinant of that person's attitude towards the Party and revolution. The renegades of the revolution and the opportunists are attempting to emasculate the leader's revolutionary exploits and undermine his prestige by rejecting and reviling the revolutionary traditions, and to ruin the revolution by weakening the Party, he said, and continued:

**“We must frustrate all attempts to undermine or castrate the glorious revolutionary traditions of the Party in the slightest degree, and educate the Party members and other working people to staunchly defend and successfully develop them.”**

He devoted close concern to the massive compilation and distribution of books of the history of the revolution and materials for education, an important requirement for enriching the stock of the revolutionary traditions.

He arranged the compilation of the *Short Biography of Kim Il Sung* to mark the President's 60<sup>th</sup> birthday. In January 1975, he proposed compiling the *Short History of the Workers' Party of Korea*, and then paid attention to the task throughout, with the result that it came off the press at the beginning of 1979.

He also set in motion the compilation of the *Twenty-Year-Long Anti-Japanese Revolution under the Red Sunrays*, a collection of memoirs on the President's history of anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle.

One day in the summer of 1969, he visited an anti-Japanese veteran at an east-coast resort where he was absorbed in writing a book for education in the revolutionary traditions. After extending thanks to him for writing in the sultry weather, he said in the following vein: I recently surveyed the activities of literature and the arts and realized there was an obvious lack of materials on Kim Il Sung's revolutionary activities and on the revolutionary traditions. I hope that in future, you anti-Japanese

veterans will sort out much more such information. I believe you will take responsibility for this task, since you are experienced in collecting information on Kim Il Sung's revolutionary career and since you're better informed than anybody else about the anti-Japanese revolutionary history.

The veteran answered that after finishing adapting this book he was going to plunge into a multi-volume book on the whole aspect of the President's revolutionary career, a project he had long had in mind.

**“What a good idea!”** exclaimed Kim Jong Il. **“You have my full support. I'll do all I can to help you.”**

This was how the vast plan, a series of connected volumes, got launched.

But the project was by no means smooth sailing, for the several veterans involved had to write in their spare time while on their jobs. Kim Jong Il saw what was needed. He sent several professionals to help them and allocated a suburban rest home exclusively for this purpose. Finally, the five-volume *Twenty-Year-Long Anti-Japanese Revolution under the Red Sunrays* was completed in the late 1970s.

One day the President read the third volume in manuscript form, and said: The account of the Nanhutou Meeting is very vivid. “Among the Children's Corps Members at Maanshan” brought tears to my eyes so often I could not finish reading it. I'll read all the manuscripts, so you should press on to the very end.

Kim Jong Il also met a veteran in charge of the project, and said: I've read the book. It is an excellent collection of memoirs. It will prove of much service in educating the Party members and other working people in the revolutionary traditions of the Party. You've done a really good job.

Under his guidance, many other books in a similar vein, including *Cherishing the People's Wish* and *History of the Anti-Japanese Armed Struggle*, saw the light of day and made great contributions to enlightening Party members, working people and the younger generation to the Party's traditions.

Kim Jong Il also took steps to keep the rooms for the study of Kim Il Sung's revolutionary idea sufficiently equipped for effective education.

The pictorial records of Kim Il Sung's revolutionary career that were on display in such rooms at that time dated back to the period shortly after the 15<sup>th</sup> Plenary Meeting of the Fourth Party Central Committee and fell short in many ways of the exigencies of developing reality.

Looking round the study room of the Party Central Committee on December 22, 1973, Kim Jong Il gave an instruction to renew the pictorial records. On August 17, 1975, he examined the reinforced records in minute detail, and gave detailed advice on the slogans, pictures, titles, expressions and other matters of principle in content and form, and on their printing.

The new visual aids, an ideo-theoretically profound yet lucid proof of Kim Il Sung's great personality and revolutionary career, were displayed in all the rooms dedicated to his revolutionary idea.

In addition to education based on the new records, Kim Jong Il arranged for improved operation of the rooms.

On May 16, 1974, Kim Jong Il visited Unggi County (now Rason City), called attention to the poor utility rate of the study rooms and instructed that the rooms at all the institutions and enterprises in the county town be merged into the county study house. The merger was finished in a short span of time, and the county study house saw a notably improved utility rate, which led to efficient education.

In the 1970s, at the same time as promoting the Party-wide campaign to build up historical and battle sites of the revolution, Kim Jong Il arranged an extensive tour of them.

Back in 1965, he had organized a regular, State-sponsored routine of visits to the revolutionary battlesites in Ryanggang Province, and in November 1975 initiated a similar routine for the revolutionary sites in North Hamgyong Province, with the Wangjaesan Revolutionary Site as the major destination.

In particular, he sought to step up, through such visits, education of the rising generation in the revolutionary traditions.

He had long before conceived the plan of organizing a 400-km-long trek of students, on his inspection tour of Jagang Province in September 1964 and while visiting the revolutionary battlesites in Ryanggang Province in July 1968.



In October 1973 he ensured that the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee adopted a decision on organizing a 400-km-long march of students geared to learning from Kim Il Sung's boyhood.

Under his personal concern, the first team of marchers—chairpersons of the League of Socialist Working Youth (LSWY) and the Children's Union (CU) organizations of the senior middle schools throughout the country—set off in March 1974 along the route of the "400-km-long Journey for Learning"<sup>11</sup> which had been made by Kim Il Sung in his boyhood.

In January the following year, a similar team would take the course of the "400-km-long Journey for National Liberation"<sup>12</sup> which Kim Il Sung had made.

In early January 1975, the LSWY Central Committee planned to organize a march of 3,000 students from across the country on a "400-km-long Journey for National Liberation" to mark the 50<sup>th</sup> year since the President had made it.

Kim Jong Il praised it as an audacious plan, and proposed increasing the number of the marchers to 10,000 students after he was informed that that number would stand for one representative of every primary organization of the LSWY and the CU across the country. He went further, designating the route and arranging the itinerary of the marchers.

The marchers held a departure ceremony at the Phophyong Ferry on January 22, the day when Kim Il Sung had set out on the journey 50 years previously. That day they received gifts from Kim Il Sung—woolen scarves, socks, cotton-padded shoes and other articles of convenience.

The team trekked 35-40 km a day, singing revolutionary songs and carrying a flag bearing the President's portrait in the van.

After their departure, Kim Jong Il periodically phoned the provincial Party officials, asking how far the marchers had gone and if any of them was sick, and urging them to accord the marchers a warm welcome wherever they were, since they were all precious children.

He also dispatched many doctors as well as a loudspeaker car with an announcer in it to boost their morale. He mobilized reporters and photographers, together with a special aircraft for them, to cover the journey.

The day the marchers reached Kanggye via the rugged and steep Hasan, Ogasan and Jik passes, they telegraphed to Kim Il Sung and Kim Jong Il

from the Kanggye Post Office (where Kim Il Sung had sent the first telegram of his life during his 400-km-long Journey for Learning in 1923–Tr.) that they had got there safe and sound. At night they held a torchlight parade through the streets.

Kim Jong Il sent them a congratulatory message, and it was read out to them in a ceremony in front of the President’s statue in the city. The message expressed hope that all of them would get to Mangyongdae in tiptop shape.

Then he supplied them with chickens, canned meat, sweets, biscuits and tropical fruits.

The marchers pressed on in high spirits, and arrived at Mangyongdae on February 3, the day on which the President had crossed the Amnok at Phophyong, determined never to return home before Korea became independent.

Kim Jong Il took great delight in their success. He presented them with badges bearing Kim Il Sung’s portrait, certificates of participation in the “400-km-long Journey for National Liberation”, and gifts. He arranged for them to visit Mangyongdae, the Ponghwa Revolutionary Site and the Korean Revolution Museum, and to be welcomed at a rally and evening entertainment of Pyongyang students, held in Kim Il Sung Square amid a spectacular firework display.

The first march set the stage for regular nationwide journeys along the same route from August 1975 onward.

### 3. “PRODUCE, STUDY AND LIVE LIKE THE ANTI-JAPANESE GUERRILLAS!”

As a step to translate the revolutionary traditions of Juche into reality and develop them in all aspects, Kim Jong Il launched the slogan, “**Produce, study and live like the anti-Japanese guerrillas!**” in March 1974.

The slogan represents his firm commitment to the accomplishment of the revolutionary cause of Juche by defending the glorious revolutionary traditions Kim Il Sung had achieved during the anti-Japanese struggle and

by developing them in an all-round way. It calls for embodying in all spheres of social life the revolutionary fighting spirit of the anti-Japanese guerrillas, who were boundlessly loyal to Kim Il Sung, by producing, studying and living in their noble ways.

The slogan was aimed at inspiring all aspects of social life with the Juche-based ideological system, revolutionary exploits, fighting experience, methods and style of work that Kim Il Sung had achieved during the anti-Japanese war, so as to imbue the whole of society with the spirit of the guerrillas and carry forward the revolutionary cause of Juche.

In order to apply the revolutionary traditions to real life, Kim Jong Il led all the officials and working people to live and work in the spirit of Mt. Paektu.

On May 31, 1972, he climbed Mt. Paektu, in a blinding snowstorm. The officials tried to dissuade him, asking him to come later in fair weather. Asking them if they knew why he insisted on going in that weather, he said: I want to imagine in what trials the revolutionary spirit of Mt. Paektu was created. When you fancy yourselves making an arduous march in a raging snowstorm and through the deep snow of Mt. Paektu, you'll realize what a thorny path the Korean revolution covered, and become prepared to surmount any hardship on the way.

When he scaled the crest in the whirling snow, the mountain immediately became quiet, and a magnificent and breathtaking scene unfolded.

The snowscape of the Mt. Paektu forests is awe-inspiring, Kim Jong Il exclaimed, and said: If we had given up half-way, we could not have enjoyed this beauty. The revolutionary spirit of Mt. Paektu is a stubborn spirit of attack which calls for advancing against tough odds. It is a staunch fighting spirit which calls for rising up at every fall. It is a stout revolutionary spirit which can never be extinguished. It is a noble revolutionary spirit of building a socialist paradise in the homeland by one's own efforts. By dint of this spirit, we can have the courage to face a hail of bullets and bombs and to sing a revolutionary song on the guillotine.

He surveyed the rise and fall of the peaks, the front lap of his coat flapping in the wind, and then concluded: Let us live and work in the

revolutionary spirit of Mt. Paektu for ever! This is my firm resolve and what I have to tell you here on Mt. Paektu.

On July 6, 1976, he climbed the mountain again.

In the early morning he called a senior provincial official. He said he was proposing going up again, because the more often he did so, the more keenly he felt how great and beautiful Korea is, and the more eager he became to be faithful to the revolution by acquiring the revolutionary spirit of Mt. Paektu, the noble spirit of the anti-Japanese fighters who had shed their blood for the country.

After enjoying the splendid sunrise over Mt. Paektu with some officials, he left Samjiyon for Hyesan before he could stop for breakfast. The officials, worried about his health, tried to talk him around. He responded that the anti-Japanese guerrillas had fought on Mt. Paektu without eating or sleeping for days, and that going without a night's sleep or a few meals was nothing in comparison.

He threw his weight behind the campaign to apply the fighting spirit of the anti-Japanese guerrillas in all spheres of social life.

Party-wide study sessions and lectures on the slogan **“Produce, study and live like the anti-Japanese guerrillas!”** were organized, the slogan was prominently displayed in towns and villages, public places and offices, and the mass media ran a forceful publicity campaign on this line. The slogan was given special emphasis among the slogans that were issued by the Party Central Committee to mark the 30<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the founding of the Party. Art propagation of various forms was also conducted in this vein.

While engaging in field guidance in Ryanggang Province, Kim Jong Il saw a performance by the amateur art circle of Samjiyon County on July 5, 1976. He pointed out that the common shortcoming in amateur art activities was their tendency towards professionalism, instead of towards the anti-Japanese-guerrilla style. Such performances should not be professional in any way but be mass-based, he said.

The next day, he again stressed the need to draw a proper lesson from the performance and effect a radical change in amateur art circle activities. For hours, he dwelt on the ways to pattern them after the fashion of the anti-Japanese guerrillas.

Innovations were brought in the wake of this.

While inspecting the construction of the Samjiyon Revolutionary Battlesite in March 1979, Kim Jong Il saw a performance of a travelling local art propagation team. He was delighted with its colourful repertoire that represented the loyalty, feats of labour and militant and optimistic life of the builders working there. He praised the performance as true to type, for its realistic portrayal of the builders.

Kim Jong Il took positive steps to ensure the establishment of the revolutionary ways of the anti-Japanese guerrillas throughout the Party and society.

In February 1975, the Tenth Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Party Central Committee summed up the fundamental changes that were taking place in the ideological viewpoint and the methods and style of work of the Party members and other working people, innovations resulting from the dynamic campaign to follow the ways of the anti-Japanese guerrillas under the slogan “**Produce, study and live like the anti-Japanese guerrillas!**” The plenum set forth the tasks to be tackled in modelling all activities on the pattern of the anti-Japanese guerrillas.

At a consultative conference of senior officials of the Party Central Committee held in May 1975, Kim Jong Il put emphasis on the establishment of a revolutionary climate of work and life throughout society, and took detailed measures to this end.

He also pushed for prevalence of the guerrillas’ way of study in the Party and society.

He advanced the slogan “**Let the whole Party study!**” and led all the Party members and other working people to regard study as their foremost task, just as the guerrillas had done, and made it their daily routine. He set in motion extensive question-and-answer contests in all fields and units in order to bring about a fresh innovation in study through the assimilation of the guerrillas’ method.

One day, informed of the upcoming First National Study Contest, he hailed it as an excellent initiative.

The contest heats got off to a start at the same time in January 1975 at all the industrial establishments, institutions and cooperative farms, and

proceeded through the county and provincial levels. The national contest was a competition among provincial winners.

The mass media gave blazing publicity to the contest, and the Party's official organ published an editorial, titled, "Let the Way of Study of the Anti-Japanese Guerrillas Prevail throughout the Country!"

The first contest became the occasion for adopting the guerrillas' study method as the basic form of study of the Party members and other working people.

---

---

## CHAPTER 18

# FOR KOREA'S STYLE OF REVOLUTION AND CONSTRUCTION

### 1. NEW METHOD OF LEADERSHIP FOR REVOLUTION

Kim Jong Il decided that the basic way for more effective Party leadership for the three revolutions was to develop in depth the three-revolution team movement, a new Korean-style method of guidance for the revolution, and he placed the movement directly under the control of the Party.

This movement, initiated by Kim Il Sung in February 1973, was a fresh leadership method stemming from the Chongsanri method, and a new form of guidance that calls for combining politico-ideological guidance with technological direction, and superiors helping their subordinates and enlisting the masses of the people to speed up the three revolutions—ideological, technological and cultural.

At the Tenth Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Party Central Committee in February 1975, Kim Il Sung noted that the movement had fully proved its validity and vitality in the two years since its inauguration, and that the Party organizations should pool efforts with the three-revolution teams to carry out the tasks for the three revolutions.

Kim Jong Il paid close attention to the promotion of the movement in close connection with Party work. At a plenary session and meetings of the Secretariat of the Party Central Committee held around this time, he urged the provincial and other local Party officials and organizations to adopt a proper approach to the movement, and give substantial help to the three-revolution teams. And he took measures to gear the movement to the exigencies of the developing reality.

At a consultative conference of senior officials of the Party Central Committee in May 1975, Kim Jong Il set forth a policy on further developing the three-revolution team movement.

He had already planned to boost the movement to the level required by the developing reality. While supervising the 70-day campaign, he had attached great significance to the activities of the three-revolution teams, and encouraged them to spearhead the three revolutions. Afterwards he had dispatched supervisory personnel for the three revolutions to guide the Party and economic activities as a whole and actively assist the three-revolution teams. In the course of this he arrived at his plan, and in early 1975 he defined the three revolutions as the basic strategic line of the Party.

At the conference, he stressed that improved guidance for the three-revolution team movement called for coming up with a well-ordered guidance system, and enhancing the sense of responsibility and role of the officials in charge.

In personally steering the movement, Kim Jong Il put his primary emphasis on the guidance system.

In 1974, he replaced the system of separate guidance for the teams involved in industry and agriculture with a system of unified control from the Party Central Committee. The following year, the headquarters of the teams were organized at all levels from the centre through provinces and cities to counties, for substantial direction.

In 1976, he set up a system of reviewing the work of the teams, a rational system of supervision. In this way, a setup of unified guidance from the Party was in place at all levels from the capital down to the industrial establishments and farms, and the movement entered a landmark phase.

He was also concerned about improving the ranks of the teams.

In 1975, he instructed officials to increase the size of the ranks, and build them with backbone Party members and young intellectuals who were qualified politico-ideologically and technologically and had been tested in practice.

He encouraged all the members of the teams to steadily improve their political and technical competence.

He put in place a well-ordered system with which to inform the



members of Party policies promptly, and organized various forms of political lectures for them. Whenever he summoned some of them or met them on an inspection tour, he asked them what matters were on hand, and gave relevant advice in detail. Sometimes he had them attend meetings of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee and national conferences so as to broaden their political horizons. He took steps for model units in the implementation of the three revolutions to be established and used for demonstration lectures for the team members, and for the Three-Revolution Exhibition to be constructed and visited by all the team members from all parts of the country.

He often assigned the teams to difficult yet important tasks for the three revolutions and led them to perform feats in them.

In the midst of a nationwide drive for automation of production processes, he once met an official who was to head the three-revolution team at an electrical appliances factory, and stressed the need to introduce closed-circuit TVs at major factories as the first phase of overall automation, saying in the following vein: We need a lot of closed-circuit TVs and camera tubes. We can hardly be expected to rely on foreign technology and equipment for such a gigantic project as the introduction of closed-circuit TVs in the whole of industry, although it might be a different matter if it concerned only a few factories. We must find a homegrown solution to closed-circuit TVs, the camera tubes in particular, in such a way as to suit the actual conditions of our country. I want you to solve this problem without fail by good teamwork with the workers and technicians of the factory.

At that time the officials dismissed TV camera-tube manufacture as a thing of the future because of the high electronic technology it required.

In the wake of the automation of the Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex, however, Kim Jong Il settled on extending it to all the metallurgical factories, and, to speed it up, was now assigning the three-revolution team to the production of the camera tubes.

The team in question responded heartily despite their lack of experience in closed-circuit TV manufacture, not to speak of camera tubes. They did not let scores of failures deter them but pulled together, pooling efforts with

the workers and technicians to clear many hurdles in the way. Their perseverance was finally rewarded by trial production of a closed-circuit TV and a camera tube tailored to domestic conditions. But they were defective in many ways, and the team members hesitated to report this to Kim Jong Il.

Informed of this, he said that even though they might have something to be desired, it did not matter, and what counted was their domestic production. He continued that he would like to meet the team members.

He met them in Pyongyang a few days later. After carefully examining the trial products, he said that the camera-tube manufacture would take a great deal of effort by professional technicians of a relevant plant, but the three-revolution team members, just out of university, had succeeded in cooperation with the workers, and that this was tantamount to an invention. He continued that as he had said when informed of that the other day, what counted most was its production by the three-revolution team.

He tried his hand at operating the camera, scanning the screen. He noted that the contrast function was not right. He then said to the following effect: This control is important for the blast furnaces. This problem must be solved without fail. But despite some defects, I'm overjoyed, for we have made it using our own efforts, technology and materials. You may well be confident and proud.

He arranged for visits by the team members to the automated and remote-controlled processes of the Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex and the Kangson Steel Complex, and for a technical consultation of top-notch experts on the closed-circuit TV and camera tube in question. He also kept track of the progress of the project by placing long-distance calls or summoning the head of the team, and supplied the latest automated equipment, gauges and numerous chips.

His concern was rewarded with the desired result.

On his visit to the Three-Revolution Exhibition in March 1975, Kim Jong Il looked at the TV and camera tube again, and noted that they were the first domestic products made by the three-revolution team of an electrical appliances factory. He reiterated his praise for their efforts.

Throughout his direction of the three-revolution team movement, Kim Jong Il took warm care of the team members in and out of team work.

Once, he was delighted to hear that the three-revolution team members at the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex had developed a method of improving the quality of iron with less coke. He praised their success and took measures to introduce it into production. On another occasion he was informed that a girl-student of Kim Il Sung University active as a three-revolution team member in Hyangsan County, North Phyongan Province, began by learning how to drive a tractor, and led the women farmers, married and unmarried alike, to follow suit. He praised her and stressed the need to follow her example in disseminating science and technology.

He made sure that the three-revolution team members attended national conferences on agriculture and industry and others held in the presence of Kim Il Sung, and that distinguished members participated in the celebrations of the 30<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the founding of the Party together with veteran revolutionaries. Also, they were presented with gifts from Kim Il Sung and awarded the title of Labour Hero and other high State distinctions. And those politically prepared were admitted to the Party.

## 2. INITIATING THE THREE-REVOLUTION RED FLAG MOVEMENT

Kim Jong Il pushed for the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement<sup>13</sup>, a new mass drive, in addition to establishing a proper guiding method for the three revolutions.

By the early 1970s, the Korean revolution called for a higher form of mass campaign as a development of the Chollima Workteam Movement and as a greater stimulant for the three revolutions.

As Kim Jong Il put it on January 1, 1976, **“Last year we advanced the slogan ‘Let us meet the requirements of Juche in ideology, technology and culture!’ and initiated the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement.”**

This slogan aimed to apply the Juche idea in all fields of the transformation of ideology, technology and culture, and encourage the Party members and other working people to display the attitude of masters and maximize their role as such.

At a consultative meeting of senior officials of the Party Central Committee on November 18, 1975, Kim Jong Il said that the Party had recently initiated the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement for a fresh upsurge in socialist construction, and called on all sectors and units to throw their weight behind the movement as they had done in the Chollima Workteam Movement for a boom in socialist construction.

On November 22, at a consultative meeting of provincial Party chief secretaries and senior officials of the Party Central Committee, he emphasized that the torch of the movement in the industrial sector should be kindled by the Komdok Mine and that in agriculture by the Chongsan Cooperative Farm and that all other units across the country should respond to it.

His call found a ready response at Komdok and Chongsan-ri.

The resolution rally of workers of the mine, on December 1, 1975, pledged to justify Kim Jong Il's trust, and called upon the blue-collar and white-collar workers alike of all industrial establishments throughout the country and all other working people to take part in the movement.

Next day a similar rally in agriculture was held at the Chongsan Cooperative Farm.

Mass rallies in response took place in Pyongyang and the provincial capitals, and at factories and farms.

Thus the movement spread like wildfire in all sectors—industry, agriculture, transportation, education, science and public health.

For the new movement to get off to a smooth, unwavering start, Kim Jong Il shed full light on matters of principle in waging it.

He clearly perceived what was needed for a correct understanding of the movement on the part of Party organizations and officials, which was an essential matter.

At a consultative meeting of provincial Party chief secretaries and senior officials of the Party Central Committee held on January 1, 1976, he talked about the central tasks in Party work for the new year, and about the Party's strategic aim in waging the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement, the essence, main tasks and characteristics of the movement, and the ways and means to push it forward as a Party-wide concern.

The movement was an in-depth development of the Chollima Workteam Movement to a higher stage, he said. He explained the essence of the movement in this way: Pressing ahead with the ideological transformation of the people and a mass innovation drive in the economy, culture and defence buildup in organic combination, with the stress on speed and ideology, so as to make solid preparations for a great event of revolution and expedite the building of socialism at top speed. As for the central task of the movement, he said it was to speed up the three revolutions in their entirety.

Pointing out that the movement was characterized by an advanced mass drive for ideological remoulding, technical upgrading and cultural transformation, he said that, for its development, it was essential to set the stages correctly, define the tasks for each stage, and review and assess the results properly.

He noted that an erroneous tendency was in evidence to regard the movement as of no relevance to Party work, that the movement was not a purely administrative, economic or business affair, but a revolutionary movement initiated by the Party and organized under its guidance, and that, therefore, it is necessary to link the movement with Party work and give it correct guidance from the Party. Direct supervision of the Party over the movement is, he continued, one of its major differences from the previous movements which the Party steered through the medium of the working people's organizations. The Party organizations should take over the movement as their own concern, and improve their guidance of it, he stressed.

Kim Jong Il also set in motion organizational and political activity geared to turning the movement into a concern of the masses themselves.

He ensured that Party organizations and officials mixed with the broad segments of the people to explain the Party's policy on the movement. He also launched an intensive publicity campaign through the mass media, through art performances for economic activities and through the employment of visual aids.

The newspapers, including the Party organ, and radio and TV stations gave daily blazing publicity to the nationwide rallies prompted by the call from the workers of Komdok and the farmers of Chongsan-ri.

Militant and stimulating slogans and posters appeared everywhere, and on-site entertainment for increased production got underway.

Under Kim Jong Il's supervision, a guideline of the movement was sent to the Party organizations at all levels in June 1976, for Party-wide discussions on the ways to implement it. In November, meetings and demonstration lectures were organized to share information on the achievements and experience gained in the movement and to give a greater boost to the movement in all sectors and units. Every industrial establishment, every farm, every workshop and every workteam involved in the movement had a registration book for exemplary workshops, workteams and individuals; those registered would be given wide publicity, political honours and social promotions.

The fast-track ideological revolution brought sweeping changes to the ideological and spiritual quality, working style and mode of life of the people, while the technological and cultural revolutions revved up economic and cultural activities.

In the late 1970s, Kim Jong Il launched the movement for imbibing the example of the unassuming heroes as a major Party policy and in close combination with the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement.

In speeches delivered on October 7, 1979, and January 8 the following year, he clarified the essence and significance of the new movement, and the ways and means to speed it up.

The movement was, in essence, a mass movement geared to making positive examples influence all the members of society so as to make them revolutionaries loyal to Kim Il Sung and the Party, and to enable them to give full play to their revolutionary enthusiasm and creative initiative for major progress in socialist construction.

The movement was to be waged in a substantial manner, with the emphasis on cultivating loyalty to the Party and the leader. Kim Jong Il took steps to identify all the unassuming heroes, the people who had devoted heart and soul to the good of the Party and the leader, the country and the people with the consciousness of being masters of the revolution and with no regard for recognition, and to demonstrate their deeds for education of the people.

The full-throttle progress of the movement brought about a fresh change in the ideological and spiritual qualities of the Party members and other working people, a giant stride of science and technology to keep abreast of the era of technological revolution, as well as an elevation of the officials' working method and style up to the standards of Kim Il Sung.

The movement, coupled with the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement, gave a strong impetus to the country's revolution and construction.

### 3. “GIVE FREE REIN TO THE REVOLUTIONARY SPIRIT OF SELF-RELIANCE!”

The year 1978 was the first year of the Second Seven-Year Plan, a long-term plan that envisaged building up the foundations of the socialist national economy and improving the people's living standards by placing the economy on a Juche-oriented, modern and scientific basis. By the end of the plan period, the foundations of the country's self-reliant economy were to have been strengthened, the national might was to have grown as never before and a significant advance was to have been made in the Korean people's endeavours.

However, the attainment of these lofty goals was by no means an easy task, given the prevailing situation that required a full display of the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance.

On New Year's Day 1978, at a meeting of senior officials of the Party Central Committee, Kim Jong Il called for fulfilling the plan ahead of schedule by enlisting the entire Party and all the people under the slogan of self-reliance. He said:

**“ ‘Give free rein to the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance!’—this is the most important revolutionary slogan of our Party and the supreme policy of Party work at the present time.”**

Noting that self-reliance had been a traditional slogan of the Party in the course of its protracted, arduous struggle, he continued to the following effect: Kim Il Sung, since the inception of his revolutionary career, has held up the slogan of self-reliance, mobilizing the masses of the people to

meet challenges head-on and advancing the revolution victoriously. We have no other option but to fully display the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance under Kim Il Sung's leadership in order to carry out the plan ahead of schedule.

Kim Jong Il now set to work steering activities toward a successful conclusion of the first year of the Seven-Year Plan, the year when a breakthrough had to be made in carrying out the plan.

He led the Party organizations at all levels to engage in scrupulous organizational and political work to rouse all the Party members and other working people for the first year of the campaign.

He paid close attention to intensifying education in the Juche idea among the working people, including the Party members, and combining Party work closely with economic affairs.

He got the Party Central Committee to issue a letter to the people in an endeavour to spur socialist construction. The letter, adopted at the 16<sup>th</sup> Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Party Central Committee in January 1978, called on all the Party members and other working people to give full play to their revolutionary zeal for the fulfillment of the Second Seven-Year Plan, a goal of great significance for national prosperity and socialist construction.

With the steady progress of ideological mobilization for the implementation of the letter from the beginning of the year, all the sectors and units were able to break through their production ceilings.

As a step to consolidate the achievements in the implementation of the letter and make a breakthrough for the Second Seven-Year Plan, Kim Il Sung proposed launching a 100-day campaign till the 30<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the founding of the DPRK, and called on all the Party members and other working people to join the campaign. The call was made on May 28, 1978, at a joint conference of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee, the Central People's Committee and the Administration Council.

The following day, Kim Jong Il convened a consultative conference of chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees to decide on the ways to render assistance from the Party to the proposed campaign.

He pointed out that the Party organizations should work skilfully with



the officials and the people, improve their guidance of administrative and economic affairs, and encourage all their members and other working people to increase production, improve the quality of products and practise economy in the spirit of self-reliance. The provincial Party chief secretaries, he stressed, should call joint conferences of the provincial Party executive committees, the provincial people's committees and the provincial administrative committees, and take steps to implement the decision on the campaign closely in the context of the letter from the Party Central Committee to its entire membership.

He made sure that the Party organizations at all levels conducted dynamic organizational and political work for the campaign, fomenting a militant atmosphere across the country, and that a vigorous nationwide drive was waged to increase production and practise economy with self-reliance.

By means of heroic struggle, the people pulled off a succession of innovations, nailing down the campaign with flying colours: The goal was exceeded by 5.2 per cent and industrial output showed a 23 per cent gain over the same period of the previous year. A breakthrough was finally made for the Second Seven-Year Plan.

Kim Jong Il now set about drawing the whole Party and the entire nation into the implementation of the major tasks of the long-term plan under the banner of self-reliance.

He defined the extractive industries as the top-priority sector in economic development, and urged that efforts be concentrated on coal mining in particular, for a sufficient supply of fuel and raw materials needed for the accomplishment of the plan.

At a consultative meeting of senior officials of the Party Central Committee held on November 10, 1978, Kim Jong Il described increased coal production as the lifeline for the rapid development of the economy as a whole, and decided to dispatch Party guidance teams to this industry. He detailed the activities to be conducted by the teams, their method of work and the duration of their work, and instructed that they be made a powerful force.

He got the Party's information sector to conduct a campaign for increased coal production. While keeping himself acquainted with the work

of the guidance teams, he instructed them to concentrate on stabilizing coal production by giving precedence to tunnelling and overburden removal, and on improving the supply service for the miners.

He allotted a large amount of funds for the upgrading of mining equipment, and the supply of machinery, materials and tools for tunnelling and coal-cutting.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that the Anju Area Coal Mine, with rich deposits and good prospects for cutting, was made the model of overall mechanization, and that its experience was publicized, and that, for the present, its production was increased notably.

He realized that the key to the colliery's increased production was the enthusiasm of the miners, not the conditions of the coalfield or equipment. He ignited the torch of "Anju speed", a new speed of Chollima to tap the inexhaustible creativity of the miners.

In January 1978 he advanced the slogan of creating "Anju speed" in the spirit of self-reliance, and enlisted the miners in the attainment of the daily production goal of 10,000 tons.

Every workteam of the mine threw itself into the campaign, regarding it as part of the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement.

Starting in February, the miners of Anju exceeded their higher monthly quotas on all indices, one team tunnelling 600 metres and another cutting 100,000 tons in a month. Also increased were the numbers of shock brigades of discharged soldiers, tunnelling teams of fathers and sons, coal-cutting brothers and driver couples. The miners finally hit the 10,000-ton-a-day target, creating "Anju speed".

Overjoyed, Kim Jong Il sent a congratulatory message on August 19, 1980, to all the miners, technicians, office workers and three-revolution team members of the mine.

The flames of "Anju speed" swept across the coal-mining industry, which assumed an unprecedented vigour.

In another development, Kim Jong Il adopted measures to ease the strain on transportation, finding its key in rail transport.

He proposed a "200-day campaign of transport revolution" to start at the beginning of 1978. He sent large guidance teams to the bureaus,

sub-bureaus and factories under the Ministry of Railways to steer the campaign by ideological stimulation.

At that time, some senior railway officials were importuning the government for greater investment in the construction of double tracks, without which, they contended, any increase in transport volume would be impossible.

Kim Jong Il decided to bring the problem of railway transport to a plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee. He examined the draft report to be submitted, and said that it should explicitly indicate the ways of boosting transport, including the need to concentrate on reinforcing some weak links for the maximum utility of the electric traction along the main trunk lines.

At the three-day 18<sup>th</sup> Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Party Central Committee, which opened on June 13, 1979, Kim Il Sung ascribed a major cause of lacklustre transport to the failure on the part of railway officials to make effective use of the existing capacity and to reinforce the weak links in the whole chain. He reiterated the ways and means to shore up this particular sector.

In directing the implementation of the resolution of the plenum, Kim Jong Il suggested running a mass innovation drive in transport, and gave a powerful fillip to it.

He instructed that the plenum of the Ministry of Railways Party Committee in mid-July should address the measures to implement the resolution of the Plenary Meeting of the Party Central Committee.

At the session, an engine driver from the Jongju Locomotive Corps vowed to secure extra haulage. Kim Jong Il thought that this was a possible solution to the traffic problem. He inquired in detail about the total number of locomotives in daily service and how much the addition of a 50-ton wagon to the normal haulage of each locomotive would increase the total traffic capacity. He realized that if every driver made a non-accident, on-schedule journey with a 50-ton wagon added, by improving his skills and displaying loyalty, it would contribute to a 1.2-fold growth in freight volume. He ensured that the railway sector launched a new drive for extra haulage, and he named it the Drive for Extra-haulage on Schedule without

Accident to Implement the Decision of the 18<sup>th</sup> Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea.

He proposed calling a national conference of the activists of the railway and locomotive sectors in late July, and made it the occasion for expanding the new drive. Records of extra haulage were renewed constantly, bringing about fresh innovations in railway traffic and helping meet the ever-increasing demand for transport.

His energetic guidance, geared to clinching the attainment of the Second Seven-Year Plan ahead of schedule in the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance, extended also to the heavy industries such as metallurgy, machine-building, chemicals and construction, as well as to light industry and agriculture.

The result was that the total value of industrial output for 1978 was 17 per cent up from the previous year, and that for 1979 gained a further 15 per cent.

#### 4. "LIVE OUR OWN WAY!"

One summer day an anti-Japanese revolutionary veteran spotted a new landscape painting on the wall in Kim Jong Il's office. Though an ordinary mountain landscape and not so beautiful or magnificent, it seemed to give off an unusually deep emotion. The commonplace scenery might escape serious attention, but he decided it must be out of the ordinary, hanging in Kim Jong Il's office. He went up to it, and, on closer scrutiny, recognized it as a picture of Yaoyinggou, once the historic site of Kim Il Sung's headquarters in the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle, where he had defended the independent stand of the Korean revolution at the time of a grave crisis. The veteran felt as if he had visited his dear old home after a long interval, and exclaimed, "Oh Yaoyinggou, eh?"

"**Sure,**" answered Kim Jong Il, delighted at the recognition. He said he had assigned an artist to the picture after the President had given him a description of the place, wondering if it might not be true to it.

The veteran was impressed: Kim Jong Il had chosen Yaoyinggou, of all scenic wonders in the world.

Kim Jong Il continued in the following vein: In order to cope with the situation facing the Korean revolution in the mid-1930s, Kim Il Sung decided to wage more dynamic political and military activities over wider areas and advance the Korean revolution to new heights. So he dissolved the guerrilla zones and started an expedition to North Manchuria from Yaoyinggou. He often remembers the place. I arranged for the painting to be done because I wanted to cherish the lofty design that he had when leaving Yaoyinggou in those complex days.

The veteran was now awakened to Kim Jong Il's will—to adhere to the banner of independence from Yaoyinggou of the mid-1930s and advance the revolutionary cause of Juche on to a higher plane in the midst of complex events in the latter half of the 1970s.

After reviewing the historical experience of the Korean revolution, Kim Jong Il judged that living one's own way was the only strategy for boosting the Korean revolution and leading the revolutionary cause of Juche to victory in the face of the turbulent political situation of the world. He called a consultative meeting of senior officials of the Party Central Committee on December 25, 1978, made a comprehensive analysis of the situation at home and abroad, and noted that the prevailing situation required, more urgently than ever before, establishing Juche and living independently, saying, “**‘Live our own way!’—this is an important strategic slogan of our Party at present. By living our own way, I mean thinking and acting with our own minds as required by the Juche idea, and solving every problem on our own and in the interests of the Korean revolution and people.**”

Then he continued in the following vein: We have so far lived our own way, never imitating others, following in their footsteps or living on their favour. We have upheld the President's guidance and followed the road indicated by him, overcoming overlapping trials by our own efforts and achieving great success in the revolution and construction. We should continue to live our own way, no matter which course others might take.

One year later, on December 19, 1979, he addressed a speech to senior officials of the Party Central Committee, under the title, *Let Us Thoroughly Implement the Party's Strategic Line on Living Our Own Way*. After

analyzing the complex situation and the difficulties in the way of the revolution, he said in the following vein:

The more complex the situation becomes and the more tough the odds are, the higher we should hold the banner of the Juche idea and live our own way; this is an assured guarantee for the victorious march of the revolution against the immense odds; by living our own way, we should defend and add lustre to socialism.

Then he detailed the tasks to be tackled.

The Korean people upheld this slogan enthusiastically, and made a fresh upswing in all fields of socialist construction, overcoming trials on the way.

---

---

## CHAPTER 19

# DEVOTION TO THE GOOD OF THE PEOPLE

### 1. QUALITIES OF AN ORDINARY PERSON

#### IN CASUAL WEAR

Once Kim Il Sung said he shared his view on the people with Kim Jong Il: **“The people are my God.”**

For Kim Jong Il, the people are the object of respect, and devotion to their good is the most fulfilling thing for him.

One summer evening Kim Jong Il climbed Mt. Changgwang with Kim Il Sung on their way back from a field guidance trip.

The hill was tinted crimson in the twilight, and the red flag of the Party was visible, fluttering from the roof of the Party Central Committee building.

Musing over the flag associated with the advance of the Korean revolution, Kim Jong Il told the President that it inspired him with a sense of sublimity.

Kim Il Sung said that almost 40 years had passed since he had taken up the banner of the Korean revolution. After recalling his early revolutionary days, he continued that he did not believe in God, but the God in his heart was the people, and so when founding the Party, he had had the Party’s flag symbolize them.

After the President had descended the mountain, Kim Jong Il remained rooted to the spot, looking at the flag and ruminating over what he had just heard.

Presently, he said to the accompanying officials in the following vein:

That noble red flag of our revolution symbolizes the masses—the workers, peasants and working intellectuals. The people are the most wonderful, the most beautiful and the greatest. So I worship them with all my heart. I am a servant of the working people, and we must bring a flower into bloom on a rock if that is the wish of the people. This is Kim Il Sung’s motto as well as mine.

Turning his eyes from the flag, which was glowing more and more, he added that if ever he failed to work as he should like a servant of the people, he would no longer be Kim Jong Il.

Indeed, Kim Jong Il has all along devoted his heart and soul to the well-being of the people, respecting them as his greatest mentor.

I am a servant of the people—this is the core of Kim Jong Il’s view on the people.

For example, his frugal, simple tastes in attire exemplify his view on the people.

An old saying goes that clothes are to a man what feathers are to a bird.

Kim Jong Il is always seen in ordinary clothes, be it in his office, on a field guidance trip, meeting foreign guests or on an overseas tour.

In fact, few picture of him in a business suit and tie is available. As a student, he wore the same uniform as his fellow students. Later, while working on the Party Central Committee, he wore a four-buttoned suit of plain fabric, and in the mid-1970s a suit with a stand-up collar. And in the 1980s he began to appear in a casual jacket.

Once Kim Jong Il said to Kim Il Sung that he would look much younger in a business suit, and that was the wish of the people, and also his personal wish.

Declining his suggestion, Kim Il Sung said that he preferred his suit with a stand-up collar as he was used to it.

Saying that the stand-up collar suit is a sort of military uniform, Kim Jong Il pleaded: Our people are now enjoying a happy life, working in business suits; but we have let you work in that uniform though your 72<sup>nd</sup> birthday is already behind us; we’re conscience-stricken.

After hearing him out, Kim Il Sung was lost in deep thought. Then he again insisted on wearing the “uniform”, as he had a lot of work to do for the people.



Expressing his determination to take his place in that “uniform” and work hard for the good of the people, Kim Jong Il again asked him to work at leisure in a business suit.

The President finally conceded, and later wore a business suit brought to him by Kim Jong Il.

Kim Jong Il was now always to be seen in ordinary clothes on his inspection trips, saying his clothes were familiar to the people as they were the same as they wore.

On July 1, 1975, when he was about to leave for the northern areas, some officials asked him to change into a new suit, for his clothes were of domestic vinalon fabric. Asking what was the use for a working man to be dressed gorgeously, he said that he was going to meet the workers, in ordinary clothes, so he could be friendly with them.

Frequently, officials recommended a business suit or a new suit for him, but he always declined, saying that he could not afford to work in leisure clothes, that in this age of revolutionary struggle, he had mountains of work to do, and so a militant-looking attire suited him best.

His frugal attitude to clothes is also an expression of his Juche-based, popular aesthetic tastes.

He once said that what was simple was most to his liking, that the simple, not the flamboyant, was beautiful, and that the ideal beauty in his eyes was simplicity and purity, which Kim Il Sung favoured.

His quality of simplicity finds expression in his favourite jacket, an example of his style of perpetually and freely mixing with the people.

He once said that he saw his jacket as a military uniform, as it was so convenient for work, and he would continue to wear it in the era of revolution.

Always in a casual jacket, he visited workers and farmers, shook their grimy hands and gave pep talks to them to spur them on to further efforts.

Once an official asked him to try on a suit styled in the latest world fashion. But he declined, saying: I’ll not follow the world fashion. It must be the other way round. I wear a jacket, with the President’s stand-up collar suit in mind. He describes the plain as the noble, beautiful and fashionable, you know. His suit is a fashionable garment. So I wear plain and comfortable clothes, and I’ll do so through my life.

The people were glad to adopt his aesthetic tastes, and his jacket soon became the fashion among both officials and working people.

His shoes as well easily got twisted out of shape and down at heel, since he was always on inspection trips to factories, farms, mines and army units across the country.

One August day in 1975, some officials prepared a new pair of leather shoes for him to replace his wornout ones. But he remonstrated with them, and instead asked them to get his old shoes repaired.

His qualities as an ordinary person have been nurtured since his boyhood.

Not long after the end of the Korean war, Kim Il Sung returned home late at night and found his son patching his threadbare socks, together with his younger sister.

He asked Kim Jong Il, **“Why didn’t you ask my aide for some money to buy new socks?”**

Answering that he could not afford new socks when the people wore patched ones, Kim Jong Il said he would buy new ones when all the people did so.

Asked if he could continue to patch his socks until the conditions of the country became better, he said, **“Why can’t I, when all Korean people are doing so? I found that sewing is not so difficult.”**

The father felt proud of his children, and caressed them with an affectionate look, saying that if they were not the children of the Premier, he would like to have them commended highly, and that he was proud of them.

Once recalling his frugal life in his childhood, Kim Jong Il said in the following vein:

My father and mother always lived a frugal life, and taught me to do the same. So I have been accustomed to doing without fine shoes and clothes since my childhood. Clothes and shoes matter little in life. What matters is living an independent, dignified life. Gorgeous clothes or shoes do little to build up one’s personality. Human beauty, or personality, consists not in one’s appearance but in one’s ideological and spiritual qualities. It is he who devotes himself to the good of society and the community who looks beautiful, though he might wear ungainly shoes and clothes. So revolutionaries should not be carried away by the quality of their shoes and clothes, but should live frugally.

## A CATNAP AND BALLS OF COOKED RICE

In utter devotion to the well-being of the people, Kim Jong Il often went without proper sleep or a proper meal.

One December night in 1974, Kim Jong Il was in a guesthouse in the suburbs of Pyongyang, examining documents. He was reading several lines at a glance, putting his signature on one document before going on to another. He was through with them in four hours, and he was stuffing them into his briefcase when an official arrived carrying another briefcase. The official was just in time, as Kim Jong Il was about to make a call to him. And he again plunged into the second pile of documents.

That night he went through 150 documents with a total of 5,000 pages for seven hours, sometimes making revisions.

At four a.m. he washed his face with cold water and returned to downtown Pyongyang, saying a new task was waiting for him.

Due to the fact that he only managed to snatch catnaps for several nights running, his eyes became bloodshot, and he was worried that this would cause anxiety to the President. He said to an official: The President's anguish is my greatest pain; I always feel pained to sense his worries about my health; today I tried on a pair of sunglasses, and they could hide my exhaustion, to my relief.

One day, the President was worried to see Kim Jong Il in his sunglasses, and said to some officials: Kim Jong Il has been staying up all night working lately. Today he came to see me wearing sunglasses to hide his bloodshot eyes. I was touched to the quick at this sight. You should take some of the burden off him, not merely praise him as an incarnation of dedication.

The following happened one August day in 1976.

From early morning, Kim Jong Il had been taking care of some problems stemming from the grave aftermath of the Panmunjom Incident. Then he instructed the senior Party officials of Kaesong City and Kangwon and South Hwanghae provinces to enhance their revolutionary vigilance, build up order and discipline, get the Party members and other

working people prepared politically and ideologically and, for the present, to go ahead with farming. In the evening he visited the Pyongyang Grand Theatre to direct the production of the music-and-dance tale *Song of Paradise*. Back in his office late at night, he instructed the senior officials of the Administration Council to improve the role of the materials-supply agencies, and told some officials concerned to effect a revolutionary improvement in their work, as required by the strained situation. Then he began to read the documents he had received during the daytime. At nearly four a.m., he rang up an official to comment on an urgent document he had received from him the previous evening while guiding the music-and-dance tale. He had promised to call him in the early morning. The official, just back from a stroll in the garden to shake off sleepiness, picked up the receiver. The operator told him that Kim Jong Il had been trying to call him for a long time. He responded to the call, but there was silence at the other end. He waited, thinking Kim Jong Il might be engaged with another call or in conversation with an official over a pressing matter. But the silence continued. Wondering, he put down the receiver on the table, and hurried upstairs to Kim Jong Il's office. Entering, he paused to find Kim Jong Il asleep in his chair, the receiver in one hand.

He went back down to his office and waited, holding the receiver. After some time, he heard Kim Jong Il's drowsy voice that he was sorry to keep him waiting as he had fallen asleep before he realized it.

The official asked him to rest at least for the remaining hour till breakfast.

Saying that he was all right, Kim Jong Il continued: That compact rest has relieved me of fatigue. A catnap is a good, sweet, and intensive sleep. So maybe it's called a sweet sleep for revolutionaries.

One June day in 1977, he sat up all night in his office, and spent the whole of the next day guiding the affairs of several institutions. The following day he inspected a construction site from the early evening till late at night. An accompanying official entreated him to sleep until dawn at least, but he insisted on climbing into the car, saying that he had something to attend to first in the day ahead.

He had no sooner left the construction site, than he immediately

drifted off to sleep, ensconced in his seat. The driver took care to drive smoothly, and after some stretch, Kim Jong Il woke up, and, sitting upright, asked:

**“How long have I been asleep?”**

An official answered, “Not more than ten minutes.”

**“Ten minutes? That’s enough. Now I feel refreshed.”**

But Kim Jong Il’s voice betrayed his fatigue.

He continued: People say I’m working without sleep. But how could a human being endure an utter lack of sleep? If I have any key to working without proper sleep, it is my habit of making up for a 2-3 hour sleep of others with a compact sleep of 10-15 minutes. A catnap is not enough for sleep but a sweet yet intensive way to sleep away fatigue. It’s the sweetest sleep to me.

On another occasion, he said: As I am always on field guidance trips, I never sleep in comfort. All I can afford is a short sleep in the car during the trips. I am now used to it, so much so that sleeping in a bed seems uncomfortable to me. A short sleep in the car is my sweetest sleep and my only leisure time. I have never considered it a hardship. In fact, I’m proud of it.

And he often went without solid or timely meals.

He defined the improvement of the people’s standards of living as the overriding concern of Party activity, and geared his inspection trips to that end, but he himself lived on frugal food.

The Korean people still remember what Kim Il Sung had to say about Kim Jong Il’s frugal diet:

**“Kim Jong Il’s diet is very frugal. As a child, he showed no liking for special dishes, and if ever such dishes were available, he served them to his elders. When I ate boiled millet and soybean paste, or corn congee and salt he did likewise. When I made do with some potatoes during my field guidance, he also did the same. ... I hear he often takes some balls of cooked rice or boiled potatoes with him for meals on local tours, and that sometimes he is so busy he drinks nothing more than a cup of water.”**

One autumn day, after having stayed up all night in his office, he

called some officials at dawn, and told them to prepare some rice-balls for the urgent business trip to an east-coast area he was to make.

He left before he could take breakfast. Almost at noon, he stopped the car at a deserted mountain bend, and proposed taking a meal. By the roadside was only a flat rock barely wide enough for the party. An official suggested riding a little farther to get to a scenic place ideal for meals and rest. He was eager to provide a good rest for Kim Jong Il.

Saying that he, too, knew that, Kim Jong Il recounted a legend of Lagoon Samil:

Once upon a time, a king stopped by Lagoon Samil for a brief rest, but finally he was so fascinated by the scenery he stayed for three days. Hence the name Samil (three days).

Kim Jong Il continued: But we are not at leisure, like the king. What shall we do if we are delayed in a scenic spot? I told you to bring rice-balls to provide against any delay. Now all of you must be hungry, so let's eat here and make haste.

Sharing the rice-balls with the party, he asked them how they liked them.

They answered that the rice-balls were delicious.

He asked with a smile if they remembered that he had said a rice-ball was the best of all foods.

An official answered yes.

It had happened on a break, while the party was chatting about the tastes of different dishes. Kim Jong Il asked which kind of boiled rice tasted best. The answers were varied: A mixture of five cereals, boiled rice and millet, and so on. Kim Jong Il shook his head and said balls of boiled rice are the best of all and this would make sense to them in future while they accompanied him.

Kim Jong Il said to the officials enjoying the rice-balls that the rice-ball takes no special materials or great trouble to make and it is handy for an urgent trip and for a meal anywhere and anytime on the way, adding that it is an ideal meal for travelling revolutionaries.

Though he often had to endure hunger on trips, he took care that no trouble was caused to the people.

One autumn day in 1974, he visited Hwasan-ri at the foot of Mt.

Kuwol, and made a round of the fields in company with the chairman of the farm's management board. Twilight was creeping on when he climbed a hill near the modern village. When he took out his rice-balls for a meal, the chairman entreated him to go down to the village. Saying that he did not want to cause trouble to the villagers, he shared the rice-balls with the chairman.

One summer day when he was on the Yoltusamcholli Plain, he dissuaded the local officials from having lunch prepared for him, and took his rice-balls in a farmhouse at Ripsok-ri, Mundok County.

Frequently, officials tried to talk him around, but he said that he had lived on rice-balls, just like the rest of the Korean people, during the Korean war and postwar reconstruction, and so when he took rice-balls he sometimes recalled those experiences and got encouragement from them.

Sometimes he would give his own frugal meals to the local people he met and he himself made do with plain water.

Once he was in Yonthan County, North Hwanghae Province, in the hectic season of rice transplanting. His party sat down for lunch near a pumping station on the Hwangju Stream. Just then he heard that some farmers had just installed a new pump and were now operating it. Realizing that they must have skipped lunch, he said that he could not eat alone when they hadn't. Considering that they probably could not leave the place, he asked officials to take them something to eat. He sent the farmers almost all of the food they had brought, and drank water from a thermos flask, saying, water was his substitute for food when hungry.

It was not until the pump operators had consumed the food conveyed by a senior official of the county Party committee that they learned it was actually from Kim Jong Il. They were impressed; they vowed to keep the bowls as family heirlooms, and pass on loyalty from generation to generation.

On hearing this, Kim Jong Il said to the following effect:

As you see, the people trust and support us. We ought to do our best for the good of the people. It is my intention that they be well-fed and well-clad. The officials should try hard to provide them with better living conditions, always looking after them just as the mothers would do. The

officials should always remember that while they are well-fed and live in well-heated homes, the people might not.

Kim Jong Il's ceaseless inspection trips, geared to the people's welfare, contribute decisively to building the foundations for a great, prosperous and powerful nation.

## 2. FIELD GUIDANCE TRIPS

### IN MINES

On July 1, 1975, Kim Jong Il visited the Komdok Mine, the nation's leading light in the nonferrous metal industry, in order to encourage the miners to a fresh upsurge through the stepped-up three revolutions—ideological, technological and cultural.

The mine is situated at the foot of Machon Pass, a pass which is so steep and rough that, according to a legend, a general on horse-back in ancient times bent down lest his helmet scrape the sky.

The miners there were effecting a succession of innovations in response to the Party Central Committee's slogans that called for celebration of the 30<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the Party founding as a grand festival of victors. They were all overjoyed at the visit, 14 years after Kim Il Sung's inspection.

Straight from the train, Kim Jong Il met the management officials and familiarized himself with the situation at the mine. He first made for Ore-Dressing Plant No. 2, where he got to know the working conditions and the operation rate of equipment, and called on the workers to take pride in their workplace honoured with the President's visit, keep it in good shape and keep the equipment well maintained.

Then he bent his steps to the April 5 Pit, the second leg of the President's earlier visit on April 5, 1961, the date after which the shaft was renamed.

The management officials tried hard to dissuade Kim Jong Il from going down the pit, as did his entourage and members of the travelling art propagation team. But he dug his heels in. He said in the following vein:

Why cannot I go down there when the President did already and the





**Kim Jong Il giving on-the-spot guidance at the Komdok Mine (July 1, 1975)**

miners are working there? If I am to remain on the surface, what is the point of my visit? We must go anywhere, no matter how distant or rough, so long as it is a workplace of our precious workers. I have come to see the workers, but if I return without meeting them in their workplace, they will be sorely disappointed. So let us go down.

As he got on the mantrip, wearing a safety helmet, and in darkness, he proposed furnishing the cage and the mantrip with lighting so that the miners could read newspapers on the way to and from the face.

After he reached the face, the exultant miners rushed to greet him with cheers. Climbing out of the mantrip, he shook their hands, inquiring after their health. "That you should come into this rough pit!" exclaimed an old miner, with feeling. Grasping him by the hand, Kim Jong Il said, **"I've been anxious to meet you miners."**

He looked round the spacious face and chatted with the miners about their health and life.

Saying that he heard some management workers gave publicity to the miners who stayed at the face night and day for months, and that was erroneous, he continued:

**"To maximize efficiency per work hour is the method of organizing production in this era of technological revolution. We should make methodical arrangements for production in such a way that the workers improve efficiency per unit hour, and enjoy good rest and cultural recreation."**

In fact, the pit was well-appointed with accommodation, ventilation, a sunray lamp, dining-hall, lounge, reading-room and projection room. The miners chose to stay underground and prevent any waste of time in coming in and out. But Kim Jong Il feared it might take a toll on their health.

That day he assigned tasks to senior officials of South Hamgyong Province and the mine in question, such as the tasks to be tackled in effecting a notable boost in the production of nonferrous minerals through the fully-gearred three revolutions, as well as the ways and means to that end—installation of long-distance conveyor belts inside the pits and establishment of a command communication system. He ordered the

building of hundreds of flats for the workers every year, and the provision of coaches, trucks and more musical instruments, and for the mine to seethe with increased production in an optimistic atmosphere, cultured habits established on and off the job.

Returning to the railway station for the return journey, he met the Party secretary of the Ryongyang Mine, who had made a dash to the station in the rain on hearing of the visit of Kim Jong Il.

Kim Jong Il asked him to convey his regards to the Ryongyang miners, and asked about the situation of the mine and the living conditions of the miners. He said that it would never do if the workers found the slightest inconvenience, and he promised that he would take measures to supply them with coaches and other equipment they needed.

His departure became delayed and the rain fell more heavily. Then he sensed a suppressed wish in the secretary's face and told him to go ahead and speak frankly. At last, the latter said it was the earnest wish of his miners to meet Kim Jong Il even for a moment.

Kim Jong Il replied that he would greet the Ryongyang miners even if he had to delay some other work, and if the roads were too rough for the cars he would ride the train and call on them.

As his train pulled into Ryongyang, the miners cheered him in exultation, the first ever scene of ecstasy at the foot of the rough Machon Pass since the inauguration of the mine.

While talking with the hero workteam leader in charge of Excavator No. 7 and other miners, Kim Jong Il learned that the mine had already fulfilled its plan for the year and that the workteam in question was throwing itself into the effort to attain its self-imposed target: To exceed its quota for the year by five times. He expressed his appreciation. He granted every request raised by them, there and then, saying that he would not be tight-fisted when it came to the good of those faithful workers, and that the working class spearheads the struggle to transform man, the economy and culture, as required by the Juche idea.

When it was high time to leave, he shook the miners' hands again and again before reluctantly getting on the train.

Greatly encouraged, the miners of Komdok and Ryongyang fulfilled

their quotas under the Six-Year Plan ahead of schedule, and marched in the van of the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement.

One summer day in 1975, Kim Jong Il visited the Unryul Mine after it had installed a long-distance conveyor belt stretching into the West Sea.

Arriving early in the morning, he gazed at the belt carrying the decades-old stock of overburden, and praised it as a great creation of the present times and a monumental edifice of lasting value.

In fact, this nature-harnessing project had been initiated by Kim Jong Il himself, with a view to easing the strain on the mine's transport and putting its production on the normal track to ensure a smooth supply of iron ore to the Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex, and to obtaining thousands of ha of new land. The mine, because of its inability to remove overburden promptly, failed to meet the soaring demands of the Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex, which had just boosted its capacity through automation and remote control in its production process. The disposal of muck was the decisive factor for stabilization of production at the mine.

Kim Jong Il settled on the audacious project of a long-distance conveyor belt, and dispatched an official to the spot to obtain relevant information in detail. The official brought a report that indicated a challenging project: The whole distance from the Youth Mining Area to the seashore was very long, a tunnel to be cut would be several hundred metres long, and the power lines would have to be connected from distant Mt. Kuwol.

After thinking for a while, Kim Jong Il said emphatically:

For all its colossal scale, it must be done. We have never failed to do whatever we decided to do. Our workers are endowed with boundless creative wisdom and strength. With full confidence in ourselves, we should construct the conveyor belt as a monumental edifice of our era.

Then, he walked up to a large map of Korea on the wall, and fixed his gaze on a particular spot, and continued:

The conveyor belt is supposed to stretch from the Youth Mining Area to the seashore, but to my mind it would be advisable to extend it into the sea. First, lay it out as far as Nunggum Islet, and then extend it to Ung and Chongryang islets. This would be the way to promptly dispose

of the tens of thousands of tons of muck over the deposits of ore, and, at the same time, to reclaim thousands of ha of tidal land.

Picking up a red pencil, he drew a line from the Unryul Mine to Nunggum Islet through Kumsanpho on the seashore, then from there to Wolsa-ri to the south via Ung and Chongryang islets, as well as to Sohae-ri to the north.

Noting that such a design would change the map of the country, he said that he himself would take charge of the project. He continued that since the disposal of muck at the Unryul Mine was a top concern of President Kim Il Sung, they should make a generous investment in the project, a gigantic nature-harnessing project aimed at fulfilling the long-cherished desire of the miners.

The project thus got off to a start. With an eye on both speed and quality, he organized a powerful construction force, led efforts to adhere to self-reliance in all aspects of the project from designing to building work and equipment, and enlisted the whole country in effective assistance.

Later, while keeping track of the progress of the project, Kim Jong Il was surprised to learn that the miners and builders were carrying hefty electric poles on their shoulders from Mt. Kuwol, because the mountain was too steep and rough for the employment of tractors or trucks. He said nothing for a while, and then stated: This age is one for mechanizing the tough, backbreaking work handed down over thousands of years. We must deploy a helicopter to carry the poles.

The builders thus pulled off a near-miracle: Completion of the first-stage project in a short span of time.

Now it became possible to ease the strain on the mine's transport, ease the manual work in overburden removal and supply sufficient ore to the Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex. The overburden would be carried out to sea, linking the islets and serving to dam up thousands of ha of tidal land.

That day, Kim Jong Il gave the go-ahead for the second-stage project, which envisaged extending the conveyor belt through Nunggum Islet to Ung Islet and to Wolsa-ri, in Kwail County over Chongryang Islet.

The long-distance conveyor belt was a grand creation of self-reliance born of Kim Jong Il's guidance and his trust in and care for the miners.

## ON FARMS

In 1975, the rural economy was faced with the task of increasing crop yields to contribute its share to the celebration of the 30<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the Party's founding as a grand festival of victors.

In the period from March to October, Kim Jong Il visited the then Unggi County Integrated Farm and Wangjaesan Cooperative Farm in North Hamgyong Province, as well as other farms in South Hamgyong, Kangwon and North and South Phyongan provinces to encourage the management officials and farmers in their endeavours to attain bumper harvests to be reaped through the Juche farming method.

On March 23, while on an inspection of the cooperative farms on the east coast, he was dismayed to learn about Hamju County's poor performance in farming the previous year, despite its rich soil and abundant water resources. He immediately went to the Ryonpho Cooperative Farm on the seashore. Looking round the farmland in the company of the chief secretary of the county Party committee, he asked if sowing in the rice-seedling nurseries and subsequent transplanting had been done in the right season and in line with technical regulations, how many rounds of weeding had been done and whether fertilizer had been applied in a scientific manner. The secretary answered yes, except on a few farms that had been a few days late in the processes.

Kim Jong Il wondered what was the cause of poor farming, and finally turned his attention to the seed. After inquiring about the sown variety of the previous year and the planned variety for that year, he realized that they were again going to sow the same, unfamiliar seed. Noting that not all the good seeds from other localities were good, he stressed that they were farming in Hamju, South Hamgyong Province.

Looking across over the vast rice fields in thought for a while, he said that Hamju County should discover the cause of its lacklustre farming of the previous year and redeem itself by a good harvest that year, continuing, **“For that, you should sow the seed you are familiar with.”**

That year, the farms on the Hamju Plain achieved increased growth in

per-hectare yields by settling on the familiar strains and clinging to the Juche farming method.

The following day Kim Jong Il was in Kangwon Province. On the way to Wonsan, he spotted some farmers making humus cakes of maize in a field on the Roun Cooperative Farm in Chonnae County. He climbed out of his car and shook hands with the ri Party secretary, who was among them, expressing his delight at the sight of him working with the farmers. He picked up a humus cake and halved it, asking about the amount of fertilizer contained in it and about the planned number of such cakes.

Pointing out the advantages of humus cakes in increasing maize yields as they allow no missing hills and stimulate its growth, he said to the following effect:

In recent years, the cold front has taken its toll, and moreover, we have a limited area of arable land. Therefore, we must apply the humus cake method extensively for intensive farming and higher, stable yields. This is a hospitable place, with mountains and a river. The farm should make the most of these topographical conditions to develop fruit growing, vegetable farming, stockbreeding and silkworm raising, with the main emphasis on cereal production. There are still many houses and mulberry trees inside the fields. You must remove them to the foot of mountains and hills, rearrange the ditches and rezone the fields.

Then he gave specific advice to the Party secretary: It is essential for Party work in the rural areas to make a point of arming the Party members and other farmers with the Party's agricultural policy and rousing them for effective farming. To this end, the ri Party secretary should master the Juche farming method before giving improved Party guidance to ensure that farming is done in a scientific and technical manner, and implement the Party's agriculture-first policy.

His inspection of farms was extended in April and May to Sinuiju, Anju and other areas in North and South Phyongan provinces and, in June, to the areas on the Amnok River and the east and west coasts.

His trips were geared to applying the experience that he had gained on the experimental plots in the garden of his residence—the plots for rice, maize and other cereals, vegetables and fodder crops. He had long been

devoted to developing a scientific method of farming conducive to higher yields and suited to domestic conditions. He had his method tested on a larger scale on a state experimental farm, and, convinced of its merits, took steps to popularize it.

That same year he also successfully led campaigns for transplanting rice seedlings and humus cakes of maize, while Kim Il Sung was on an overseas tour.

In late May, Kim Il Sung, on a visit to Algeria, called Kim Jong Il, asking about the state of affairs with farming. The latter took immediate measures for the whole Party to focus its efforts on the seasonal farming work.

While all efforts were concentrated on early completion of rice transplanting, he instructed North Phyongan Province to re-plant the maize fields that had been affected by a hailstorm. He solved all the problems arising in the production of fertilizer and urged all provinces to organize a campaign for collecting night soil.

Kim Jong Il visited some hail-affected areas and took relevant measures, and went straight to the plains in South Phyongan Province in the midst of rice transplanting. It was not until midnight that he arrived at a local guesthouse.

But he again told the accompanying officials to get ready for a trip to the east-coast areas; he wanted to have a grasp of the process of farming in those areas after he had done so in the west-coast areas. They pleaded with him to take some rest before departure, but he insisted on travelling all night to Kangwon Province, saying that when President Kim Il Sung, though far away abroad, was worried about farming at home, he could not sleep in comfort, and that he must go to Kangwon Province that very night and get an idea of the farming situation in the east-coast region. As the night advanced, he suggested they could dispense with the driver and take a train. He asked them not to arrange for a special train, for that might disrupt the overall schedule of the railways. He said that he himself works for the good of the people, so he would go by an ordinary car. In company with a few officials, he left and got aboard a passenger car at Sunchon Station.



The passengers, as well as the conductress, never dreamed Kim Jong Il had climbed into their packed train in the dead of night.

The train pulled into Kowon Station in the early morning. There on the platform was the chief secretary of the provincial Party committee in waiting; he had been notified by phone.

The passengers felt something formal in the air, and conjectured that a central-level official was due to arrive. Then they were moved at the sight of Kim Jong Il getting off their train.

After that wakeful night, he went straight to a cooperative farm. On a maize plot with recently transplanted humus cakes, he walked along a furrow, counting the number of plants per *phyong*, measuring the distance between hills and instructing that the technical regulations be observed for the transplanting of humus cakes. He straightened up some drooping seedlings and put more earth around some others that needed it.

That day in Wonsan he adopted measures for all the Party organizations in Kangwon Province to put rice transplanting under their direct control and ensure its early completion. Then he visited a succession of farms in the province.

He was deeply concerned with farming through to its final stage.

One day in mid-July, he was told that Kim Il Sung, back from abroad and on a tour of the countryside, had worried that the maize might become a little sterile although its growth was sound. He immediately set in motion the project of artificial insemination of maize. The instruction was delivered throughout the country that very night, and numerous volunteers went to the rural areas.

Kim Jong Il's energetic guidance was rewarded with a notable increase in crop yields in 1975, the year coincident with the 30<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the founding of the Party.

The growth pattern in the agricultural sector continued year on year, and 1979 again witnessed a bumper harvest despite severe drought.

On his return from his inspection of some farms, Kim Il Sung said in delight that credit for the rich harvest went to the hard-working farmers. At a consultative meeting of senior officials of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee and the Administration Council, he proposed

supplying cotton-padded coats to all the farmers throughout the country.

On September 13, Kim Jong Il instructed the officials concerned to make the cotton-padded coats good-quality and complete their production before the New Year's Day. Then he told them to produce some samples of various forms and have them mass-produced by garment factories.

On September 25, he visited the exhibition of the finished samples of various colours and for both sexes.

Examining the displayed items, he inquired if they had solicited the farmers' opinions about them. Picking up a sample, he said that one never feels cold so long as one's back is warm, and that the coats look rather thin. He instructed that if cotton was in short supply, they should import polyester wool.

Choosing another sample, he found that the sleeves might be pervious to wind. Reminding the officials that the farmers are always working outside, he suggested attaching nylon cuffs to the coats. He continued that the farmers would prefer their coats with a hood added.

Presently he walked up to the farmers dressed in the samples, and asked them which colour they would like and which they preferred—quilted or unquilted, long or short, zippered or buttoned. And he instructed the officials to aim at variety in the styles to suit the farmers' tastes.

Later he kept track of the details of production almost every day and took whatever measures were needed.

By the New Year's Day of 1980, all the farmers in Korea were thus provided with padded coats.

### 3. SAVING TIME

Kim Jong Il saves as much time as possible. Every fraction of a second he spends is a moment spent by a great revolutionary, exclusively for the welfare and prosperity of his nation and for the people's happiness, a moment giving rise to a miracle, innovation and creation.

A great man's life shines along with the flow of time spent for the struggle, so to speak.

President Kim Il Sung, who observed Kim Jong Il working energetically day and night, said:

**“Comrade Kim Jong Il is now creditably administering the important affairs of the Party and the State with unremitting energy and stamina, sitting up every night.”**

Kim Jong Il said that it was vexing that a day is only 24 hours. He has been doing ten or a hundred days’ work in a single day, saving every fraction of a second.

Kim Jong Il has been saving as much time as possible on his way of devotion for the people, by making the most of every possibility and means.

Still unsatisfied with his saving of every second or minute, Kim Jong Il utilized the time in a three-dimensional way.

One day an official entered Kim Jong Il’s office to report the fulfillment of an urgent task assigned by him, when he unexpectedly heard a song resounding in the room.

The official saw Kim Jong Il going over a document, listening to the song.

At this time the telephone rang. Kim Jong Il turned the volume down on the tape recorder, asked the official to sit down, and took up the telephone handset. It was a call from a local area.

Over the telephone Kim Jong Il gave distinct answers to questions, while at the same time jotting down his opinions on the document. Then he signed the document, and wrote down the date, before opening another document.

As the official was about to leave, thinking that Kim Jong Il was going over an urgent document, the latter asked him about the task.

The official answered that he would report later after Kim Jong Il had finished his urgent business. Kim Jong Il smiled, and pressed him for the report.

While the official was reporting the fulfillment of the task as briefly as possible, Kim Jong Il kept going over the document. When the official finished his report, Kim Jong Il gave concluding answers to each question raised, and assigned a new task to the official.

At that time the song from the tape-recorder stopped.

After turning off the recorder, Kim Jong Il called an official in the artistic field on the phone and expressed his opinions about correcting the words of the song, reminding him of each word from verse one to three.

Signing the document, Kim Jong Il put down the telephone handset.

Within the very short time since the official had entered his office, Kim Jong Il had dealt with so many jobs—going over and signing two documents, giving answers to questions raised in a local area over a long-distance call, hearing the report of the official of the fulfillment of an urgent task and then assigning a new task and expressing opinions in a concrete way about a new song.

The stamina and strong ambition for work displayed by Kim Jong Il who has been leading the revolution and construction, saving every fraction of a second, have no boundary nor limit.

One September midnight in 1975 Kim Jong Il set out on a field guidance tour to a unit. In the running car he put earphones to his ears and was listening to something with a serious look.

The official who was accompanying him thought that he was enjoying a new song.

After a while, Kim Jong Il handed the earphones to the official, asking him to listen. When the official put the earphones to his ears, he heard the voice of President Kim Il Sung. He exclaimed that the President was talking.

Kim Jong Il said: You are right; this morning Kim Il Sung gave instructions again on the need to make good preparations for the celebration of the 30<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the founding of the Workers' Party of Korea; I always study his instructions this way. The more I study his instructions, the clearer the way for my work becomes and the more new energy I gain.

One autumn night Kim Jong Il made an 800-km journey across the country, from the west to the east and then again from the east to the west, elaborating on a tactical plan for the construction of a motorway between Pyongyang and Wonsan. Saying that the revolution in road construction was an urgent task of the times that brooked no further delay, Kim Jong Il left Pyongyang at 11 o'clock that night and crossed over steep rugged passes, including the Ahobi Pass and the Masik Pass, and travelled through deep valleys.

When his car reached Tokwon over the Masik Pass, Kim Jong Il checked the time and said that it took many hours to go over the Ahobi Pass and the Masik Pass, adding that the construction of a new road over the shortest section would reduce the time by half.

It was 7 a. m. when Kim Jong Il arrived at his destination. It meant he travelled non-stop for eight hours. At 3 a. m. the following day he reached his destination in the western area of the country.

Kim Jong Il said: Today we have made a historic forced march. Now I have come to know how serious the matter of constructing a motorway between the east and the west is.

That morning Kim Jong Il defined the route of the Pyongyang-Wonsan motorway.

The Pyongyang-Wonsan motorway, built in a short span of time under the wise guidance of Kim Jong Il, greatly contributed to easing the strain on transport and to the revolution in road construction.

One day officials advised Kim Jong Il to take a rest. He said there and then that he had no time to look after himself, and enduring fatigue was precisely the secret of his gaining time in life.

The fraction of a second Kim Jong Il gains in this way forms every precious second and minute he spends for the benefit of the people.

---

---

## CHAPTER 20

# ON THE OCCASION OF THE SIXTH CONGRESS OF THE WORKERS' PARTY OF KOREA

### 1. THE SIXTH CONGRESS OF THE WORKERS' PARTY OF KOREA

#### WITH GREATER POLITICAL ENTHUSIASM AND LABOUR ACHIEVEMENTS

The 19<sup>th</sup> Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Party Central Committee, held in December 1979, decided to convene the Sixth Party Congress in October 1980, the month in which the 35<sup>th</sup> anniversary of Party founding would fall.

In his New Year Address on January 1, 1980, Kim Il Sung launched the slogan, *Greet the Sixth Congress of the Workers' Party of Korea with great political enthusiasm and brilliant labour achievements!*

That same day, Kim Jong Il met a senior official of the Administration Council, and stressed the need to call on the whole Party and all the people to respond to the slogan heartily.

Kim Jong Il assiduously steered Party activity to be centred on all-out preparations for the congress.

In an effort to consolidate the Party ranks, he ensured that the Party organizations at all levels paid primary concern to work with cadres so that they could discharge their duty as the commanding staff of the revolution, built up their ranks with efficient personnel, led the Party members to hone their Party spirit, improved the quality-oriented supervision of growth in Party membership and encouraged the Party members to enhance their vanguard role.

The cornerstone of the Party is the masses, and the source of its

invincibility is the unity behind it of the people from across the social spectrum.

Therefore, Kim Jong Il called on the Party organizations to buckle down to effective work with the masses in the run-up to the Party congress so that they could fully display revolutionary enthusiasm and creative wisdom in socialist construction.

Party activity, to all intents and purposes, is oriented to the revolution and construction, and its success finds expression in the development of the socialist economy.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that the Party organizations improved their guidance of economic affairs, the direction geared to fulfilling the yearly plan in all sectors before the congress and to effecting spectacular progress in all fields of socialist construction. He emphasized that success or failure in the gigantic tasks for economic progress hinged on that guidance. He instructed the Party organizations at all levels to adopt correct measures to succeed in the economic tasks and mix closely with the producer masses to give free rein to the latter's creativity.

The result was a notable boost witnessed in the revolutionary enthusiasm of the Party members and working people as well as in the quality of the Party and the revolutionary ranks.

After the tasks for economic progress for the first six months had been completed, Kim Jong Il proceeded to enlist the whole Party and all the people in a 100-day campaign to fulfil the plan for the whole year before the Party congress.

Actually, by that time he was tied down with preparations for the congress. But, in mid-June, when the campaign tasks for the first six months were drawing to a close, he took time off to acquaint himself with how matters stood with every particular sector of the national economy. It turned out that some establishments were carrying out their quotas not on indices or in kind, but in terms of value. Such a practice had to be overcome and a production boom achieved in all sectors, so an intensive campaign was vital during the countdown to the congress.

Kim Jong Il rang up a senior official of the Administration Council, and said that without a 100-day campaign in the run-up to the congress, the

yearly plan might not be carried out on indices, except in terms of value, and that a Party congress had never been convened without implementation of the plan.

A few days later, he summoned the same official, and said: Though the goal of the 100-day campaign is ambitious, we are fully able to attain it if the entire Party, the whole country and all the people respond to the Party's call and bring about a surge in all fields of socialist construction. While I was receiving reports on the overfulfilment of the plan for the first half of the year, I recognized the confirmed loyalty and fortitude of the workers. Relying on this loyalty, we must scrupulously plan the campaign and push it forward with audacity.

Later he brought his plan to the President, who expressed his full support, saying that the plan had found the potential of normal production in the enlisting of all the Party members and working people, and aimed to boost the national economy as a whole onto a higher level.

The President adopted the plan at a consultative meeting of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee, the Central People's Committee and the Administration Council held in mid-June. Kim Jong Il set about dispatching guidance groups, made up of Party, administrative and economic officials, and officials of the working people's organizations, to all parts of the country. At the end of June, slogans and telegrams from the Party Central Committee were issued, and mass rallies for the campaign were held in all sectors and at all units.

The 100-day campaign got off to a start on July 1, as a drive to complete the yearly plan before the Party congress. The July plan was exceeded by 25 per cent, and Kim Jong Il urged further efforts and led the economic officials to improve their planning and guidance without any self-congratulations.

The senior officials went to the production sites, but found a host of difficulties, especially the lack of ideological preparedness on the part of some management personnel.

One day Kim Jong Il summoned those officials, and said: During your review of the first month of the campaign you must not just narrate the achievements but sum up the results by means of ideological struggle. For



my part, in every difficult assignment, I picture in my mind the People's Army soldiers who were faithful to the orders of the Supreme Commander during the Fatherland Liberation War. If we officials work with the same fighting spirit, the high goal of the campaign will surely be attained.

Then he told the following story:

During the war, army drivers drove with truckloads of shells on a moonless night through the Anbyon Plain to Mt. Singo, where they looked across at the steep Chol Pass ahead, wondering whether they would be able to cross it. Worse still, American planes were illuminating the roads with flares, and bombing and strafing them. It really was a tough job driving through such bombardment. This did not deter the drivers, but only confirmed them in their determination to carry out their orders. They pushed on and across the flame-engulfed pass, thus contributing to victory in the battles.

Looking around at the officials, Kim Jong Il continued: However arduous our campaign might be, it stands little comparison to the risky wartime crossing of the Chol Pass. Once we have the same stoutness of willpower and faith in ultimate victory, there is nothing impossible for us. You officials should stand in the van of the campaign, make scrupulous plans, tap all potentials and resources to the utmost, and seal the campaign with flying colours.

Kim Jong Il also exerted great efforts to enhance the role of Party organizations in the campaign.

He found that, with the Party congress approaching, some Party organizations showed scant concern for sustainable economic progress. He said to the senior officials of the relevant department of the Party Central Committee: However smooth the selection of delegates to the congress and the preparations for the functions, the congress cannot be a significant occasion unless the yearly plan is carried out ahead of schedule in all sectors of socialist construction. All Party organizations should scrupulously conduct political and organizational work for the campaign to beat the schedule of the plan. The guidance force of the campaign should be reinforced with officials from the Party Central Committee.

Kim Jong Il was always quick to respond to every obstacle in the way of the campaign. Early in August, he took urgent measures to tap every

potential for power generation, in case there might be less rain in the wet season. In early September, when shortage of coal hampered industrial production despite massive production in the collieries, he adopted steps to straighten out the transport problem for the immediate delivery of coal.

By mid-September reports were coming in from across the country to the Party Central Committee about the implementation of the assignments for the campaign and the yearly plan.

The Korean Central News Agency reported on October 3:

“The Korean people are demonstrating creativity under the leadership of the Party. The goal of the 100-day campaign has been attained by September 30, boosting industrial output by 42 per cent above the same period of last year.”

The brilliant campaign brought the yearly economic plan to a conclusion before the Party congress, and bolstered the total value of industrial output to the planned level of 1982. In addition, monumental edifices mushroomed in all parts of the country, and the rural economy reaped another bumper crop through the implementation of the Juche farming method in spite of the unfavourable climate.

In another development, Kim Jong Il initiated a campaign for the mass production of consumer goods.

In mid-June 1980, he told a senior official of the Party Central Committee of his intention to allocate a large amount of funds for consumer goods production as a step to improve the people’s standards of living on the occasion of the Party congress. A few days later, he personally defined the major consumer goods to be produced on the particular occasion—hundreds of millions of metres of cloth, tens of millions of pairs of shoes and socks, tens of millions of items of knitwear and underwear, millions of sets of ready-made clothes, enamelware, aluminumware, kitchen utensils, wrist watches, TV sets, refrigerators, cosmetics, and so on.

This episode exemplifies Kim Jong Il’s utter devotion to the welfare of the people.

With the on-going 100-day campaign in mind, some officials suggested merging the campaign headquarters with the guidance group for the production of consumer goods. But Kim Jong Il opposed this, citing a

possible disruption of consumer goods production. Instead, he instructed that the guidance team for the production be reinforced.

His foremost concern for this production is illustrated by the following episodes.

Once he was informed of the unavailability of a vessel for shipment of the vital materials for consumer goods production from a Southeast Asian country. Then he found that a Korean trading vessel, which had just arrived there, was to sail away to another country for an urgent delivery of imports. He took steps for the vessel immediately to ship the materials in question though it might not be fully loaded. Another time, when he learned about the lacklustre transport of raw materials and fuel for the production of porcelain, he sent all the lorries available on the emergency mission. Thus, a daily average of 2,000 lorries were involved in the transport of coal and materials for ceramicware.

Thanks to his energetic guidance, the production of consumer goods jumped 1.5 times from the same period of 1979 and the manufacture of TV sets, watches, aluminumware and other major items surged two to three times.

### INDEFATIGABLE ENERGY

Kim Jong Il now took over the whole aspect of the preparations for the Sixth Party Congress and its subsequent proceedings.

In the first place, the amendment to the Party Rules was of special importance for the preparation of documents for the congress. It was also a tricky issue, for the process was to reassess and reestablish the basic norms for Party building and activity.

Kim Jong Il took charge of this task, drawing on the rich experience he had gained in guiding all aspects of Party work during the period under review.

In the draft amendment, he made clear the character and historical roots of the Workers' Party of Korea, defined the Party's guiding idea as the Juche idea authored by Kim Il Sung, and described the ultimate goal of the Party as the modelling of the whole society on the Juche idea. He included such principles in Party building and activities as the problems of

strengthening the ideological and volitional unity of the entire Party based on the Juche idea, of adhering to the ideological, technological and cultural revolutions as the general line of the Party, and of clinging to the principle of independence in external activities. He gave revisions to the articles of obligation for Party members on a higher standard and to enhancing the Party's leadership role and function.

On September 2, 1980, at a meeting of senior officials of the Party Central Committee, he explained the contents of the completed draft, saying that the fundamental principle he had upheld in the amendment was straightening out the shortcomings he had found while leading the Party's organizational and ideological work in the past decade and solving practical problems in conducting work.

Some of the new replenishments he had made in the draft were: As for the character of the Party, it was defined as the revolutionary Party of Juche type founded by Kim Il Sung; as for the historical roots of the Party, it was propounded that Kim Il Sung formed the Down-with-Imperialism Union<sup>14</sup>, and through the protracted anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle laid the organizational and ideological foundation of the Party and on this basis, founded the Workers' Party of Korea.

The regulations concerning the leadership body of the Party Central Committee and the grassroots organizations were modified, and the question of intensifying ideological education among the Party members and working people in the Juche idea, Party policy and revolutionary traditions was added. The clauses concerning the Korean People's Army were supplemented, in order to make it an army of the Workers' Party and strengthen the Party's leadership for the army. Emphasis was placed on the fact that the People's Army is the revolutionary armed forces of the Workers' Party of Korea, and the articles about the work of Party organizations in the army were modified.

Kim Jong Il guided the compilation of several hundred documents for the Party congress, personally going through them, revising and adding here and there, and perfecting them. He also tackled all other problems, including the sprucing up of the congress venue and accommodation for the delegates.

He made sure that the preparations for the events celebrating the Party congress and the 35<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the Party's founding proceeded in such a way that they would develop into a political festival of the best level and the greatest scale.

On May 29, 1980, he examined the ambitious plans for the celebrations that were submitted by the officials concerned, and proposed increasing their scale by two to three times, saying that they should be bold with regard to planning. It was thus settled that the number of delegates and observers to the congress would total 6,000, that the number of delegates to the celebrations for the 35<sup>th</sup> anniversary of Party's founding would reach 10,000, that the Pyongyang citizens' parade would be one million-strong, that the number of participants in the mass gymnastics display would be 50,000, that for the evening entertainment would be 15,000, and that 10,000 firework bursts would explode in the space of 50 minutes, and 300 flower-bedecked boats would sail along the Taedong River.

In proposing a million-strong civilian parade, he said: All Party members and working people and youth and children consider it their lifelong wish to march past the platform on which the President is standing and demonstrate their loyalty. So the parade must be grand in scale. All must be reviewed by him—Pyongyang citizens, officials of the Party Central Committee and delegates from the provinces.

For Kim Jong Il, the parade was not a mere celebration but an occasion for the people to express their loyalty to the President, and a demonstration of their invincible unity behind the Party and the leader.

Throughout the period of preparations for the congress, Kim Jong Il raced against time, going short of sleep.

On October 5, he greeted the dawn in his office, after another wakeful night. He started by discussing with an official some aspect of the preparations for the congress. Then he departed to inspect a major construction project slated for completion on that particular occasion.

It was not until well past lunchtime that he left the construction site. Before he could have a meal, he made straight for the Moranbong Stadium (the present Kim Il Sung Stadium) to direct a dress rehearsal of the mass gymnastics display. An accompanying official pleaded with him to have

lunch first, but instead he urged him onward, saying that he could put off his lunch but never his appointed time for the students.

For two hours from 2 p.m. he watched the rehearsal of the gymnastics display, titled, *Under the Banner of the Party*, given by 50,000 students, giving his advice on every stage from the prelude to the finale. It was nearly 5 p.m. when he left for Pyongyang Department Store No. 2 to have a look at the goods to be supplied to the people on the occasion of the Party congress, and he continued on to the Korean Central News Agency and the newly completed Changgwang Street. Darkness was closing in when he had a lunch-cum-supper.

This was in no way an end to his daily routine. He again delved into mountains of paperwork in his office.

From 0:30 a.m. the next morning, he reviewed the dress rehearsal of the civilian parade.

He stood on the platform for nearly two hours, advising on the formation of columns, the floats, the slogans, the attire of the paraders, and the flags and banners.

He then bent his steps to the Grand People's Study House, at that time under construction, and made a round of its interior till the crack of dawn. Officials earnestly asked him to return, but he answered that he had little time left for sleep, and proposed beginning the day with the visit. He inspected every fixture and library before heading for the February 8 House of Culture (the present April 25 House of Culture), where the Party congress was to be held. When he was leaving after stressing further sprucing up, the eastern sky was crimson in the morning glow.

The accompanying officials hoped that he would return home, but he proposed, in a ringing voice, driving round the downtown area. Looking at the streets flitting by, he said that Kim Il Sung had said he would inspect the night view of Pyongyang next evening, and all the electric ornaments and the new neon lights should be switched on so that he could see them.

He returned to his office, again dived into the documents for the congress, and then saw a new feature film in advance screening.

After all these days of his phenomenal energy, the Sixth Party Congress

and the celebrations for the 35<sup>th</sup> anniversary of Party's founding became a resounding success.

The congress was held on October 10, 1980, attended by 3,062 delegates and 158 observers elected at the Party primaries, as well as 177 Party and government delegations, delegates and personages from 118 countries.

Kim Il Sung and Kim Jong Il appeared on the platform, to a chorus of cheers: "Long live the great leader Comrade Kim Il Sung!" and "Long live the glorious Workers' Party of Korea!" Tears of emotion were glistening on the faces of the anti-Japanese veterans, veteran Party members, labour innovators and other participants.

At the same time they were surprised to see Kim Jong Il's haggard features.

A Party member stood for all the people in writing to the Party Central Committee: "We ask you, the comrades who attend to Kim Jong Il, to serve and assist him better. We were so sad to see his haggard face on the TV screen."

For hours, Kim Il Sung delivered a report on the work of the Party Central Committee before returning to his seat, amidst congratulations from foreign party and State heads, and heads of delegations.

After the first-day session, Kim Jong Il, beaming, entered a room packed with the officials attending the congress, and said to the following effect:

The President's speech evoked an extraordinary response. Soon he will turn 70, but he has spoken with energy for more than five hours today. This shows that he is still hale and hearty. To have him is the greatest honour and happiness for the Party and people.

The congress discussed its agenda, amid the high-running political enthusiasm of all the Party members and people. It unanimously adopted its first item on the agenda—the decision of the report on the work of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea—as well as the third item—the revision of the Party Rules.

On the morning of October 14, there was an election to the leadership body of the Party Central Committee, the last item on the agenda. Members and alternate members of the Party Central Committee and members of the inspection committee of the Party Central Committee were elected. The First Plenary Meeting of the Sixth Party Central Committee took place, to



**Kim Jong Il attending the Sixth Congress of the WPK (October 10, 1980)**



hold an election to the leadership body, the results of which were made public in the closing stage of the congress. It really was a historic moment.

It was announced, amid thunderous cheers, that Kim Il Sung was re-elected General Secretary of the Party Central Committee by the will of the entire Party and all the people.

An announcement followed that Kim Jong Il was elected member of the Presidium of the Political Bureau, Secretary of the Party Central Committee and member of the Party Central Military Commission. Cheers again burst forth, and the heads of foreign delegations on the platform approached Kim Jong Il to express their heartfelt congratulations. It was quite a scene, indeed.

In celebration of the 35<sup>th</sup> anniversary of Party's founding and the Party congress, a parade of one million Pyongyang citizens was held on October 11, followed by a mass gymnastics display, evening entertainment and other colourful functions on October 14.

Immediately after the congress, Kim Jong Il got together with the members of the newly elected Political Bureau of the Party Central Committee and other senior Party and government officials, as well as officials in different fields, and said:

At the congress, I realized that the people, particularly the President, expect a great deal from me. I will do my level best to live up to the expectations. We shall do that by carrying the revolutionary cause of Juche through to the end from generation to generation. My mission is to be loyal to Kim Il Sung. In future, I will staunchly safeguard, inherit and develop his revolutionary idea and traditions. I will mobilize the entire Party, the whole country and all the people in the struggle to strengthen the Workers' Party of Korea as his party and complete his revolutionary cause. In short, my ultimate goal is to accomplish the revolutionary cause of Juche that he pioneered, through generations. **"This is my pledge to Comrade Kim Il Sung, to the Party and to you comrades,"** he said emphatically.

The Sixth Party Congress, the first of its kind with Kim Jong Il on the platform, holds pride of place in the history of the Workers' Party of Korea.

## 2. CONSOLIDATING THE FOUNDATIONS OF THE PARTY

Laying firm foundations of a party is a matter of principle in the building of a working-class party, and a key factor affecting the future of the revolution.

Kim Jong Il has long since put forth the policy of building up the foundations of the Party, and pushed through the task of cementing the unity of the whole Party based on Kim Il Sung's revolutionary idea. The 1970s witnessed notable success in this work. The unity of the broad masses around Kim Jong Il was built up, as was the Party's credit in the eyes of the people. The people were firmly committed to the Party and revolution, and resolved to entrust their destiny to him.

This achievement, though remarkable, was in no way the completion of the Party's foundation-laying.

Kim Jong Il summed up this success at the consultative meeting of senior officials of the Party Central Committee and the Pyongyang Municipal Party Committee held on December 3, 1980. Further, he called for steadily scaling up the Party's foundation-building as required by the Party and the developing revolution.

He was primarily concerned with building the ranks of cadres with a view to the future, a task of paramount importance in laying the Party's foundations, since the Party maintains its leadership through the medium of the cadres.

In this context, he laid stress on loyalty, the readiness to share one's lot with the Party.

One day he said to the officials of the Party Central Committee to the following effect: Once Kim Il Sung told me that in order to go on with the revolution we should have revolutionary comrades with an indomitable spirit of leading the struggle, and that this was his lifelong view on the relationship among comrades. The revolutionary cause he pioneered is yet to be concluded. We still have a long way to go. In order to make it through the revolution without any turns and twists, we should train many more

indomitable revolutionaries and lay the organizational and ideological foundations of the Party.

Throughout the years of foundation-laying, Kim Jong Il built the cadre ranks strictly with those with a strong commitment, swayed in no way by any circumstances, to uphold the Party leadership. He repudiated the tendency to stress tenure or seniority in Party work, and instructed that promotions be given boldly to the young and competent people, including those fresh from university, and systematic training be given to them. With the stress on loyalty, competence and far-sightedness in cadre promotion, he set about improving the training of Party cadres in a fresh way.

In June 1981, he arranged for an unusually large national training course for the lecturers of Party cadre-training institutions. On June 12, he sent a letter to the course, titled, *Some Tasks for Improving the Work of Training Party Cadres*, which elaborated various steps toward the proper selection of trainees by the Party organizations of all levels and toward a marked improvement of the quality of education in the training institutions in question.

Under his guidance, the Party's foundation became more solid, with the positions from the central down to the local levels being filled by young, loyal and competent persons.

Kim Jong Il exerted great efforts to fostering ingrained loyalty to the Party among cadres and Party members; his firm creed was that loyalty, based on faith and moral obligation, can only become steadfast and free from pretence or betrayal.

One late August day in 1981, he arranged for screening of a foreign film *Herod the Great*, which offered an instructive message through the deadly intrigues of contenders for power in the Church and the loyal subjects ready to risk their lives.

He asked the officials about their response, and then began to speak about the need to distinguish the loyal from the treacherous and have staunch faith and obligation, in the following vein:

The film is suggestive in many ways. One must not practice flattery to power. One must not become such a faithless man as to act on the change in circumstances or trim one's sails to the wind. One should follow a man out of regard for his personality, not for his rank. My post of Party Secretary for

Organizational Affairs is in itself a Party post, and I myself am a human being. So you must follow Kim Jong Il the man, not Kim Jong Il the secretary. Respecting a post means currying favour with power. Many of you present here have been with me for 15 to 20 years. They promised to share their lot with me and have been unerringly steadfast. They did not join me because they expected I would be in the position I'm in now. After all, they became familiar with me and shared my aims. Man should be faithful to the end to his convictions and obligations once he has gained them. If he remains true to them, he will become a loyal man, but if he discards them, a traitor. I love the loyal and hate the treacherous. Only a man of faith, of moral duty and of ideological integrity can be a genuine revolutionary, a loyal man of Juche. We must forge unity in ideology and purpose, based on faith and obligation. This unity alone will become solid.

He made another speech in a similar vein early in July 1983, at a meeting of senior officials of the Party Central Committee. He stressed that a loyal man is a revolutionary with an indomitable spirit, a man who upholds his leader with absolute worship, defends the latter's idea in any adversity and struggles to implement it, that is, a man determined to share his destiny with the latter.

At a meeting of senior officials of the Party Central Committee held on January 7, 1982, he described Kim Hyok and Cha Kwang Su as representatives of true revolutionaries with indomitable spirit, saying that in the darkest period, when the Korean people had been groaning under the repression of the Japanese imperialists, they had followed Kim Il Sung as the leader of the Korean revolution, and fought to carry out his revolutionary idea at the cost of their youthful lives. He then instructed that all officials should take a cue from their noble aim and examples, and resolve to make revolution in the same indomitable spirit, to become faithful revolutionaries who would contribute to the Korean revolution.

He continued that an indomitable revolutionary spirit is not something to be gained only through an arduous course of struggle like the anti-Japanese armed struggle, and those who are wholeheartedly loyal to the leader and firmly defend him and his idea in any adversity, may well be called

indomitable revolutionaries, though they might not have experienced an arduous march through virgin snow.

On February 27 that year he told the senior officials of the Party Central Committee about emulating Kim Chaek's loyalty, saying that, though nine years older, Kim Chaek had respected his leader, Kim Il Sung.

A Party-wide campaign was thus launched to follow the examples of Kim Hyok, Cha Kwang Su and Kim Chaek, with the result that all cadres, Party members and other working people accepted loyalty to the Party as their revolutionary faith and obligation.

Kim Jong Il also paid attention to establishing revolutionary discipline in the Party by which all move as one, improving the sense of organization among the cadres and other Party members, and strengthening their Party life.

### 3. BOLSTERING THE FUNCTION AND ROLE OF THE PEOPLE'S POWER

After the Sixth Party Congress, Kim Jong Il turned to stepping up the function and role of the people's power in order to give a powerful impetus to the revolutionary cause of Juche.

The people's power is the representative of the independent rights and interests of the people, and a political body to enlist them effectively in the promotion of the socialist cause. Its consolidation leads directly to the defence and development of the socialist system; the steady improvement of its function and role is an assured guarantee for the victorious advance and eventual accomplishment of the independent cause of the popular masses.

As a step to consolidate the organs of power, Kim Jong Il made sure that an election of deputies to the people's assemblies at all levels got underway.

The election of deputies to the Seventh Supreme People's Assembly came against a background of fresh strides in all sectors of socialist construction.

On February 28, 1982, Kim Jong Il went to Polling Station No. 28 in Constituency No. 123, cast a ballot for the candidate, a management official

of a cooperative farm, and gave him a pep talk to encourage him to further efforts as a faithful servant of the people.

In the election, the turnout was 100 per cent, and 100 per cent of the vote was for all the candidates. It was a landmark event in the endeavours of the Korean people, holding aloft the banner of the Republic, to further strengthen the power and consummate the revolutionary cause of Juche under the leadership of the Party.

The elections to the city and county (or district) people's assemblies were held successfully on March 6, 1983, setting a stamp of approval on the representatives of workers, farmers and intellectuals, who were credited with utmost loyalty to the Party and the leader, and sheer devotion to national prosperity and development of the people's power.

In consolidating the people's power, Kim Jong Il was also closely concerned with the Central People's Committee fully exercising its authority as the supreme leadership body of State power.

He took steps to set up a powerful agency within the committee for imposing stronger authority on all State organs and on the affairs of State as a whole, and to build up cadre ranks with those prepared politically and technically. He inquired about all problems, major and minor, arising in the activities of committee and gave advice on several hundred occasions on an annual average.

Thus, a well-ordered system was put in place, under which the committee in question exercised thorough supervision over the local power, judicial and procuratorial organs, and the administrative and economic organs were subject to the control of the people's committees.

A department was installed in the Central People's Committee for steering the activities of the local people's committees, and its officials in charge of the provinces were dispatched to their respective provinces. The main duty of this particular department was to guide the provincial, city and county people's committees so that they could enhance their function as a leverage of power and fulfil their responsibility for the people's welfare. Also the department was to give active help to the officials of local power organs in such a way that they could carry out Party policy and work as faithful servants of the people.

In this way, the Central People's Committee had a complete system of supervision over the local power organs, and set about intensifying its guidance for enhancing their proper function.

In order to enhance the function and role of the provincial, city and county people's committees, Kim Jong Il ensured that they took over guidance for the administrative and economic organs in the areas concerned.

On February 28, 1977, the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee took a measure to set up a separate chairmanship of the provincial, city and county people's committees, instead of the previous situation in which the post was held at the same time by the chief secretaries of the provincial, city and county Party committees, and thus to replace the system whereby the chief Party secretary took charge of the Party, administrative and economic activities in his area. In this way, administrative and economic affairs were turned over to the people's committee chairmen, and the chief Party secretaries were preoccupied with Party work only.

It turned out, however, that the people's committees were unable to perform their leadership function as they should. Normally, the chief Party secretaries dealt directly with the administrative committee chairmen, over the heads of the people's committee chairmen. A provincial Party secretary, for instance, worked directly with the provincial administrative committee chairman, because the latter committee was responsible for local industry, city management, purchasing and distribution of food, and other aspects of welfare.

A consultative meeting of the provincial chief Party secretaries was held on April 3, 1981. Kim Jong Il urged them to bolster up the function and role of the provincial, city and county people's committees, as follows:

The people's committee chairmen should provide proper guidance to and control of the activities of the administrative committees. The administrative committee, as the administrative arm of the local power, is subject to the control of and answerable to the people's committee for all its work. The administrative committee is supposed to be guided by the Party committee in Party work, but under the State management system, to be subordinated to the people's committee.

The people's committees at all levels were thus invested with leadership

authority over administrative and economic affairs in the areas under their charge.

Kim Jong Il also led the power organs to fulfil their responsibility for the people's well-being.

A matter of urgency then in improving the people's standards of living was an adequate supply of edible oil and side dishes.

Kim Jong Il instructed that the provincial, city and county people's committees tackle this task immediately. In this connection, he himself was particularly interested in increased yields of soya beans. One day in February 1981, he said that all the ridges between rice-fields and all the uncultivated land should become available for bean farming. He laid stress on a mass campaign for bean farming and some relevant principles to be observed. He assigned this undertaking to the power organs.

Early in April 1984, he acquainted himself with the progress of the campaign and deviations that had been revealed. For increased production of soya beans, he said, the necessary arrangements should be congruent with the interests of the producers; soya beans harvested from the ridges between rice-fields should not be purchased by the State but be used by the county for the production of oil and bean paste, and for fodder. He stressed the need to simplify the complex regulations concerning the reclamation of idle land, and for the provincial, city and county people's committees to designate soil suitable for bean farming, and supply the necessary amounts of bean seeds.

The people's committees were thus set in motion, supported by the guidance of Party organizations. In less than a month after the masses were enlisted, several thousand hectares of idle land were reclaimed and tens of thousands of hectares of land secured: Soya beans were sown on a total 100,000 hectares of land comprising the ridges between rice-fields and the reclaimed land. This project did a lot to increase supplies of side dishes such as bean curd and bean sprouts for the people.

In another development, Kim Jong Il ensured that the power organs were responsible for meat production.

In this regard, he urged the officials concerned to operate the State-run pig, chicken and duck plants at full capacity and launch a nationwide pig-raising campaign.



He said that for the families of factory and office workers to raise pigs effective arrangement was necessary. He instructed the local power organs to stimulate the people's creative initiative by holding provincial, city and county meetings of exemplary pig-breeders and to increase their zeal by highly decorating these models and selling them priority goods.

In order to strengthen socialist law and order, Kim Jong Il ensured that the power organs established an atmosphere of law observance throughout society.

At the beginning of the 1980s, the people's power was faced with the task of constantly developing the State and social system by intensifying observance of socialist laws as required by the Socialist Constitution.

Kim Jong Il saw what was needed and published his work, ***On Strengthening the Socialist Law-Abiding Life*** on December 15, 1982, on the occasion of the tenth anniversary of the publication of the DPRK's Socialist Constitution. As for the essence of socialist law observance, it says as follows:

**“By obedience to socialist laws we mean that all members of society live and work in accordance with the laws and regulations enacted by the socialist State. This is a disciplined life in which the working masses observe the legal order of the State conscientiously; it is an organizational life in which the State coordinates people's actions and ensures their joint activities on the basis of the laws and regulations.”**

The work goes on to clarify the lawfulness of increased observance of socialist laws and the characteristics of those laws, emphasizes the need to enhance their function and role and sets it as the main requirement for a better socialist law-abiding life to create an atmosphere of law observance in the whole of society.

The author elaborated: Establishing a law-abiding atmosphere in the whole of society means that all members of society respect the State laws with dignity, and make the observance and implementation of the laws a part of their life, a daily routine; adhering simultaneously to education in law observance, ideological struggle and legal control is to be the invariable policy of the Party in establishing an atmosphere of law observance; the

Party organizations and people's power organs should intensify their guidance for socialist law observance.

Kim Jong Il led the officials of power organs to implement the tasks for strengthening socialist law observance.

He paid profound attention to improving education in law observance, making increased observance of socialist laws a top priority, for it would lead to a keen sense of law observance on the part of the working people.

Proceeding from the fact that such education is to target all members of society and to occur in all fields of social life, he ensured that every institution, enterprise and cooperative organization was designated as a unit for such education, and that the people's committees at all levels guided the course of education. He ordered the building of a contingent of law-observance trainers among the senior officials of the units concerned who were boundlessly loyal to the Party and the leader, and prepared politically and technically, awarding them the title of law explainer, and, to improve their role, arranged a national meeting of exemplary law explainers in February 1982.

In order to boost this education to the new heights as required by developing reality, he took measures to designate Pukchong County in South Hamgyong Province as the model unit, and popularize its good experience throughout the country.

As the next step in establishing a society-wide law-abiding atmosphere, Kim Jong Il ensured that the judicial and procuratorial organs enhanced their functions and roles to strengthen legal control.

In November 1982, he sent a letter, titled, *On Improving Judicial and Procuratorial Work*, to a national meeting of judicial and procuratorial activists. He defined the improvement of the functions and roles of the judicial and procuratorial organs as a major task confronting the working-class party in power, and put forward tasks to be tackled in improving the work of this sector. In order to fulfil their mission and duty, he noted, these organs should ensure by legal means the implementation of Party policies, protect the rights of citizens and the lives and property of the people, carry out Party policy on preventing crimes and illegal acts, and

meet the requirements of Party policy in the handling of cases. To this end, he clarified the detailed tasks.

Kim Jong Il gave energetic guidance to the activities of the judicial and procuratorial organs so that they could hone the edge of legal control to uncompromisingly combat all sorts of illegal acts and crimes, and make effective arrangements for their prevention.

Under Kim Jong Il's leadership, the people's power was strengthened as the weapon of the revolution and construction and as a genuine power of the people, and it became able to fulfil its mission and duty in the promotion of the socialist cause of Juche.

## CHAPTER 21

# TO PASS ON KIM IL SUNG'S REVOLUTIONARY EXPLOITS THROUGH GENERATIONS

### 1. IDEOLOGICAL AND THEORETICAL ACHIEVEMENTS ENRICHED

In a number of his works, including his answers given in September 1972 to the questions raised by reporters from the Japanese newspaper *Mainichi Shimbun*, titled, *On Some Problems of Our Party's Juche Idea and the Government of the Republic's Internal and External Policies*, Kim Il Sung elaborated on the Juche idea, such as its starting point, origin, essence and guiding principles. But he put off evolving the idea into an integral system.

Kim Jong Il regarded the systematization of the Juche idea as a key to the defence and glorification of the President's ideological and theoretical exploits; he had long been dedicated to this end.

His ideological and theoretical activities, geared to integrating and enriching the Juche idea, gained momentum following his declaration in February 1974 of Kim Il Sung's revolutionary idea as the guideline of the times.

He got ahead with his theoretical formulation of the idea by spotting and promptly straightening out the deviations revealed in its academic studies and giving profound, scientific answers to its principles.

Once he received a letter from a social scientist, which solicited his correct judgment of the divergent opinions that were revealed in the understanding of the Juche idea.

He found that the most serious of the arguments among some scientists

was their tendency to identify the Juche philosophy with a sort of human philosophy, and their misunderstanding that independence of man, clarified by the Juche idea, is the development and perfection of the natural attribute of surviving shared by all living organisms.

On April 2, 1974, he published a treatise, titled, *On Some Problems Arising in Understanding the Juche Philosophy*, in a talk with the Party's theoretical information workers.

He pinpointed the essential differences between the Juche and human philosophies.

The Juche philosophy raises the position and role of man in the world as the most fundamental question of philosophy, and clarifies the philosophical principle that man is the master of everything and decides everything. That fundamental question is not simply a matter concerning humanity; it concerns the relationship of the world to man. The philosophical principle of Juche is not merely a view on human life, but an outlook on the world; and the Juche philosophy elucidates a world outlook centred on man, i.e., the world outlook of Juche. The Juche and human philosophies are fundamentally different in their views on man, he continued. The former regards man as a social being independent, creative and conscious, while the advocates of the latter negate the social character of man, and dismiss man as an existence dominated by instinct, a powerless being isolated from the world. The bourgeois human philosophy denies a scientific understanding of the world and its revolutionary transformation, and fosters sorrow, pessimism and extreme selfishness.

Kim Jong Il also laid emphasis on a correct approach to the new man-centred world outlook in understanding the Juche philosophy.

This world view means that man is the master of the world and that the world is dominated by man—not that the material world itself is centred on man. It also means that man is the transformer of the world and that the world is transformed by him—not that all the changes of the world are wrought by man. In understanding this world outlook, man's position and role should not be misinterpreted.

In addition, he shed full light on independence, one of the main categories of the Juche philosophy, and defined the social nature of man in a systematic way.

Independence as an attribute of man did or could not exist even in an embryonic form, pending the creation of society. Regarding independence as a natural attribute will result in obscuring the fundamental distinction between man, a social being, and living organisms in general, and downgrading the position and role of man, the dominator and transformer of the world, to the level of living organisms in general.

He defined creativity and consciousness, as well as independence, as the essential attributes of man, and explained the correlations of these three attributes.

These attributes are distinct from each other, yet closely united. Creativity cannot be fully displayed apart from independence, while independence cannot be properly attained in the absence of creativity; and these two presuppose, and are guaranteed by, consciousness. So, in understanding the social attributes of man, it is important to have a correct understanding of the three in their intertwined relationship.

Kim Jong Il expressed his intention to plunge into further details, in future, with regard to the matters of principle in understanding the Juche idea. It was an implicit manifestation of his resolve to evolve Kim Il Sung's revolutionary idea into a consummate system.

Though tied down with the heavy pressure of work, he made painstaking inquiries and concentrated on writing a full-range treatise on the Juche idea. His stream of consciousness went uninterrupted in his office and on his inspection trips, and he often stayed up all night writing.

In the treatise, he was concerned with philosophical profundity, but equally with a plain, lucid style.

He developed the contents of the Juche idea in line with the basic principles governing the progress of society, narrating the grounds for his expositions by means of the logic in the life and struggle of social man, and backing them up with concrete facts.

At last the treatise *On the Juche Idea* was completed, a classic on the Juche idea in its own right.

Late in March 1982, a national seminar on the Juche idea was held in Pyongyang to mark the President's 70<sup>th</sup> birthday, and on the 31<sup>st</sup>, its closing day, Kim Jong Il sent his treatise to it. When the moderator announced



**Kim Jong Il writing a treatise**

excitedly that its text would be read out, cheers and applause burst forth.

The participants were all ears throughout the four hours of the reading of the text.

The contents of the treatise are:

- 1. The Origin of the Juche Idea**
- 2. The Philosophical Principle of the Juche Idea**
- 3. The Socio-Historical Principles of the Juche Idea**
- 4. The Guiding Principles of the Juche Idea**
- 5. The Historic Significance of the Juche Idea**

The participants extended their heartfelt thanks to Kim Jong Il for his accomplishment of the historic cause of bringing the profound ideological and theoretical contents of the Juche idea into an integral system.

It was thus that the Juche idea became further acknowledged as the guideline of the revolution and construction and that the revolutionary working-class party and the people were furnished with an ideological and theoretical weapon with which to study the Juche idea and translate it into reality in the revolution.

In less than a year since the publication of the treatise, its full text or excerpts from it were carried in the media in over 90 countries, and it was disseminated in book form in 144 countries.

As an overseas Korean scholar put it: “Humans did not know themselves throughout the one or two million years of their history. In the fifth century B.C., Socrates proposed a riddle ‘Know thyself!’ to history, but nobody solved it. I’ve read this treatise, and in reference to the admonition ‘Know thyself!’ inscribed on a column of the Apollonian shrine, I’d like to say, ‘You preceding philosophers, you did not know man, but now we know thanks to Kim Jong Il.’ ”

## 2. MONUMENTAL EDIFICES MUSHROOM

Kim Jong Il ensured that grand monuments were erected in Pyongyang to mark Kim Il Sung’s 70<sup>th</sup> birthday, so as to convey to posterity the latter’s supreme personality and achievements for the times and revolution.



In April and again on December 6, 1975, he said to the following effect: The President will greet his 70<sup>th</sup> birthday in 1982. But we have not yet erected the grand monuments to pass on his immortal revolutionary exploits through generations. We must undertake this construction without delay, and I myself will be responsible for guiding it.

Finally, on March 21, 1979, on a Samjiyon-bound train, he initiated the construction of the Tower of the Juche Idea and the Arch of Triumph.

At that time some officials proposed constructing revolutionary sites in Wonsan and Sonbong, since the construction of the Samjiyon Grand Monument had been finished. But he answered: We must remember that Kim Il Sung's 70<sup>th</sup> birthday is approaching. You recall that we built a bronze statue to him and the Korean Revolution Museum on Mansu Hill on the occasion of his 60<sup>th</sup> birthday. So it would be good to construct other grand monuments in Pyongyang to mark his 70<sup>th</sup> birthday. What I have in mind is the erection of the Tower of the Juche Idea. It will be of great importance to build it in Pyongyang, the cradle of the Juche idea, on the occasion of the 70<sup>th</sup> birthday of the President, the founder of that idea. The next such project will be the Arch of Triumph. The President left Mangyongdae at the age of 13, nursing the vision of national liberation, and finally returned in triumph. The arch will symbolize this.

He paid close attention to perfecting the design for the two projects.

Top priority was the proper selection of the sites, for that would do a lot to bring out the political and ideological messages and significance of the monuments as well as their architectural and artistic effects, and locate them within convenient reach of the people.

After much deliberation and discussion and a field survey, the officials and architects agreed that the tower should be constructed in the centre of Munsu Street, a street due to be laid out in depth, and the arch at the entrance to Pyongyang through which the President had made his triumphal return, or at the crossroads of Ryonghung in the spacious Ryonmot-dong area.

Informed of this one day in October 1979, Kim Jong Il reasoned with the officials, saying that it would not be good to erect the tower in Munsu Street, because the street would be on a large scale, but it would occupy the other side of the Taedong River, which is not the heart of Pyongyang. He stressed

that the site should be on the bank of the Taedong in East Pyongyang, just across from Kim Il Sung Square, the central point of Pyongyang. Noting that in that case, the tower would be on the axis upon which are located Kim Il Sung Square and the projected Grand People's Study House, and the tower on the river bank would have two advantages, he continued: The people would study the Juche idea looking at the tower from the study house, and the people sailing upstream would be able to enjoy the waterfront on both banks.

As for the location of the Arch of Triumph, he said that the arch could only be significant by being built in front of the Moranbong Stadium (the present Kim Il Sung Stadium), where the President had made a speech on his triumphal return. He pointed out that the crossroads in front of the stadium would be the ideal location.

Kim Jong Il gave detailed guidance to the design work, inspiring the architects to inquiry and imagination.

At the time when he initiated the two monuments, he had stressed that they should become the foremost of their kind in the world, in view of the greatness of the idea and messages they symbolized, and of the aspirations and desire of the Korean people and humanity as a whole, and that they should be original and perfect in scale, form, content and every detail.

On several occasions in 1979, he gave advice on the design work.

The Tower of the Juche Idea should be a beacon tower, he emphasized. The beacon should be perched on the top of the tower, and it should be flaming red at night to symbolize the victory of the Juche idea. In front of the tower, a sculpture group of a worker, peasant and working intellectual holding a hammer, a sickle and a writing-brush, respectively, i.e., the emblem of the Party, should be erected.

As for the Arch of Triumph, he said that it should be imposing and larger than others of its kind in foreign countries. It should be of a bold height, in view of its background, the picturesque Moran Hill, and its location in front of the Moranbong Stadium. It should be of unique architectural style, mainly traditional Korean style.

After painstaking efforts, the architects produced six designs for the tower and five designs for the arch early in October that year. Kim Jong Il examined them on October 12, and said to the following effect:

Of the designs for the tower, the fifth is most to my liking, because it features a national pagoda style, just like that of the Tabo Pagoda, in line with the modern aesthetic taste. And the sculpture of a worker, peasant and intellectual together holding up the emblem of the Party, due to be in front of the tower, should be well portrayed. The portrayal of the worker is particularly important, and his clothing should be such as anybody can recognize as a working overall. As for the designs for the arch, the second design, with a modern taste, is good. It will lead to an edifice of historical significance.

He explained how to perfect the designs he had approved, and stressed that it was important to aspire to make them the best in the world.

Later on he made further studies of the designs, and examined them and table-top models several times. He made final improvements to the overall layout, size and form of the monuments, as well as in their details down to relief ornamentation.

He pinpointed the ways to perfect the design of the Tower of the Juche Idea in every possible manner: He proposed placing the word Juche on the façade of the granite tower, engraving a poem dedicated to the author of the Juche idea, building the tower in 70 tiers to symbolize its construction on the President's 70<sup>th</sup> birthday, and building three sub-thematic group sculptures and a pavilion on each side of the sculpture of three people together holding the Party emblem so as to display the vitality of the Juche idea, ensure stability of the whole area and improve the effect of observation. He fixed the height of the tower at 170 metres after having a balloon float over its construction site, observing it from across the river, from the floor and platform of Kim Il Sung Square, to estimate the proper height and thickness of the tower.

Kim Jong Il took great pains to have the Arch of Triumph built as the world's highest and largest, as the only stone gate with a peculiar national form and three-dimensional effect.

He instructed the officials concerned to engrave the first and second verses of the revolutionary paean *Song of General Kim Il Sung* respectively on the front and back sides of the arch, saying that the song is the very theme of the arch. He suggested making relief sculptures—"A Bugler for Victory", a symbol of victory in the anti-Japanese war, above the four

columns of the front and back sides of the arch; a depiction of Mt. Paektu, a symbol of the revolutionary traditions as the historical root of the Korean revolution, on the upper parts of the sides, and people cheering the President on his triumphal return and working for the building of a new country in response to a speech made by him, on the lower part of the columns; 70 azaleas along the edges of the round arch to mark the completion of the project slated for the President's 70<sup>th</sup> birthday; and placing the numerical numbers "1925" and "1945", the former being the year of Kim Il Sung's departure from his native home at Mangyongdae with a resolve to liberate the country, and the latter, of his return home in triumph.

Kim Jong Il threw his weight behind the two projects so that they could be completed as everlasting monuments.

At his initiative, the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee adopted, on November 21, 1979, a decision on erecting the Tower of the Juche Idea and the Arch of Triumph as a concern of the whole Party, the whole country and all the people, and issued it to the Party organizations at all levels to set in motion extensive political work. He himself took charge of its implementation, and installed the Central Guidance Committee for Construction of the Tower of the Juche Idea and the Arch of Triumph with senior Party and State officials.

In the autumn of 1979, he took a step to organize a shock brigade of Party members from Pyongyang and every province and assign them to work on the two projects. He ordered the starting of the tower project in the spring of 1980 after scrupulous preparations had been made, and the arch project after the conclusion of the Sixth Party Congress, in an intensive way.

The shock brigade, a powerful construction force, set to work on April 30, 1980.

With the acceleration of the projects, Kim Jong Il set the stages and tasks for each of them. On September 13, he visited the construction site when the framework of the tower was completed, and encouraged the officials and builders to further efforts.

He took measures in the spring to prepare padded jackets, shoes and gloves for the builders, to provide against the winter. In the summer, he supplied a large number of sunglasses to protect the workers' eyes from the

hot sunrays and the flying dust, as well as the latest type of binoculars to be used for direction and safety control in altitude work.

The builders pressed ahead, on the ground, dangling in mid-air or submerged underwater, whether in snowstorms or torrential rain. They created astonishing speed in the foundation digging and tamping, and framework concrete-tamping.

A similarly splendid performance was registered in the project for the arch and road expansion, as well as at granite quarries across the country, which was swept with political enthusiasm and creative activity.

Aid goods streamed along to the construction sites from people in all parts of the country—from Lake Chon on Mt. Paektu and the coast at Sonbong to the area along the Military Demarcation Line. A great number of volunteers rushed to assist the construction.

Many south Korean people collected rare pieces of marble, from the Thaebaek, Jiri and other steep mountain ranges, and sent them along, with inscriptions, “Long Live Kim Il Sung, the Sun of Juche!” and “Long Live Kim Jong Il, the Guiding Star of Juche!” Korean residents in Japan donated valuable trees, flowers and marble out of their sincere loyalty.

This was also the case with many leaders and progressive people in foreign countries.

The President of Benin instructed government officials to collect top-quality marble in an area 800 km away from the capital and process it with care. Then he sent a delegation exclusively to escort it to Pyongyang. The Head of State of Burkina Faso donated a valuable piece of marble in his name, saying, “The Tower of the Juche Idea, to be built in Pyongyang, will be a pride of the world as well as Korea, and it will become a world monument. It will convey to posterity the fact that President Kim Il Sung’s revolutionary idea represents the present times.” The organizations for the study of the Juche idea and individuals from more than 80 countries including Mali, Pakistan, Peru, Thailand, Japan, Italy and Portugal sent 500 stones, designs for stone-processing, 160 species of trees and flowers, as well as stone-cutting machines and snow ploughs.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that the central interior wall of the tower’s pedestal was given over to the display of the valuable stones donated by

overseas Koreans and foreigners, and that the donated trees and flowers were planted around the tower and the Arch of Triumph.

It was thus thanks to the loyalty of the Korean people and the devotion of the world's progressive people that the Tower of the Juche Idea and the Arch of Triumph were constructed in an imposing style in Pyongyang.

On April 1, 1982, Kim Il Sung, accompanied by Kim Jong Il, looked round the two monuments.

On April 10, Kim Jong Il said gleefully: **“The recent construction of the Tower of the Juche Idea, Arch of Triumph and other monumental edifices has done a lot to delight the President and celebrate his 70<sup>th</sup> birthday, and I’m so light-hearted.”**

The arch and the tower were unveiled respectively on April 14 and 15, 1982, to mark Kim Il Sung's 70<sup>th</sup> birthday.

The Zimbabwean President, while in Korea to join the birthday celebrations, looked across at the Tower of the Juche Idea for a long time from the observation platform of the Grand People's Study House, and said, “The Seven Wonders of the World are much talked about. I think that the Tower of the Juche Idea should be the foremost of them. It is the model of a monument.” The president of another country said that the beacon of Juche would remain aflame for ever, as the tower symbolizes the immortal Juche idea of President Kim Il Sung.

The monumental edifices that sprang up in Pyongyang on the occasion of Kim Il Sung's 70<sup>th</sup> birthday exemplified Kim Jong Il's loyal devotion to him, and his eagerness to relieve the President of any worry and afford him pleasure.

Now he set about carrying into effect another plan of the President: Construction of the Grand People's Study House on Namsan Hill in the heart of Pyongyang. Kim Il Sung had reserved the site for later use, as far back as during the Korean war, when the master plan for the reconstruction of Pyongyang was in the making.

In mid-December 1973, he climbed the hill and said that it was high time to clear the site for a project, specifically a big library, as the People's Palace of Culture and the Students and Children's Palace had already been built in Pyongyang.

Kim Jong Il buckled down to this plan, and assumed direct control of the Grand People's Study House project.

He proposed holding a national design contest for this particular project, and directed its planning in such a way that it could reflect the President's intention and the people's aspiration.

He examined the different designs submitted, and found that all of those showed modern buildings. Reminding the officials that what the President had in mind was a building in traditional Korean style, he said that this building, which was to be the axis in the architectural layout of Pyongyang, should be in Korean style in order for it to bring out the full character and appearance of Pyongyang as a city of Korea and the people.

He set his mind on a neat, graceful and distinctively Korean style and an optimum scale blending in well with the surroundings.

He instructed that the original scale be reduced to a level harmonious with the surroundings. Then he examined the altered design several times, setting a reasonable scale, size and height. He stressed: The standard for comparison in scale is not the size of any library in foreign countries, but that matching the sizes of Kim Il Sung Square and the buildings around it; those to be referred to for constructing a study house in ideal harmony with the surrounding buildings and as the axis of architectural layout in Pyongyang, should be the platform of Kim Il Sung Square and the buildings on either side, when viewed from the square, and should be the Korean Revolution Museum, Mansudae Art Theatre, Pyongyang Students and Children's Palace and Pyongyang Grand Theatre, when viewed from East Pyongyang.

This idea was a flash of inspiration to the planners, who had been groping about, and they finally came up with a design with a reduced scale.

He frequented the construction site and made sure that the height of the central roof would match that of the surrounding buildings and that the main part would be given over to libraries and reading rooms. Then he supplied sophisticated equipment such as air-conditioners and lighting apparatus.

The project was thus completed in a year and nine months, as a major masterpiece of Korean architectural art.

With a total floor space of nearly 100,000 m<sup>2</sup>, the study house has a

capacity of up to 30 million volumes, libraries with a total length of 260 km and over 600 rooms, including reading, lecture and information rooms, with a total of 6,000 seats.

On September 26, 1981, just before it was opened for service, Kim Il Sung visited it and climbed to the observation platform. Satisfied with the excellent construction of the Grand People's Study House, he said with delight that it did so much toward the wonderful layout of the heart of Pyongyang.

Kim Jong Il again afforded great pleasure to Kim Il Sung on the occasion of his 70<sup>th</sup> birthday by materializing the latter's other plans for a maternity hospital, health complex and indoor swimming pool in Pyongyang.

Once, while giving on-the-spot guidance in South Hwanghae Province, Kim Il Sung had visited an indoor swimming pool in Sinchon. He found some athletes in training, but the hot-spring pool was not clear, and smelt bad. He felt sore at heart over the lack of good training conditions. That night he said to Kim Jong Il in the following vein: The swimmers are training in such a low-standard pool because of our failure to provide a good one. So how can we produce good swimmers? When the country becomes better off, we should build a good swimming pool.

On February 14, 1979, Kim Jong Il said that Pyongyang had now become magnificent and modern in appearance, but still there was no good bathhouse or maternity hospital. Expressing his determination to build them, even if it meant putting off other construction projects that year, he said that they would be a significant gift to the Pyongyang citizens.

He advised the officials concerned to come up with an audacious plan for the Pyongyang Maternity Hospital and Changgwang Health Complex with fresh styles and contents, increase the number of beds from the planned 500 to 1,500 in the maternity hospital, build the health complex into a hygienic and cultural service complex with bathrooms, wading pools and a swimming pool, and to double the planned 1,000 spectator seats of the swimming pool.

He took steps to install a headquarters for these projects, staffed with competent officials, supply a construction force that had proved excellent in previous projects in Pyongyang and was equipped with modern construction



machinery and to invest heavily in the purchase of the world's latest type of equipment to furnish the buildings. He acquainted himself with the whole course of planning and actual construction, providing meticulous guidance so that the buildings could turn out to be of everlasting value.

Kim Jong Il is never tight-fisted when it comes to the good of the people, as is evidenced by the jewel-studded floor in the central lounge and marble corridors of the Pyongyang Maternity Hospital.

In the summer and again in the autumn of 1979 he visited the construction site of the hospital. One day he said that as the hospital was to be a palace for the women and children, nothing should be spared. He proposed laying out a jewel-studded floor in the central lounge, so that, immediately inside the building, one would get an impression of a palace.

As yet, there had been no precedent for a jewel-studded floor, although various other kinds of high-quality stones were used for graceful buildings. The officials were impressed, and Kim Jong Il again reminded them of the jewel-studded floor, saying that be it ever so valuable, a jewel was not too good for that purpose.

Another time, when he was informed that the corridors of the hospital were to be floored with artificial marble because of the short supply of marble, he remarked that the building was to be a gift for the women and children, so it should not be plain in any way. And he took measures for supplying marble to the hospital before any other project.

In the construction of the health complex as well, Kim Jong Il took an unprecedented step with regard to its main tricky issue, the method of water supply. Several thousand tons of water were needed each time to fill the swimming pool and bathrooms, and refilling them every so often was no easy job.

Kim Jong Il met some officials to talk about this problem. One of them proposed recycling the water, the only possible option he could see.

For some time, Kim Jong Il was lost in thought, and then said emphatically: We must solve the water problem on the principle of the best conditions for the people. The bathrooms, swimming pool and wading pools—all for the people—should not have even one per cent of the used water. We must seek a way to pump out one

hundred per cent of the old water and refill with fresh water.

Then he spread out a map of Pyongyang and drew a line with a red pencil, linking the health complex directly with the Taedong River, saying that they must draw water from the Taedong River. He added that it was natural in that age that water should flow as man wants.

On February 24, 1980, Kim Jong Il went to see the completed projects of the Pyongyang Maternity Hospital and Changgwang Health Complex.

He was quite delighted with the well-furnished hospital, after making his way through the central lounge with a jewel-studded floor, a TV reception room, operating theatre, incubator room, delivery room, X-ray room, in-patient room, baby room, physio-therapy room, laboratory, office and outside park.

Then he proceeded to the health complex and looked round the bathrooms, wading pools and swimming pool. Satisfied with the construction, he said that the two buildings should be shown to the President and presented to the people.

On March 21 and 31, respectively, Kim Il Sung looked round the new buildings, and exclaimed over and over again in huge delight that they were really tremendous.

The Ice Rink and the Chongryu Restaurant, other masterpieces of Juche-based architecture, were also materialization of Kim Il Sung's plan wrought by Kim Jong Il on the occasion of the former's 70<sup>th</sup> birthday.

Once, on his return from an overseas trip, Kim Il Sung had expressed his hope to the officials that an ice rink could be built for children. Another time he had planned to construct a modern restaurant on the bank of the Pothong River at some time in the future.

On December 5, 1979, Kim Jong Il initiated the construction of a modern, 1,000-seat restaurant beside the Changgwang Health Complex, bigger than the Okryu Restaurant and on January 11, 1980, proposed an ice-rink project while on a visit to the health complex, whose construction was nearing completion. He said that the President had long since suggested building a good ice rink in Pyongyang, adding that it should be well-appointed enough to be fit for international games as well. He designated the sites of the restaurant and the ice rink on the green lot between the Pyongyang Indoor

Stadium and the Changgwang Health Complex, and instructed that their construction be wound up in time to mark the President's 70<sup>th</sup> birthday. He proposed a conical shape for the ice rink, like a skater's hat, and advised that a model should be made of it on the spot, and the opinions of the people solicited. In addition, the projected Chongryu Restaurant should be built in a modern style, unlike the Okryu Restaurant, he said.

He led the planners and builders to adopt a thoroughly quality-conscious, people-oriented approach to the two projects.

One day in April 1980, Kim Jong Il, while examining the technical designs for the ice rink, discovered that it was supposed to be closed from June to October every year.

The designers had planned it that way because the need to cool the interior at the height of summer explicitly required an air-conditioner fitted with a cooling device three times greater in capacity than the freezing equipment for the ice.

Kim Jong Il reasoned with them in this way:

If that's the reason you've done this, you're wrong. The ice rink should remain open in summer as well, except for the period of annual maintenance. It'll prove of little use if the people cannot go to it for five months in a year. It should be open all the year round.

He asked what kinds of cooling devices, how many of them and what kinds of materials were needed, and immediately gave a nod to their purchase.

He was again absorbed in the designs, looking for any problem that called for solution. After a while he said that he could not find the item of ventilation equipment, and asked about it.

In fact, the designers had dismissed artificial ventilation, because the equipment to be imported was so expensive and, more important, most of the famous ice rinks in the world were practising temperature regulation only through natural ventilation.

He told the designers: Then the interior would still contain stale air. The health of the people would be harmed. It should not be that way. We should pump out 100 per cent of the polluted air and pump in 100 per cent of fresh air. You should alter the design, with a people-centred view.

On August 13, 1981, he visited the Ice Rink and Chongryu Restaurant,

after their interior furnishing had been finished, and emphatically called for improving the quality of construction markedly.

Looking round the interior and exterior of the Ice Rink, he criticized the obviously formalistic approach in the design and construction of the vaulted ceiling, main door, walls, columns, floor and other parts. Noting that it could not be presented to the people as it was, he instructed refurbishing of the interior.

He also called attention to all shortcomings revealed in the design and construction of the Chongryu Restaurant, and indicated the ways and means to complete it as an impeccable, monumental edifice.

Finally the builders rounded off the sprucing-up projects.

On December 6, 1981, Kim Il Sung looked round the two buildings, magnificent and flamboyant, and expressed his great satisfaction over the fact that they had sprung up as monumental edifices of a unique style and a modern and people-centred quality.

Still another project slated for the celebration of Kim Il Sung's 70<sup>th</sup> birthday was the rebuilding of the Moranbong Stadium (the present Kim Il Sung Stadium) into a modern, expanded, semi-roofed stadium.

Once, during the run-up to the 70<sup>th</sup> birthday, Kim Jong Il looked into the progress of all the projects, which would be gifts for the people from the President. The maternity hospital and health complex had already been constructed, and the projects of the Grand People's Study House, Pyongyang Department Store No. 1, Ice Rink, Chongryu Restaurant, Mangyongdae Fun Fair and modern blocks of flats were nearing completion, but the construction of a modern stadium was yet to come. He decided to spruce up the Moranbong Stadium where the President had made a speech on his triumphal return home.

One day in mid-July, 1981, he summoned the officials concerned, informed them of his decision and instructed them to draft a plan of reconstruction and to rename the stadium Kim Il Sung Stadium after the completion of the project.

The designers were excited, and set to work, planning a considerable increase in the number of seats and the width of the background, as well as an elliptic semi-roof 12 metres in length. Some time later Kim Jong Il

examined the plan, and commented: The 12-metre-long roof will be only enough to cover a third of the seats. Then, it will be of little avail after the investment of all that labour and all those materials. The length should be increased as far as possible by correctly calculating its weight, and the floor should be lowered by 1.5 metres to increase the number of seats.

The planners adopted a keen sense of thorough innovation and conceived an idea of removing all the old structures, adding ten tiers of seats and doubling the length of the roof.

One autumn day in 1981, Kim Jong Il readily approved the design, and gave the go-ahead for the project.

Following the ground-breaking blast, a shock brigade of builders and servicemen set to work, with a huge set of machinery.

On December 21, Kim Jong Il visited the construction site, went up to the top tier of the seats to look closely at the roof beams, and said that the roof seemed a bit short. He proposed lengthening it by a further three metres, and added that this might be done by using light metal instead of steel for the beams. Thus the roof was lengthened to close to 30 metres, enough to roof the whole area of seats.

Kim Jong Il again came out, even on his 40<sup>th</sup> birthday. That same day he was awarded the title of DPRK Hero, and Kim Il Sung hosted a luncheon at the Kumsusan Assembly Hall, attended by senior Party and State officials.

After the party, Kim Jong Il went straight to the renovation site of the stadium. A senior official of the Party Central Committee earnestly asked him to rest for once, as it was the wish of the people. But he declined, saying that he wanted to show the expanded Moranbong Stadium to the President on the occasion of the latter's 70<sup>th</sup> birthday, and that when the latter beamed in delight at the sight of it, it would be his greatest pleasure and happiness.

At the site, he said that the stadium, to be renamed after the President, should be flawless in every way.

He called attention to the different heights of the roofs over the background, seats and platform, and laid emphasis on the same height of the roof at all points.

The project was completed in four months. The stadium, another monumental edifice, appeared with a huge roof sparkling in the sunshine—tens of thousands of seats for spectators, artificial turf football field, an athletic track floored with special rubber plates, and up-to-date lighting equipment and screens.

On April 1, 1982, Kim Il Sung inspected the stadium, guided by Kim Jong Il. He recalled that when he had made a speech upon his triumphal return, this had been only a public playground. Remarking that it was now turned into a modern one blending in well with the scenery of Moran Hill, under the guidance of the Party, he said it was a treasure of the people to be passed on through generations.

Kim Jong Il told the officials that the stadium was good enough to deserve the name Kim Il Sung.

On April 10, 1982, the DPRK Central People's Committee issued the decree: "On Changing the Name of Moranbong Stadium to Kim Il Sung Stadium".

The host of monumental edifices that sprang up to Kim Il Sung's delight on the occasion of his 70<sup>th</sup> birthday were a brilliant fruition of Kim Jong Il's sheer force of loyal devotion.

### 3. A GRAND POLITICAL FESTIVAL

The Korean people and the people of the rest of the world wished to celebrate the 70<sup>th</sup> birthday of President Kim Il Sung as the greatest national holiday, as a common festival for mankind, out of their boundless respect and reverence for and ardent feeling of loyalty to him.

Kim Jong Il dedicated himself heart and soul to glorifying President Kim Il Sung's 70<sup>th</sup> birthday as a grand common political festival of mankind, true to the unanimous desire of the Korean people and progressive people the world over.

The Political Bureau of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea adopted a decision, titled, "On Greeting the Great Leader Comrade Kim Il Sung's 70<sup>th</sup> Birthday as the Greatest National Holiday Shining

Forever in the History of Our Party and Motherland". Kim Jong Il mobilized the entire Party and all the people to make preparations for the grand celebration of the President's 70<sup>th</sup> birthday.

He ensured that volumes of President Kim Il Sung's works and books on the President's revolutionary achievements were published on the occasion of the President's 70<sup>th</sup> birthday to brighten the great quality of the President all over the world, and bring it home to all Party members and to the working masses as well.

The *Works of Kim Il Sung*, in 20 volumes, a library of President Kim Il Sung's revolutionary ideas, were compiled and published, accompanied by the publication of other books on his personality and achievements, including *History of the Revolutionary Activities of the Great Leader Comrade Kim Il Sung* and *Biography of Kim Il Sung*, in three volumes, and the release of relevant documentary and feature films.

Kim Jong Il exerted energetic efforts to upgrade the living standards of the people and give presents to every child, student and family throughout the country.

In his speech delivered at the consultative meeting of the chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees in October 1979, Kim Jong Il said that if they improved the people's living standards to a higher stage on the occasion of Kim Il Sung's 70<sup>th</sup> birthday they could give a pleasure to the latter. He took concrete steps for the purpose. He made the provincial, city and county Party committees undertake this work forcefully in two stages: The first stage, the preparatory stage, by the Sixth Congress of the Workers' Party of Korea; and the second stage by the President's 70<sup>th</sup> birthday.

In particular, he initiated a production campaign for the President's birthday, on April 15, and arranged the central and provincial headquarters for the production of the "April 15 Goods", while ensuring that different sectors of the national economy supplied raw and other materials, coal and electricity required for the production of the said goods on a priority basis by all means, including planes and ships. Moreover, he inspected the samples of the goods several times, and provided concrete guidance for their production with the best quality.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that the events to celebrate President Kim Il Sung's 70<sup>th</sup> birthday were prepared at the highest level, with focus put on demonstration of the President's great quality and achievements.

In November 1978, more than three years prior to the President's 70<sup>th</sup> birthday, Kim Jong Il proposed the creation of the music and dance epic *Song of Glory*, the first-ever grand performance by 5,000 artistes, and mobilized all forces in the art and literary sector for its preparation.

Kim Jong Il paid his utmost attention to the creation of this new form of music and dance epic devoted to the representation of the President's revolutionary career and achievements as a masterpiece of the times, as a summing-up piece of performing arts.

On February 11, 1982, Kim Jong Il put forward a policy to divide the 70-year-long history of President Kim Il Sung's revolutionary activities decade by decade, to bring out the features of each decade, and arrange the performance with many new songs as well as the existing famous songs and dances which had been created and disseminated widely in each period of the President's revolutionary activities, so that the President's revolutionary career could be presented through a lifelike artistic representation. Then he personally selected the songs that had been popular during the days of the democratic revolution, Fatherland Liberation War, postwar reconstruction and socialist construction one by one, including the song *Victorious May*.

Kim Jong Il gave instructions on the problems arising from the creation of the work several times, and guided its preview to complete it as a masterpiece.

In early October 1980, when he was guiding the preview of the mass gymnastics display *Under the Banner of the Party* to be performed on the occasion of the Sixth Congress and the 35<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the Workers' Party of Korea, he had already instructed that the mass gymnastics for the celebration of President Kim Il Sung's 70<sup>th</sup> birthday should be created in a new form and at a much higher level, and clarified its central thematic idea and the ways for its creation. Later he titled the mass gymnastics display ***The People Sing of the Leader***, and examined its amendment throughout a whole night.

Thus the mass gymnastics display *The People Sing of the Leader* was



completed as a monumental work to sing the praises of the history and achievements of Kim Il Sung's revolutionary activities, and demonstrate the unanimous common will of the Korean people to accomplish the revolutionary cause of Juche through generations.

Kim Jong Il also ensured that a soiree that had been arranged in the old, conventional form of only a mass dance was replaced with a new form in which a mass dance and an art performance were combined, and gave concrete instructions on all problems arising out of the process of preparing the soiree at its highest level, ranging from illumination and balloons to be set up at the square to the costumes of the artistes.

Busy as he was looking after overall preparations for the celebration events, he attached great importance to the drafting of the relevant documents. He twice went over the draft report of the national meeting to celebrate President Kim Il Sung's 70<sup>th</sup> birthday, and ensured that the report covered the whole history of the President's 70-year-long revolutionary activities and fully reflected his revolutionary achievements.

As part of his endeavour to celebrate President Kim Il Sung's 70<sup>th</sup> birthday as a grand international political festival, Kim Jong Il organized the large-scale undertaking of inviting and accepting many foreign congratulatory delegations.

Around that time, many heads of State and government expressed their willingness to visit Korea to congratulate President Kim Il Sung on his 70<sup>th</sup> birthday, and those who could not come due to unavoidable circumstances said that they would send envoys. A large number of foreign figures in the political, social, academic, mass media and art and literary circles and adherents of the Juche idea also expressed their willingness to visit Korea.

Kim Jong Il provided solutions to all problems arising in receiving them.

Consequently, more than 220 foreign delegations and delegates, including heads of State and government and party leaders, and 1,000 leading figures from 118 countries participated in the celebration events.

Thanks to Kim Jong Il's painstaking efforts, the preparations for the celebration of the President's 70<sup>th</sup> birthday as a grand political festival were completely successful.

As a prelude to the celebration of the President's 70<sup>th</sup> birthday as a grand

political festival, a national seminar on the Juche idea was held, and Kim Jong Il sent it his treatise *On the Juche Idea* on March 31, 1982. It was followed by a celebration lecture, book, photo and art exhibitions, film shows and national meeting, accompanied by the inauguration ceremonies of the Tower of the Juche Idea, the Arch of Triumph and Kim Il Sung Stadium, all devoted to the high praise of the President's great qualities and revolutionary achievements, thus adding to the jubilant atmosphere of the April holiday.

Kim Jong Il attached great importance to a joint meeting of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea and the DPRK Supreme People's Assembly, where the President was to deliver a policy speech.

Saying that if heads of State and senior officials of foreign countries took part in the meeting, they would be able to better understand the greatness of President Kim Il Sung and learn much and gain confidence and courage, Kim Jong Il saw to it that not only heads of party, State and government but also delegations and individual figures from many countries visiting Pyongyang were allowed to attend the joint meeting.

At the joint meeting, President Kim Il Sung delivered a policy speech on the tasks of the people's power to be tackled in modelling the whole society on the Juche idea.

The foreign delegates highly praised his policy speech as a "grand programme shedding light on the road ahead for the peoples of the world", and a "grand plan for global independence".

Kim Jong Il also saw that the banquet in honour of President Kim Il Sung on his 70<sup>th</sup> birthday was thrown on a grand scale.

Coming across the fact that two or three foreign delegates were expected to make congratulatory speeches at the banquet, Kim Jong Il advised that it was not appropriate to deter all foreign presidents and heads of delegations from proposing toasts if they were willing to do so at the beginning of the banquet, and that such an occurrence should be anticipated in the arrangement of the banquet.

As a result, on April 15, 1982, the presidents of Guinea, Zambia, Mozambique, Mauritania and Zimbabwe, and many heads of delegations proposed toasts at the banquet.

It was rare for heads of State and party to travel to another country to congratulate their counterpart on his or her birthday. It was also unprecedented for so many heads of State and party to make congratulatory speeches at a banquet for the same purpose.

The speakers paid their highest respects to President Kim Il Sung for his achievements and devoted services for the cause of peace, liberation and independence of mankind, saying, "President Kim Il Sung is the great leader of the world revolution and a close friend of ours, who gives encouragement to us," and "President Kim Il Sung's 70-year-long career is a history of whole-hearted devotion to the accomplishment of the cause of freedom for the Korean people and the oppressed peoples all over the world."

The banquet, overflowing with respect and reverence for President Kim Il Sung and with high praise for his greatness and achievements, left a lasting impression in the minds of the participants.

Under Kim Jong Il's care, a variety of celebration events in honour of Kim Il Sung on his 70<sup>th</sup> birthday took place one after another in the presence of foreign guests, all proceeding as the events of a grand international political festival.

The music and dance epic *Song of Glory* was held on April 14, followed by a soiree of Pyongyang citizens at Kim Il Sung Square on the evening of April 15 and the mass gymnastics display *The People Sing of the Leader* performed by young people, students and schoolchildren at Kim Il Sung Stadium on April 16, all on a grand scale in the presence of President Kim Il Sung.

Kim Jong Il ensured that an art performance of foreign artistes was staged to celebrate President Kim Il Sung's 70<sup>th</sup> birthday as a grand political festival with special colour.

Many foreign artistes were invited to Pyongyang to give performances in various theatres and also a joint performance with Korean artistes in the presence of President Kim Il Sung.

As a result, April 15 found the Mansudae Art Theatre resounding with hymns of praise to the President sung by foreign artistes.

Afterwards Kim Jong Il put forward a policy of holding an international art festival every April in Pyongyang, to be called April Spring Friendship

Art Festival. This annual festival, which started as a joint performance of Korean and foreign artistes, has been held since then as an international political event to celebrate President Kim Il Sung's birthday as a common holiday for mankind as well as an art festival to pay respects to President Kim Il Sung.

Kim Il Sung's 70<sup>th</sup> birthday was celebrated all over the world.

An international seminar on the Juche idea was held in New Delhi, India, with the participation of 130 delegations and delegates from 107 countries and five international organizations.

National seminars were held in several countries, including Japan, Denmark, Guyana and Guinea. Rallies, meetings, public lectures, banquets, art performances, photo exhibitions, film shows and other colourful events were held and many books published in countries all over the world. A great number of mass media organizations broadcast or published special editions. Heads of 79 countries and outstanding figures from 130 countries sent to Kim Il Sung 3,500 letters and telegrams of congratulations on his 70<sup>th</sup> birthday. Thousands of gifts were sent to him from 121 countries; among them were gifts from the heads of 57 countries.

## CHAPTER 22

# CREATION OF THE “SPEED OF THE ’80S”

### 1. MODEL CREATIONS

Kim Jong Il convened a consultative meeting of the senior officials of the Party Central Committee on June 8, 1982, and called for a fresh great upsurge in socialist economic construction, something akin to the upswing occasioned by the December 1956 Plenary Meeting of the WPK<sup>15</sup>.

His call gave rise to a Partywide, all-people struggle to create the “speed of the ’80s”, a new speed in the era of the 1980s.

He put forward the slogan **“Create the ‘speed of the ’80s’ in the spirit displayed during the great Chollima upswing!”** and ensured that the workers at the Kim Chaek Iron Works took the lead in the effort to create the “speed of the ’80s” and that the metallurgical sector made a breakthrough in the great upsurge.

In July that year the workers at the Kim Chaek Iron Works held a meeting at which they decided to become the vanguard in the struggle to create the “speed of the ’80s”, and called upon the working masses across the country to bring about a new upsurge in socialist economic construction. In response, the workers at the Kangson Steel Works, the agricultural workers in Chongsan-ri and all the other working people rose as one in their endeavour to create the “speed of the ’80s”.

On August 13, 1982, Kim Jong Il explained the essence of the movement for creating the “speed of the ’80s”.

Stressing once again the need to conduct the movement, on September 9 that year, Kim Jong Il said that all the senior officials should push ahead with the movement as befitting the commanding personnel of the revolution.

The movement for creating the “speed of the ’80s” was a mass movement for creating a higher speed in socialist economic construction in the 1980s by inheriting the revolutionary spirit displayed by the Korean people in the period of the great Chollima upswing and embodying the principle of the speed campaign.

Kim Jong Il convened the Meeting of the Front-rankers of the Chollima Movement, the National Meeting of Young Activists and other meetings of various branches of the national economy to encourage the whole Party and all the people to create a new speed, and ensured that an example of the “speed of the ’80s” was created in the building of Ore-Dressing Plant No. 3 of the Komdok General Mining Enterprise.

The mining enterprise was planning to build another dressing plant to make up for the shortage of its capacity of dressing ore. Kim Jong Il took all the necessary measures for the completion of the project within a year and personally found solutions to knotty problems. He arranged the formation of a powerful construction command with the competent officials in the central and provincial Party and power organs, commissions and ministries under the Administration Council, concerning himself even with their organizational and ideological lives. As part of his effort to build up the construction force, he saw to it that servicemen of the People’s Army were commissioned to the project. At the same time, he integrated several units of the mine-building enterprises into a powerful construction force under unified command, and reinforced it with discharged soldiers, young shock-brigaders, and volunteers from all parts of the country. Meanwhile, he made sure that a powerful mechanized unit equipped with lorries, bulldozers and excavators was formed and that necessary materials and spare parts were supplied to it preferentially.

Whenever the project faced difficulties, Kim Jong Il indicated solutions, guiding the whole process of the project.

One day in August, a few days after the ground-breaking ceremony, an official on the spot reported to Kim Jong Il that he and his colleagues found it difficult to draw up a proper plan for the completion of the project within a year, although they had repeatedly discussed it. Kim Jong Il explained to him: It is considered a rule in the mining industry to dig ores from the

middle of a mountain and unfold the processing units one below the other. You should discard such an existing formula and method in construction and boldly push ahead with all sorts of work in a three-dimensional way as instructed by President Kim Il Sung.

Such a three-dimensional method of construction was what Kim Jong Il had already suggested at the time of the expansion project of Kim Il Sung Stadium. It had demonstrated its vitality there and then. By means of this method, the builders speeded up the project, full of fresh confidence. Giving priority to design work, they conducted the laying of the foundations, the building work, and the assembling of the equipment, piping and wiring at the same time, thus paving the way for hastening the completion of the project ahead of schedule.

When there arose the question of building before winter an ore-crushing station, which was to be the largest building in the ore-dressing plant and the most complicated in technical phase, Kim Jong Il proposed applying the monolithic method, and sent high-speed young shock-brigaders who were well versed in the method.

Thus the ore-crushing station, which was expected to be completed in six months under favourable conditions, was built in a little over a month despite unfavourable conditions.

Kim Jong Il led the whole Party and the whole nation to pay deep concern and render assistance to the building of Ore-Dressing Plant No. 3 in Komdok.

Before the plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee in Hamhung Kim Jong Il convened a consultative meeting of the senior officials of the Party Central Committee in late August 1982, at which he made it clear that the main intention and objective of the forthcoming plenary meeting was to arouse the whole Party to turn out in the struggle for hitting the production target of 1.5 million tons of nonferrous metal as Kim Il Sung planned, and suggested calling the meeting the Hamhung Plenary Meeting of the Party Central Committee in order to highlight its great significance.

Kim Jong Il made sure that the participants in the plenary meeting went personally to the construction site of the dressing plant on Unryong Hill before the meeting. The Hamhung Plenary Meeting and the inspection by its

participants of the construction site greatly encouraged not only the builders but also the workers in the Komdok and Tanchon areas, marking an important occasion for giving full support to nationwide assistance for the building of the dressing plant.

After the plenary meeting, Kim Jong Il told a senior official of the South Hamgyong Provincial Party Committee to implement the decision of the plenary meeting to the letter. Revolutionaries should always set high targets in their struggle and aggressively push ahead to reach them, he said, and encouraged him to buckle down to the work, true to his determination expressed at the meeting. He continued that he and the official should strive to hit the target of 1.5 million tons of nonferrous metal by all means, the official arousing the entire South Hamgyong Province and himself mobilizing the whole Party for the purpose.

In true support of his lofty aim, the whole Party and the whole nation, to say nothing of South Hamgyong Province itself, concentrated their efforts on the project.

Regarding the production of ordered equipment as the key to the completion of the dressing plant, Kim Jong Il gave personal guidance to this work. He formed a powerful command structure in charge of the manufacture of machines and other equipment, dispatched officials to the relevant factories and enterprises, and ensured that the State Planning Commission drew up the plan for the Mining Industry Construction Complex and supplied materials and equipment in a responsible way. On the basis of daily reports on the situation, he personally solved knotty problems and dovetailed the production of the ordered equipment into the actual capacity of each machine factory.

Thanks to his guidance, major factories and enterprises turned out thousands of up-to-date ore-dressing equipment, including conical pulverizers, king-size crushers and flotation machines by their own efforts, techniques and materials in a short span of time.

In the period of building the ore-dressing plant in Komdok, Kim Jong Il took warm care of the lives of the officials and builders. He took measures to provide them regularly with fresh vegetables, fish, meat and edible oil. In July, the height of summer, he sent them newly-produced blankets and



thickly-padded quilts in fear of cold arriving at the construction site on the high land earlier than in other areas. He also ensured that hundreds of dwelling houses were built prior to the buildings of production units, so that a new village, “Songwangdong”, was set up on Unryong Hill.

Encouraged by his love and trust, the builders completed the construction of the large-sized ore-dressing plant with the capacity of 10 million tons on Unryong Hill, Kumgol, on the occasion of the 35<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the founding of the DPRK.

On August 19, 1983, Kim Jong Il said it was a remarkable success for the constructors to have built the ore-dressing plant within the short span of one year, highly praising them for having demonstrated to the full the might of the Korean working class in the struggle to create the “speed of the ’80s”.

The building of Ore-Dressing Plant No. 3 marked a breakthrough in the effort to hit the target of 1.5 million tons of nonferrous metal, fanning the flames of the campaign to create the “speed of the ’80s” throughout the country.

## 2. SUCCESSFUL FULFILMENT OF THE SECOND SEVEN-YEAR PLAN

The year 1984 was the last one for the fulfilment of the Second Seven-Year Plan.

Kim Jong Il wisely led the struggle to successfully fulfil the plan through a dynamic campaign to create the “speed of the ’80s” in all sectors of socialist economic construction.

In order to bring about a new upsurge on all fronts of the national economy he made sure that a letter of the Party Central Committee was sent to all the Party members. And in his speech to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee on March 10, 1984, he stressed once again that all Party members and the working masses should, in response to the letter of the Party Central Committee, bring about a fresh upsurge in socialist economic construction as they had done in the previous 70-day campaign and 100-day campaign.

On May 15 the same year Kim Jong Il convened a meeting of the Political Bureau of the Party Central Committee, at which he emphasized that the bureau members, the secretaries of the Party Central Committee and other cadres should go out to the factories, enterprises and countryside to bring about a great improvement in industrial and agricultural production during the period when Kim Il Sung would be visiting foreign countries.

The day the meeting of the Political Bureau was over, Kim Jong Il started out on a trip to give field guidance to the factories and enterprises in North Hamgyong Province.

Paying profound attention to hitting the target of steel production as envisaged in the Second Seven-Year Plan, he gave on-the-spot guidance to the major iron production bases and other related factories and enterprises.

He visited the Kim Chaek Iron Works on May 15, 1984. Shaking hands with the workers and officials, he praised them for their success in iron production. He explained to them that only when the Kim Chaek Iron Works increased its steel production by running the works at the maximum rate could enough lorries and tractors be produced and the national economy developed as a whole, adding that steel is essential in the development of the country's economy.

Inspecting the hot-rolling shop, cold-rolling shop, zinc-plating shop and other major production processes at the rolling mill, he acquainted himself with the actual situation of production and convinced himself that the works could run at full capacity and put production on a regular basis, producing more steel, if only it was supplied with a sufficient amount of iron ore. He emphasized that the officials should make an exact calculation of the economy and find solutions to problems concerning raw materials and fuel without delay in order to run the works at full capacity.

On May 16, Kim Jong Il saw off Kim Il Sung in Chongjin on the latter's visit to foreign countries, and then headed for the Musan Mine, despite officials requesting that he take a short rest.

Upon his arrival at the mine, he climbed Cholsan Hill, which is more than 1,000 metres above sea-level and sat knee to knee with the workers to inquire deeply into the reality of the mine.

Kim Jong Il said that rotary drills and other equipment needed for the

increase of drilling capacity in the mine should be supplied primarily in order to ensure regular production of concentrates, and made sure that the Ragwon Machine Factory produced high-efficiency rotary drills.

The same day he gave instructions on the issue of putting production on a regular basis, providing favourable conditions for the workers' commuting, building dwelling houses and improving supply services.

He continued his journey of field guidance, heading for the Chongjin Thermal Power Plant on May 17. The plant was a new project under construction to satisfy the needs of the Kim Chaek Iron Works that was being expanded into a comprehensive base for the metallurgical industry and to meet the ever-increasing demand for electric power in the national economy.

Inspecting the plant, he took necessary measures for early completion of the project. The power plant should supply steam to the iron works, he continued, so that the latter could put production on a regular basis, and should conduct the project concerning the steam in a far-sighted way.

The same day he also visited the Songjin Steel Plant, one of the country's major steel production bases, and gave instructions which served as the guideline for increasing steel production and completing a new metallurgical process, and took measures for improving the supply services.

During his field guidance, he touched in detail on all aspects, ranging from the economic problems including production of steel, supply of coal, fish-processing, town building in South Chongjin and Kim Chaek City and agricultural production to the improvement of the people's livelihood.

Looking at the sand tables of the construction of Kim Chaek City and of the formation of South Chongjin, Kim Jong Il made clear the direction of construction, and stressed that streets should be built as modern as those in Pyongyang.

Paying close attention to reaching the target for coal production in the Second Seven-Year Plan, Kim Jong Il went to the newly-built coal-cutter shop at the May 10 Factory one evening, even skipping supper. He said he would be relieved of his fatigue if he had a look at the combined coal-cutter. When he arrived at the factory, he was very pleased with the machine and emphasized that it should turn out many combined coal-cutters of high quality so as to increase coal production.

On May 18, having wound up his field-guidance tour to North Hamgyong Province, Kim Jong Il arrived in Hamhung. In order to give an impetus to the production of a 10,000-ton press for the development of the metal and machine industries, he went to the Ryongsong Machine Complex with a firm belief that the workers there would turn it out by their own efforts once they were determined to do so.

On his arrival at the complex, he went directly to the press shop and met the workers running the 3,000-ton press. He said that they had been able to supply all materials needed in several sectors of the national economy with 3,000-ton or 6,000-ton press in the past, but today the enlarged national economy required a 10,000-ton press. He gave them the task of making a 10,000-ton press in the following year. He personally discussed the problems which might arise in making the press and said confidently that the Ryongsong Machine Complex had great potential.

Kim Jong Il again visited North Hamgyong Province on June 30. He instructed the chief secretary of the Chongjin City Party Committee to find solutions to knotty problems in the Musan Mine to ensure regular ore production. He urged him to provide the workers at the Kim Chaek Iron Works who were working in high temperatures, drivers of large lorries and excavators and drillers in the Musan Mine with soya milk.

At the beginning of July he told a senior official in the Administration Council that the Musan Mine was unable to increase the production of concentrate because of a shortage of rotary drills, and stressed that the Taean Heavy Machine Complex, the Ryongsong Machine Complex, the Ragwon Machine Factory and other large machine factories should join efforts to speed up the production of rotary drills. Next day he ensured that a nationwide drilling competition was held at the Musan Mine involving the drillers of the mine, drillers from a prospecting corps and drillers from the Unryul Mine. Thus a drilling competition was held on Cholsan Hill, Musan, to demonstrate which was better, the domestic or the imported rotary drills.

Busy as he was, Kim Jong Il paid deep concern to the daily and weekly results of the competition, and ensured that the competition produced satisfactory results.

Later Kim Jong Il sent a letter of thanks to the participants, trade union officials and lecturers who ensured success in the competition.

Thanks to the devoted efforts Kim Jong Il made to meet the ever-increasing demand for steel, a new upsurge was recorded in the ferrous metal industry, which constituted a solid foundation for developing the whole national economy onto a higher stage.

His field guidance invigorated the steel-making, machine and coal industries and the work of improving the people's living standards, thus spurring the advance in the 1980s.

Kim Jong Il paid deep concern to the agricultural sector in order to reach the target of grain production envisaged in the Second Seven-Year Plan.

On returning to Pyongyang after his field guidance to North and South Hamgyong provinces and Chongjin City, Kim Jong Il dispatched members of the Political Bureau and secretaries of the Party Central Committee and other officials to the countryside to direct the farm work there, and issued an urgent directive to the Party organizations at all levels and Party members.

The directive called upon them to brighten President Kim Il Sung's successful visit to foreign countries with a great upsurge in socialist construction, and put forward tasks to be fulfilled for the purpose, especially a detailed task of reaping a bumper harvest through the general mobilization of the whole Party and the entire nation for farming work. The Party organizations at all levels held discussions to implement the directive, and the whole Party and the whole nation turned out for its implementation.

In a subsequent directive he summed up the progress of the farming work and took appropriate measures.

He inquired into the farming conditions in several areas of the country every day and saw that measures were taken correspondingly.

Kim Jong Il's leadership ignited the movement to create the "speed of the '80s" and brought about miracles one after another in all sectors of socialist economic construction. Thus, the Second Seven-Year Plan was fulfilled in 1984.

During the Second Seven-Year Plan the total industrial output value increased by 2.2 times—the production means by 2.2 times and consumer goods by 2.1 times—and the rural economy registered great successes.

### 3. PRODUCTION OF MODERN LARGE-SIZED MACHINES AND EQUIPMENT

Kim Jong Il saw to it that the workers in the machine-building industry manufactured modern large-sized machines and equipment by their own efforts, by pressing on with the movement to create the “speed of the ’80s”.

Stressing that modernization of machines and equipment is a key to enhancing labour efficiency and the quality of products, Kim Jong Il said:

**“Making machines and equipment precision-oriented, large-sized, high-speed and automated is becoming a general tendency. We must make them as such in keeping with the trend of the times.”**

A large-sized oxygen plant was one of his primary concerns in producing modern machinery.

Kim Jong Il entrusted the workers of the Ragwon Machine Factory with the task, believing that they would fulfil it without fail as they had carried out whatever difficult and challenging assignment had been given to them by the Party in the past. He saw to it that building a branch factory for the oxygen plant was given top priority. He surveyed the master plan and the bird’s-eye view of the branch factory on two occasions, and sent a large contingent of manpower to hasten the construction. When the construction was completed he sent many items of custom-built equipment and technical data, and provided all conditions for manufacturing the oxygen plant at the earliest date.

The workers at the Ragwon Machine Factory were determined to return loyal services for his trust and expectation. They solved difficult scientific and technical problems arising in the process of producing the oxygen plant wholly by their own efforts. However, they encountered a bottleneck in the manufacturing of key components of the oxygen plant. Constituting the “heart” of the plant, they required such precision based on high technology that even the top-flight technicians insisted on importing a full set of them.

Early in June 1983 Kim Jong Il learned of this, and told an official concerned in this vein: You are blazing a trail in producing the oxygen plant, so you must face up to the fact that you will never be in smooth

waters along the way ahead; manufacturing even a simple machine tool is a painstaking job, and a large-sized oxygen plant—a peak of industrial development—is not easy to make. I think that the approach that really counts is for you to get to grips with the task with full confidence that you must and can make it by your own efforts. Only then will you be able to manufacture those key parts on your own and ensure their serial production on the basis of domestic resources and technology.

Listening to his instructions, the official realized that he was seriously wrong. However, he was still worried about how to make those key parts.

Reading his mind, Kim Jong Il said that he had given much thought to the problem.

And then he gave the official a detailed account of achievements made by a few developed countries in this field. He advised the official to tell the manager of the Ragwon Machine Factory that they must make the key parts of the oxygen plant by tapping the wisdom and skills of the technicians and convince him that nothing is mysterious or impossible for a determined will.

Afterwards, Kim Jong Il consulted a number of reference works on the subject in an effort to find out how to get over the current technological obstacles and make a first-class machine.

Even during his visit to China in June 1983 he kept thinking about the ongoing development of the oxygen plant at home and discussed the matter with one of his entourage. He said that they should make redoubled efforts for early completion of the project after returning to the homeland. One day he called an official who was expected to visit a place according to the itinerary, and said it was a right decision to make the oxygen plant by relying on internal forces. He proposed a batch of technical solutions to the problem of the “heart” of the plant.

Under such deep care from Kim Jong Il the factory came to resolve the problem of the key components.

Later, upon learning that the Ragwon Machine Factory was suffering a series of failures Kim Jong Il said that the workers at the Ragwon Machine Factory had creditably carried out tasks given by President Kim Il Sung previously, tasks more challenging than what they were facing now. He

encouraged them saying that he believed that they would succeed in the project on hand with the same indomitable will and courage they used to display for the unconditional implementation of any task given by the Party.

These words of trust spurred the factory's workers and technicians to further action. Their devoted efforts conquered the technical challenges one by one, resulting in the large-sized oxygen plant taking shape at last.

On October 22, 1984, Kim Jong Il visited the factory to see the oxygen plant at its final stage. He went to the branch factory for the oxygen plant and carefully looked around a variety of machines in operation—a control panel, a large-sized vacuum furnace, manufacturing tools of a new type and their products. The Ragwon Machine Factory is noted for its high revolutionary spirit of self-reliance, he said, and continued: the workers there always volunteered to take over urgent projects that would bring a lot of benefit to the national economy. As for the 6,000-cubic-metre oxygen plant, a blueprint was all they had, and they had no firsthand experience of assembling such a machine. However, they succeeded in making the machine. This branch factory bears the traces of the painstaking efforts made by the workers and technicians; their achievement is worthy of great praise.

Kim Jong Il threw a satisfied look at the officials, and asked them about those who made great contributions to the production process. He underlined that their endeavour was praiseworthy and that they had proved themselves qualified for membership of the Party in the course of realizing the President's teachings.

After looking around the machine-building workshop, Kim Jong Il arranged a consultative meeting of the management officials. At the meeting, he said in the following vein: The factory is admirably inheriting the tradition of self-reliance. It should set an example for the country by continually producing more and more modern machinery through the display of the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance. Technological problems and other challenges remain in the production of the oxygen plant. You must not waver, but press on with the project. Mass production of oxygen plants will make it possible for the metallurgical factories to introduce the method of blowing in oxygen. Success in this process will signify another leap forward in the field of the metallurgical industry.



He dwelt in detail on the target and concrete ways for the mass production of oxygen plants. He took additional measures at the meeting—the requisite funds and materials for the branch factory, the machines, vehicles, and supplies for the workers.

At dusk Kim Jong Il took his leave.

The large-sized oxygen plant No.1 was installed in the Chollima Steel Complex and started operation on October 9, 1985.

Kim Jong Il paid attention to making the 10,000-ton press by internal forces along with the oxygen plant production.

The press in question was an ultra-large machine about 25 metres high. The body of the press alone weighed a few thousand tons. More than 70,200 component parts of about 3,070 kinds were required. As many as 80 heavy-duty cars would be needed to carry all of them. The press, something akin to a skyscraper rather than a machine, was a "giant". At that time the countries with manufacturing capability for such a press were no more than half a dozen and only about ten countries possessed one.

Kim Jong Il conceived a plan of making the press by the internal forces on his guidance trip to the Kim Chaek Iron Works in May 1984. He entrusted the project to the workers of the Ryongsong Machine Complex who had proved themselves trustworthy previously through the production of many items of modern machinery like an 8-metre turning lathe, 3,000- and 6,000-ton presses, and a 20-metre lathe.

Encouraged once again by his trust in them, they set about the project full of confidence. However, they faced a number of challenges from the start. They had to draw designs for tens of thousands of component parts within a few months. They had neither a furnace large enough to cast the over 200-ton part nor a crane to lift it.

As they were grappling with these challenges, Kim Jong Il sent an official of the Party Central Committee in early June 1984 and, a few days after that, artistes of the Mansudae Art Troupe to the complex. He took additional measures to help the factory tide over the difficulties in the course of manufacturing the press; the Administration Council took charge of the national assistance to the factory; renowned scientists joined the technicians there to solve scientific and technological problems; and a

camera crew captured their images on the screen for historical record. The Ryongsong workers resolved a series of bottlenecks and set new records. They remade small-capacity furnaces into large versions and arranged cooperative casting with all furnaces, thus casting the aforementioned heavy component, and succeeded in lifting the part by increasing the lifting capacity of their crane. In addition, they prepared a colossal amount of components within a couple of months—a task which had been estimated to take two years or more—and introduced into the assembling process such high-tech innovations as a digital control system.

Kim Jong Il saw the project as significant, and took requisite measures in February and June 1985 and on several other occasions. Accordingly the concerned commissions and ministries under the Administration Council oversaw the supply of equipment and materials to the factory.

The whole country turned out to assist the complex in a proactive way. All of this added to the enthusiasm at the factory and the producers made remarkable progress in the “speed of the ’80s”. As a result, the project drew to an end in a short period of one year and three months, just before the 40<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the Party’s founding.

On March 11, 1986, Kim Jong Il visited the Ryongsong Machine Complex to see the press. Gazing fixedly at it, he said that he had come to the complex because he could not feel satisfied with the photo of the press carried in the newspaper, the press made by the workers of the complex totally on their own, and furthermore, he presumed they might feel sorry to hear that he had only been able to see their creation at the Chollima Steel Complex, where they would install it. He praised them, saying that the 10,000-ton press was a monumental creation of the age and their efforts were extremely laudable.

His eyes sweeping around the workers in deep emotion, Kim Jong Il resumed that it was praiseworthy that they had finished the project within the short period of one year and three months, adding that the 10,000-ton press alone would enable foreign visitors to evaluate the level of industrial development in Korea.

Kim Jong Il, in an effort to upgrade the machine-building industry, paid special attention to the let-one-machine-tool-make-another movement<sup>16</sup>

initiated by President Kim Il Sung in June 1985. He made sure that all the sectors and units of the national economy pushed ahead with this movement with the aim of mass-producing machine tools, especially large-sized and special-purpose ones, and bringing about a radical improvement in their quality.

In response, workers, technicians and three-revolution team members launched the movement vigorously and achieved remarkable successes in the process. Machine tools, including large-sized and special-purpose ones, produced within less than half a year numbered over 5,000, and 7,500 in 1986 alone.

#### 4. THE WEST SEA BARRAGE BUILT ACROSS EIGHT KM OF WATER

On the basis of his long-term plan for the transformation of nature geared to the everlasting prosperity of the country, President Kim Il Sung proposed at the Fourth Plenary Meeting of the Sixth Party Central Committee held in October 1981 four nature-transformation projects: Reclamation of 300,000 ha of tideland; bringing 200,000 ha of unused land under cultivation; and the construction of the West Sea Barrage and of the Thaechon Power Station. Of these four projects, Kim Jong Il focused on the construction of the West Sea Barrage in order to hasten the President's long-term plan. It was a gigantic, yet very challenging nature-harnessing project whereby eight km of rough sea, as deep as scores of metres and subject to frequent occurrence of high and low tides, were to be walled off, a dam set up with scores of sluices and several lock gates able to accommodate up to 50,000-ton class ships, and motorways and railway tracks arranged on top of the dam.

On May 22, 1981, the President went out on the West Sea aboard a ship and fixed the location for the barrage, assigning the project there and then to the Korean People's Army.

Kim Jong Il worked out an ambitious and daring operation for finishing the project within a few years as wished by the President, and proposed tactical ways to press on with the construction in a three-dimensional

manner. He also organized a huge construction force, most of whom were KPA servicemen—the main force of the revolution.

In late May 1981 he summoned a senior commanding officer of the Ministry of the People's Armed Forces and told him to expedite the barrage construction. He said that they should press on with the designing, foundation survey and dam construction simultaneously, and unfold a three-dimensional, all-out operation—on land, on the sea and under water—and even in the air if necessary.

He organized a barrage construction guidance committee in charge of unified control of the process, and a Party guidance team. He also arranged the formation of a task force composed of servicemen with remarkable merits and ample experience in other construction projects. In accordance with the steps he had taken for the barrage construction, the West Sea Harbour Construction Company and other influential enterprises came under the management of the West Sea Barrage Construction Bureau and a large number of renowned scientists and technicians came to be engaged in the project.

Under his personal care there was set up a system of production and supply of equipment and materials needed for the construction on a top-priority basis, and all sectors and units throughout the country rendered every possible assistance to the project. Thus, the giant project proceeded on a three-dimensional scale from the outset by relying on a powerful construction force.

Occasionally Kim Jong Il guided the construction at the site. On April 20, 1983, when the construction was in full swing, he arrived at the site from Nampho on board a ship. Standing on the cofferdam that was making its way across the rough sea, he had a panoramic view of the cofferdam, the main dam and the far-off pre-fab part area. Around that time the sinking of iron coffers into the area for the lock gates and spillway dams had almost come to an end and half of the earthen dam had been completed. He spoke in high praise of the servicemen and their great achievement.

Soon after that he consulted the general map of operations, acquainting himself with the manpower distribution for key works and the remaining part of the work for the cofferdam, spillway dams and lock gates.

One of the key challenges for the project was to build the cofferdam of over 2,000 metres round an area of the sea which should be pumped dry to allow the building work for the main dam with several lock gates. However, the officials concerned, preoccupied with other jobs at the same time, were dispersing manpower, machines and equipment, as well as technicians.

Kim Jong Il pinpointed building the cofferdam and pumping its basement dry, and constructing the lock gates and the spillway dams as priorities for the barrage construction and said that they should concentrate all forces on the main target, cofferdam.

How to build the cofferdam was a moot point among the officials. According to the conventional theory, building the earthen dam alone would take at least seven years. To hasten the completion of the project required the introduction of a new method, about which those obsessed with the established theory were hesitant. They argued that the method of pumping out the water within the walls of the new cofferdam built by a new method might render the dam unable to withstand the immense pressure of the sea water.

Kim Jong Il checked every bit of information with regard to the reasonableness of the new method before saying: We must trust the scientific theory after all. Moreover, now that the hydraulic engineers have conducted a test to confirm the theory and, on top of this, have experience in the building of cofferdams, though on a small scale, there is no reason for you to doubt this method. I believe the cofferdam will not collapse, and I fully support the new method.

Laughing a hearty laugh, he suggested organizing a splendid football match of the KPA servicemen in the sea, when the building of the cofferdam was completed. That day he expressed his firm trust in the KPA servicemen, saying that unlike foreign countries that were engaged in dam projects by relying on modern machinery, the Workers' Party of Korea was pushing ahead with the gigantic project by drawing on the servicemen's high sense of political enthusiasm and creative activity.

In response to his trust, the constructors threw themselves into the project by introducing the new cofferdam method, finished the job and pumped the water out in less than a year. Then they played a football match on the dry floor of the cofferdam amidst roaring waves all around. The old

inhabitants uttered their admiration at the sight of the dream-like game on the seabed. After the match the constructors speeded up removal of mud from the seabed, in high spirits.

On April 11, 1984, Kim Jong Il visited the site again. He highly praised the constructors for their feats of labour and expressed his confidence that the project could be completed soon.

While referring to the need to push forward the construction without slackening its speed, he stressed that the pressing task was to finish the construction of the lock gates, spillway dams and the basement for auxiliary spillways before the rainy season started. He warned that they must guard against the tendency of accelerating the construction at the expense of its quality.

Seeing the constructors carrying mud on their backs, he referred to the importance of mechanization of manual work with the supply of machines and vehicles required for the construction at hand, and took measures to supply within a month automobiles, bulldozers and excavators far more than the officials asked for.

Equipment and materials must be supplied on a priority basis for the early completion of the project, he said and made sure that the managers and Party secretaries of the relevant factories and enterprises took charge of transporting cement, steel structures and other materials and equipment to the site. And, in order to ease the strain on transportation to the construction site, he also arranged the supply of diesel-run locomotives, wagons and fuel required.

Following his visit, heavy automobiles, bulldozers, excavators, and other machines and equipment arrived at the site in great numbers, leading to a boost in the pace of the construction.

Later, as part of his effort for the supply of materials and equipment to the project, he ensured that a consultative meeting of senior officials of the commissions and ministries under the Administration Council, and of relevant factories and enterprises of all provinces was convened at the construction site, not in Pyongyang. The project proceeded apace under his guidance. At its final stage, however, a great challenge cropped up—how to deal with the final work of damming up the sea. The narrower the final gap became, the stronger the current of the water grew, washing away even

mammoth stones before they reached the seabed. Officials and technical experts racked their brains for a solution, but to no avail.

Upon learning of this fact, Kim Jong Il came to the site on September 19, 1985.

He acquainted himself with every detail about it before saying in this vein:

You had better finish the building of lock gates and spillway dams by concentrating all your forces on them before directing the current towards the open lock gates and undertaking the final work of damming up the sea. Only then can you manage the work easily. Once turned towards the lock gates, the current will lose much of its force. However, the dam building should be done with great care, although it might take longer than expected.

Kim Jong Il stressed that they should concentrate all efforts on the construction of the lock gates and spillway dams for their early completion and finish all the processes of the overall project to the highest quality, one by one.

He said that the gigantic project could be undertaken only by the People's Army, loyal to the Party and strong in organizational and combat power, and proposed erecting a monument to the heroic KPA servicemen. He continued that when the project was over, there would be many winners of official commendations, including the title of Hero, and he was sure that there would be at least 100 winners of the title of Hero.

Kim Jong Il's on-the-spot guidance paved the way for the constructors to successfully brave their way through a series of trying circumstances and hasten the day of completion of the project.

Throughout the period of construction Kim Jong Il showed his parental concern for the living conditions of the servicepersons, lavishing high trust and care on them.

In the early days of the construction, when they were suffering considerable discomfort from a shortage of drinking water, he sent a drilling team that had been engaged in exploration for minerals to find springs nearby, and saw that the Chollima Steel Complex produced drawn pipes for the waterworks as soon as possible. Soon afterwards, the construction site had a full supply of fresh water for the soldiers as a priority installation. Moreover, when the main dam stretched further than one km, he sent



**Kim Jong Il inspecting the West Sea Barrage (June 23, 1986)**



dozens of special food vehicles so that the constructors could take hot rice and soup on the spot.

Enjoying his high trust and warm care, they finished the building of the final part of the dam on April 18, 1986. Thus, the gigantic project ended in success in a short period of only five years. As a result, the Taedong River that had flowed into the sea for thousands of years formed a large artificial lake, and Nampho City and Unryul County that had been separated by a wide expanse of sea came to be joined by the grand dam.

On May 17, 1986, Kim Jong Il praised the KPA servicemen and civilian constructors for having built the West Sea Barrage across the eight km of sea in a short period of five years by overcoming all manner of hardships and challenges, true to President Kim Il Sung’s far-reaching plan for the transformation of nature, and said that their heroic feats would be handed down for all eternity along with the history of the Korean people. Thanks to his efforts to inspire the constructors to heroic feats of labour, over 100 of the constructors won the title of Hero, and tens of thousands of them were honoured with decorations. June 24, 1986, saw the grand inaugural ceremony of the West Sea Barrage, a gigantic and monumental edifice of the 1980s, in the presence of President Kim Il Sung, amidst the great interest and admiration of people the world over.

## 5. THE “PYONGYANG HEYDAY”

It was one of Kim Jong Il’s sublime plans to develop Pyongyang as the magnificent and splendid capital city, as the city of people.

One day in March 1975 President Kim Il Sung and Kim Jong Il had an important talk about the future construction of Pyongyang. The President told Kim Jong Il to take charge of the construction in the capital city for about 15 years. He went on to say in the following vein:

Our ancestors built nothing worth looking at in Pyongyang except Taedong Gate, Ulmil Pavilion and Pothong Gate, which have been renovated after the destructive Korean war. If we simply sit on our hands, blaming our ancestors for our humble heritage, Pyongyang can never take

on the features worthy of a world-famous city. Being a capital city of heroic Korea, Pyongyang must naturally become a world-famous city with a modern appearance. To this end, we need to launch a sturdy campaign with unyielding fighting spirit. Miracles are in store for revolutionaries endowed with the high spirit of a sturdy campaign.

Kim Jong Il some days later said to an official that he was going to launch a speed campaign in the construction of Pyongyang City, too, and record the "Pyongyang heyday" in the history of the capital city. Stressing that the first new street to rise would be Ragwon Street, and first monumental edifice to be built would be the Mansudae Art Theatre, he said that if scores of monumental edifices, including those envisaged by Kim Il Sung, sprang up, Pyongyang would be a world-famous city in the true sense of the word.

Firmly determined to usher in the "Pyongyang heyday" in a short span of time, Kim Jong Il clarified the master plan for the construction of Pyongyang and the pressing tasks at hand, in a talk with senior officials of the Pyongyang Municipal Party Committee and those in the construction sector on March 18, 1975.

He said that Mansu Hill and Namsan Hill should be well laid out, so that Kim Il Sung's bronze statue could be seen from any part of the city, that rows of high-rise buildings and magnificent edifices should be constructed, centring on the statue, that many modern apartment blocks and public buildings, parks and pleasure grounds should be constructed in downtown Pyongyang, and that apartments on Ragwon Street should be built in the immediate period ahead, to be followed by the construction of a modern street on the site of Ryunhwanson Street.

In accordance with this plan, a campaign for the face-lift of the capital city started in a vigorous way, as a prelude to the "Pyongyang heyday", beginning with the construction of the Mansudae Art Theatre and Ragwon Street. Kim Jong Il saw to it that the central part of the city, before anything else, was laid in such a way as to take on the features symbolic of the capital city of the people. The capital is the face of a country, while the central part of a capital is the face of the capital. Therefore, how to lay out the heart of the capital is a matter of crucial importance related to the appearance of the capital.

Kim Jong Il directed great efforts to building the Mansudae Art Theatre as a sanctuary of art in Somun-dong, located on the axis from Mansu Hill to Namsan Hill, which form the heart of the capital city, and laying out the neighbouring area well.

When the framed structure of the theatre was coming near completion, he suggested that they should level the Somun-dong area, which was full of outdated houses and small elevations before laying out a green area with a grand fountain-park.

Later, he went over the plan for the green area and designs for the fountain, mapped out by the designers, and earnestly said that levelling the side area of Mansu Hill and Namsan Hill and laying out the green area and the fountain-park there were aimed at offering a fine vista of the President's bronze statue on Mansu Hill from any part of the city.

Under Kim Jong Il's guidance, the Mansudae Art Theatre was constructed as a monumental edifice of the times, and the outdated Somun Street sandwiched between Namsan Hill and Mansu Hill was replaced by a wide green area with a grand fountain-park.

In early October 1976 Kim Jong Il came to inspect the theatre. Before entering, he stood at the centre of the park, looking at the President's bronze statue on Mansu Hill over the wide-open green area. He expressed great satisfaction over the fine view of the statue and the wonderful layout of the central part of the city.

Later, the Grand People's Study House, the Pyongyang Department Store No. 1 and the Mansudae Assembly Hall sprang up one after another as monumental edifices of the 1980s, followed by the granite paving of the floor of Kim Il Sung Square and the construction of a modern underground store at the back part of the square under the guidance of Kim Jong Il.

Thus, the central part of the capital city had taken on a fresh appearance by the latter half of the 1980s.

Kim Jong Il also paid attention to laying out the city as a whole, taking measures for the building of apartment blocks in modern style and monumental edifices in all parts of the city.

To this end, he arranged the construction of modern Changgwang Street in the place of outdated Ryunhwanson Street, making it a turning point for a

leap forward and innovation in the construction of the capital. Motivated by his intention to transform Ryunhwanson Street, he went out to the street in question on a cold night in December 1978, and made a round of each and every dark narrow alley through single- and two-storey houses.

Kim Jong Il assigned relevant officials to the task of drawing up daring and ambitious designs and plans for a new form and content for apartment blocks and street formation, and gave them detailed advice on several occasions.

In late October 1979 he went over a draft model of new Ryunhwanson Street and discussed with the officials concerned their conventional concept of street formation, stereo-typed and old fashioned, urging them to take a new approach to their assignment. He advised them to plan a sparse arrangement on green land of slender and high-rise apartments of different shapes and heights.

The second model that was made soon afterwards also failed to satisfy him. He pointed out that low buildings should be replaced with 25- or 30-storey versions. He added that the construction of dwelling houses on Ryunhwanson Street was a gigantic project geared to adding grandeur and elegance to the capital city, a worthwhile undertaking to set a new example in form, content and quality of urban construction, and that it should mark a turning point in Korea's construction on the threshold of the 1980s. About a month later, while studying the third model, he said that the space between apartment blocks seemed to be too narrow, suggesting that the structural body of each building be trimmed and the buildings arranged in three-dimensional harmony by making the most of available space and that high-rise apartments be laid out in such a way as to offer broad vistas between them.

His valuable advice helped bring about a change in street formation, smashing the conventional practice and method of arranging buildings straight along the architectural line, like unfolding screens on a wall.

Not only did he pay attention to street formation, he concerned himself with the layout of the interior of the buildings, offering it as his opinion that each flat should be 150 square metres wide and furnished with a full set of deluxe furniture and articles for cultural use, and that the kitchen be fitted with excellent cooking utensils and ventilation devices.



**Kim Jong Il inspecting a construction model in Pyongyang (March 30, 1985)**

Hard-pressed as he was for time for preparing the Sixth Party Congress, he came to the site once in a while, inspecting the apartments under construction.

The first stage of the Ryunhwanson project came to a close after 10 months of ground-breaking, high-rise apartment blocks scintillating in different shapes.

In early October of the same year Kim Jong Il inspected the site and viewed from a flat of a 30-storey building the layout of the new street. He praised the scene and renamed the street **Changgwang Street**.

As a follow-up to the construction of Changgwang Street, he arranged an extensive campaign for building more modern streets.

Kim Jong Il ordered that each flat should have more than three living rooms and be constructed at the highest level of lasting quality, and that the streets should be laid with an adequate combination of educational and cultural facilities, public service networks, parks and pleasure grounds for the best convenience of the people.

Thus, Munsu Street, as large as a town, was built on the wide stretch of the Munsu Plain across the Taedong River, followed by University Street, Changgwang Street (second stage), An Sang ThaeK Street and Chollima Street (second stage). Furthermore, outdated residential quarters in central, eastern and western Pyongyang, including the then Podunamu Street and Youth Street, were renovated to meet modern aesthetic tastes. Twenty-, thirty- and forty-storey apartment blocks sprouted across the city. Pyongyang turned itself into a glamorous city with the construction of such monumental edifices as the Changgwang Health Complex, Ice Rink, Chongryu Restaurant, Okryu Restaurant (extension), Koryo Hotel and Ponghwa Art Theatre, and also of such modern and cultural facilities as the Pyongyang Subway, Mangyongdae Fun Fair and Swimming Pool, Taesongsan Pleasure Ground and Kaeson Youth Park.

This vigorous campaign culminated in the building of Kwangbok Street amid the campaign to create the “speed of the ’80s”.

On July 3, 1984, Kim Jong Il had a talk with senior officials of Pyongyang over the formation of Kwangbok Street to be built in the Mangyongdae area.

Afterwards on several occasions he discussed the street formation plan and gave his opinions on all aspects: The roadway should be 100 metres

wide, with flyovers at optimum locations, and the driveways, sidewalks and the green land should be expanded; both sides of the avenue should be laid with a sequence of large apartment buildings in harmony with the topographical conditions, and the shapes of the apartments should be diverse and suited to modern aesthetic tastes—spiral, zigzag, cylindrical and polygonal; buildings should be arranged in a three-dimensional way rather than in a wall-like fashion; moreover, each flat should be furnished with high-quality kitchen utensils and a complete set of furniture.

On the basis of his aesthetic idea on architecture, the designers worked out an excellent plan for the formation of Kwangbok Street as a new model for modern streets.

January 1986 saw the ground-breaking for the construction of Kwangbok Street, which made huge strides from the outset under Kim Jong Il's guidance.

Kim Jong Il considered that giving priority to road building was one of the principles to be observed in construction, and made sure that the vast majority of construction workers and volunteers were concentrated on the completion of the building of the 100-metre-wide roadway in a short span of time.

He then arranged that flyover building followed closely behind. At the same time he saw to it that all the processes, including the construction of apartment buildings, waterworks, and heat-supply networks, as well as the surrounding layout and tree-planting projects proceeded simultaneously in a three-dimensional manner.

He inspected the construction site several times, instructing that the buildings should be arranged in harmony with the avenue, that more apartments be constructed to fill up the empty space caused by the loose arrangement of building structures along the avenue, and that the number of storeys of some apartments be increased and their surfaces improved to enhance the sense of magnificence of the street.

Kim Jong Il set a high standard for furnishing the interior of the buildings. He said that some of the flats should have four or five rooms, and those for scientists and technicians must have a study and a large drawing room and balcony each, and that deluxe houses on the hillside should have two storeys for each household and be of a distinctive type.

Under his personal guidance, there were constructed in the Mangyongdae area two modern streets—the first was Kwangbok Street, some six km long, composed of apartments accommodating tens of thousands of households, such monumental edifices as the Mangyongdae Schoolchildren’s Palace, Pyongyang Circus and Youth Hotel, and public service networks; the second was Chongchun Street, otherwise called a “sports village”. In the same period of their construction, the May Day Stadium, East Pyongyang Grand Theatre, Central Youth Hall and other projects scheduled for the 13<sup>th</sup> World Festival of Youth and Students were completed.

Consequently, Pyongyang took on a fresh appearance along with the enrichment of the grand garden of Juche-oriented architecture. On December 6, 1989, Kim Jong Il viewed about 100 photos of monumental edifices and modern streets in Pyongyang, recalling with deep emotion the days that worked out the transformation of the capital city.



## CHAPTER 23

# HOLDING HIGHER THE BANNER OF JUCHE-ORIENTED SOCIALISM

### 1. BUILDING THE WORKERS' PARTY OF KOREA INTO THE JUCHE-ORIENTED REVOLUTIONARY PARTY

In the middle of the 1980s, the socialist cause was faced with the historic task of smashing the anti-socialist scheme of the imperialists and continuing to advance along its own way.

Kim Jong Il exerted great efforts to strengthen and develop the Workers' Party of Korea into a revolutionary party which would invariably carry on with its onward movement under the unfurled banner of Juche in any complicated situation.

Developing the WPK into a Juche-oriented revolutionary party was the basic direction of Kim Jong Il's consistent policy on Party building.

In his work, *The Workers' Party of Korea Is a Juche-Type Revolutionary Party Which Inherited the Glorious Tradition of the DIU*, published on October 17, 1982, the 56<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the founding of the DIU (Down-with-Imperialism Union), Kim Jong Il fully clarified the character and specific features of the WPK as a Juche-oriented revolutionary party and the matters of principle with regard to its further development into the Juche-oriented revolutionary party.

In a speech to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee on January 3, 1986, Kim Jong Il set forth the tasks for directing primary attention to building up the ranks of cadres to strengthen the Party and consolidate the revolutionary ranks, putting on the right track the work of expanding the Party's enrollment to ensure the purity of the Party ranks and

consistently improve their composition, and further strengthening the fighting efficiency of the Party.

In strengthening the Party and the revolutionary ranks, he said, primary consideration must always be given to achieving the Party's unity and cohesion, and the banner of unity must be held aloft and defended to the last. It is imperative, he went on, to achieve unity and cohesion with the leader in the centre, the oneness of idea and will based on one ideology, the Juche idea, and the integral whole relying on revolutionary comradeship. He stressed: In order to consolidate and develop the Party's unity and cohesion, it is necessary to inherit the Party's tradition of unity and cohesion and thoroughly defend it, and launch a fierce struggle against all manner of anti-Party ideological elements and negative practices causing damage to and degeneration of unity.

In order to constantly preserve the character of the Juche-oriented revolutionary party, Kim Jong Il induced Party members and other working people to firmly arm themselves with the Juche idea, the Party's guiding ideology.

In a talk to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee on July 15, 1986, under the title *On Some Problems of Education in the Juche Idea*, he made clear that education in the Juche idea is an ideological work geared to training Party members and other working people into true revolutionaries of the Juche type by firmly equipping them with the Juche idea, the Party's guiding ideology. He taught that education in loyalty and all other forms of ideological education must be conducted in combination with the basic principles of the Juche idea.

Noting that the most important focus of education in the Juche idea is to make Party members and other working people have a correct understanding of the motive force of the revolution and thoroughly establish a revolutionary outlook regarding the leader, he said:

**“For the popular masses to be an independent subject of the revolution, they must be united into one organization with one ideology under the guidance of the Party and the leader. Only the masses, who are united in this way, can shape their destiny independently and creatively. The subject of the revolution means the integrated whole of the leader, the Party and the masses.”**

He clarified in detail the tasks and ways for establishing a correct viewpoint on the motive force of the revolution and further strengthening the unity of the leader, the Party and the people, and for conducting education in the Juche idea more deeply and extensively to bring the advantages of the socialist system home to Party members and the working people, as a whole.

Kim Jong Il launched a Partywide campaign to establish a revolutionary climate of the Party, in order to develop the Party into the Juche-oriented revolutionary party for ever.

The Party climate of the WPK is based on the principles of the Juche idea, especially on the principle regarding the driving force of revolution. It is the habits of Party life, the habits of Party work with which its members devote their all for the leader, the Party and the people, regarding loyalty to the leader as their life and soul. That is why the climate of the WPK is Juche-oriented and revolutionary.

Kim Jong Il mapped out a plan for launching a dynamic Partywide ideological campaign to create the required Party climate. In September 1987 he called a meeting of the senior officials of the Party Central Committee. He stressed that Party organizations and officials should make great efforts for establishing the Party climate with a correct understanding of it. On October 21 the same year, he again defined the principle and standard for appreciation of one's outlook of the Party organization.

In his speech *Let Us Make a Revolutionary Climate Prevail throughout the Party*, delivered at the meeting of the senior officials of the Party Central Committee on January 10, 1988, Kim Jong Il fully explained the tasks for bringing onto a new, higher stage the vigorous struggle geared to the establishment of the revolutionary climate of the Party as required by the situation in which the historic cause of building the foundation of the Party had been accomplished and the struggle to model the whole Party on the Juche idea had been developed in depth.

He said that the most important task for establishing the Party climate is to develop Party spirit among the members so that they follow the leader faithfully and devote their all to accomplishing the revolutionary cause of Juche. He emphasized as follows:

**“The habit of considering loyalty to the leader as one’s life and soul and devoting one’s all to the accomplishment of the revolutionary cause of Juche in single-hearted unity centring on the leader is the nucleus and content of our Party climate.”**

He went on to say that the Party’s strenuous efforts for establishing a Party climate was aimed at improving the sense of loyalty to the leader, and stressed that the struggle to create a Party climate must give top priority to cultivating loyalty to the leader, gearing all undertakings towards it.

Another important task to be tackled in thoroughly creating a revolutionary climate within the Party is, he defined, that Party members should have a better appreciation of the organization, and strengthen Party life. It can be said that the Party organization system is the lifeline that allows Party members to maintain their socio-political integrity sharing their destinies with the leader, as well as the leader’s guidance line, which allows them to faithfully follow the leader’s ideas and guidance; considering the appreciation of the Party organization not only to be the view of and attitude towards an organization, but to be the view of and attitude towards the leader is a Juche-based concept; in this regard, having a better appreciation of the Party organization is essential in creating a Party climate. We can say that a Party climate is an immediate appreciation of the Party organization, and vice versa.

Besides, Kim Jong Il clarified in detail the tasks for inculcating the revolutionary habit of carrying out the Party lines and policies unconditionally, cultivating the popular habit with which the officials go deep among the masses and find solutions to all problems by relying on their strength, and establishing revolutionary discipline within the Party.

He organized a sweeping ideological campaign for creating a revolutionary climate within the Party, and led it to success without any deviations.

In accordance with his policy, an all-Party discussion for creating a sound Party climate among Party members was conducted from early spring in 1988.

At a meeting of the Secretariat of the Party Central Committee held in mid-May 1988, Kim Jong Il emphasized that there should be no deviations of fostering abuse of Party authority and bureaucratism on the excuse that

the Party climate should be established. Later, he gave concrete instructions on properly conducting the discussion.

Thus, lively discussions took place among officials and Party members with the main stress laid on further enhancing loyalty to Kim Il Sung and the Party and rooting out abuse of Party authority and bureaucratism. In particular, democracy was given full play and criticism from the grassroots intensified.

Through the dynamic all-Party ideological campaign for the creation of the Party climate, which proceeded successfully under the deep concern of Kim Jong Il, loyalty to Kim Il Sung and the Party was further enhanced. As a result, the spirit of loyalty, the spirit of single-hearted unity and the spirit of carrying out tasks at the cost of one's life, which constitute the nucleus of the Party climate peculiar to the revolutionary party of the Juche type, came to prevail in the Party.

In his talks to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee and chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees on June 9 and 12, 1989, Kim Jong Il gave earnest instructions on strengthening the Party and further enhancing its leadership role.

Stressing the need to exert great efforts into the inner-Party work, he pointed out the tasks for improving and strengthening the Party organizational work, the core of the inner-Party work, and instructed them to intensify the Party ideological work to meet the demands of the prevailing situation.

Under the leadership of Kim Jong Il, the WPK registered its in-depth development in the 1980s into the Juche-oriented revolutionary party, firmly maintaining its revolutionary character, and advanced vigorously holding aloft as ever the banner of Juche-oriented socialism.

## 2. THE METHOD OF ECONOMIC MANAGEMENT BASED ON COLLECTIVISM

Kim Jong Il turned his profound attention to ceaselessly improving and consummating a new industrial management system and method in order to

bring the advantage of the Juche-oriented method of economic management into fuller play.

The industrial management system and method must continually be improved and rounded off in keeping with the requirements of the Party policy and of the laws of socialist economy. Only then, would it be possible to give full play to the advantage of the socialist economic system and promote economic construction more vigorously by stimulating a sense of revolutionary activeness among the producer masses.

In order to maintain the collectivist principle in the management of the industrial sector Kim Jong Il made great efforts to rationally organize an industrial complex, or integrated enterprise, which embodied the requirements of the Tae'an work system and make it effective.

An industrial complex is a large-scale combined production unit composed of enterprises which are closely interlinked either regionally or through production processes. It is a new form of enterprise reflecting most correctly the characteristics of socialist society and the law-governed character of economic development in Korea. A unit of planning, production, and execution, it can put its production on a regular basis and contribute to quickly developing the overall economic activities of the country, if only it makes effective use of all of its available conditions favourable for its independent management.

True to Kim Il Sung's intention of organizing a new complex for rational management and operation of the national economy as suited to the practical requirements for the economic development of Korea, Kim Jong Il gave specific guidance to working out a most scientific and rational plan for the formation of integrated enterprises and steadily improving their management and operation.

Setting up the integrated enterprises in various sectors of the national economy became the order of the day, and its preparations proceeded in full swing. At this juncture there appeared among some economic officials a view of regarding the Tae'an work system and the integrated enterprise system as being different from each other. Especially, concerning the matter of the integrated enterprises making contracts with other enterprises on the supply of materials, some people considered that something different

might take place in the context of socialist economic management.

One October day in 1985, Kim Jong Il reasoned with the senior officials of the Party Central Committee about the matter in this way: Organizing new integrated enterprises does not mean going over to a system of one-man management by the manager or a manager-responsibility system as is the case with other countries, nor negating the Taean work system; it is geared to implementing the Taean work system more creditably. True, the arrangement of the integrated enterprises will cause a slight change in the materials supply system. However, the intrinsic content of the Taean work system will not change because the essence of the system is not the materials supply system; the core of the Taean work system created by Kim Il Sung is to ensure the collective leadership of the Party committee concerned. As the collective leadership of the Party committee is firmly ensured even in the integrated enterprises under arrangement, the Taean work system will not change in nature. It is an immutable principle of the revolution that the higher the stage socialist construction enters and the more the economy grows in scope, the further the Party's leadership over economic construction should become. Therefore, all things taken together, we must fully ensure the Party's leadership over economic affairs no matter what.

Afterwards he saw that strong Party organizations were arranged for the integrated enterprises so that the collective leadership of the relevant Party committees was firmly guaranteed as required by the Taean work system and that competent officials who were unfailingly loyal to the Party and the leader and conversant with technical know-how were selected to take up the senior posts of the enterprises in keeping with the demands of the era of science and technology.

Many integrated enterprises of various forms were newly organized in accordance with the decision of the Political Bureau of the Party Central Committee in November 1985, followed by appointment of loyal and competent officials as senior officials of the enterprises.

Kim Jong Il paid great attention to enhancing the role of the senior officials of the newly-formed integrated enterprises.

In a speech delivered to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee on January 3, 1986, he commented that Party secretaries,



**Kim Jong Il presiding  
at a meeting of the  
Secretariat of the WPK  
Central Committee  
(May 22, 1985)**



managers and chief engineers are accountable to the Party politically, administratively and technologically for the work of their respective enterprises. He said:

**“Whether the complex is managed and run as it should be depends largely on the role of the Party secretary, manager and chief engineer concerned. Bearing deeply in mind their duty assumed before the Party and the revolution, they must form a trinity and conduct industrial management efficiently.”**

Only when the Party secretary, manager and chief engineer form a trinity, can they take the same opinion and attitude toward all problems arising in the management and operation of their integrated enterprise, ensure unity in dealing with them, and find prompt solutions to the problems at hand through consultation, without any of them acting subjectively or bureaucratically, thus ensuring better efficiency in production and management. The trinity form was an effective means of realizing substantial collective guidance of the Party committee over industrial management and bringing Party work and administrative and economic work into organic combination.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that the Taean Heavy Machine Complex was made a model unit in the application of the Juche-oriented method of economic management, and its experience popularized.

Under his meticulous guidance, a model of application of the Juche-oriented method of economic management was created in the Taean Heavy Machine Complex, where a short course and a meeting for the presentation of work experience were held for Party secretaries of the complexes throughout the country.

The work experience of the Party secretary of the Taean Heavy Machine Complex presented at the short course showed that it was important for Party secretaries to pay regard to the opinions of administrative officials, give them prominence and open-mindedly discuss with the manager and chief engineer all problems arising out of industrial management and operations, and that when their opinions differed from each other, they could reach a consensus if they all studied the actual situation together for a way out, mixing with the producer masses.

In the course of popularizing this experience, great progress was made in the work of intensifying the collective guidance of the Party committee and ensuring the trinity system in each of the integrated enterprises.

On June 21, 1989, Kim Jong Il visited the University of National Economics, the highest institution for the training of administrative and economic officials, the backbone cadres responsible for the management of the national economy. He said that lectures on the Taean work system should focus on bringing home to the students the point that all management activities of factories and enterprises must be conducted under the collective guidance of the Party committee.

In this way, all leading economic officials became firmly equipped with the Juche-oriented theory and method of economic management, and came to know more deeply the harmfulness of the revisionist, reformist theory and method of economic management. As a result, the Taean work system was staunchly defended and put into effect in a thoroughgoing way.

Consequently, the industrial management could be conducted efficiently under the collective leadership of the Party committee, and the Party work combined with administrative and economic work in an organic way. This was an important factor that could powerfully accelerate socialist economic construction, and bring the advantage and the invincible vitality of the socialist economic system into fullest play.

Kim Jong Il firmly adhered to the principle of following the way indicated in Kim Il Sung's work *Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country* in the management and operation of the socialist rural economy.

In his theses Kim Il Sung proposed doing away with backwardness in the standard of management and operation of agriculture vis-a-vis industry as an important means for the solution of the socialist rural question, and set forth the task of steadily bringing the method of managing and running the socialist cooperative economy close to that of the industry, as an all-people ownership.

The difference in the standard of management and operation between industry and agriculture is mainly attributable to the ideological and cultural backwardness of peasants compared with the working class and to the technological backwardness of agriculture as against industry.

For this reason, Kim Jong Il ensured that the three revolutions—ideological, technological and cultural—were promoted more powerfully in the rural areas in such a direction that the vitality of the original agricultural guidance system Kim Il Sung had already set up in the agricultural sector was displayed to the full.

He strove to step up industrial guidance to agriculture.

He paid profound attention to correctly executing the sub-workteam management system which thoroughly embodied the collectivist principle. In his talks with senior officials of the Party Central Committee on March 26, 1986, he stressed the importance of correctly executing the sub-workteam management system in the agricultural sector, so that its advantage was brought into full play. In October the following year he arranged an annual intensive short course in the farmers' slack season, aimed at improving the level of sub-workteam leaders and other leading officials of the primary units of cooperative farms.

The firm adherence to the collectivist principle in the management and operation of the rural economy gave rise to a great boost in agricultural production.

Thanks to Kim Jong Il's endeavour to staunchly defend and carry out the Juche-oriented method of socialist economic management without the slightest vacillation in any adversity caused by revisionism and reformism, the method of socialist economic management demonstrated its true advantage to the full.

### 3. FOR THE IMPROVEMENT OF THE PEOPLE'S LIVING STANDARD

Regarding the improvement of the living standard of the people as the supreme principle of Party activity, Kim Jong Il channelled great efforts into further enhancing the standard of the people's living.

On February 16, 1984, his 42<sup>nd</sup> birthday, he held a consultative meeting with senior officials of the Party Central Committee and made a speech, titled, *On Further Improving the Standard of Living of the People*.

Kim Jong Il, out of his warm love and care for the people for whom he devoted even his birthday, expressed his firm determination to put the people's living standard on a higher stage and then clarified for a good while all the tasks and ways for raising good crops, effecting a revolution in light industry and improving the work of public services.

Afterwards, he directed his main efforts to finding a better solution to the problems of food, clothing and housing for the people.

As part of his efforts for a smooth solution to the food problem of the people by drastically increasing grain production, Kim Jong Il ensured that investment in agriculture was decisively increased to produce and supply to rural areas fertilizers, various kinds of efficient machines, agricultural chemicals, plastic sheets and other farming materials; he also arranged a general mobilization of the entire Party, the whole country, and all the people for assistance to the rural areas in such busy farming seasons as rice-transplanting and harvesting. Thus, a good harvest was registered every year, despite unfavourable natural and climatic conditions.

In order to improve the people's diet, he saw to it that large numbers of fish were caught by building modern and all-purpose fishing vessels and widely introducing a scientific method of fishing, and that a rapid increase was made in the production of seafood by vigorously conducting marine culture on an all-Party and all-people basis.

In particular, for a satisfactory solution to the problem of the people's living standard at a high level, Kim Jong Il exerted great efforts to effect a revolution in light industry.

After inspecting a light industrial goods exhibition, together with the senior officials of the Party Central Committee, on March 22, 1985, he called a consultative meeting and stressed the need to promote a vigorous revolution in light industry, instructing that a feasible long-term plan for this purpose should be mapped out and fulfilled stage by stage.

For a successful revolution in light industry, he called for a powerful mass movement for production of consumer goods.

The items of consumer goods were too many and the demand for them was too various for the existing light-industry factories to turn them out or fully meet the demand in a short time. Accordingly, housewives' workteams

and sideline workteams were formed throughout the country, with the result that various kinds of consumer goods came to be produced.

Without delay, he arranged an exhibition of light industrial goods in Pyongyang, and inspected it on August 3, 1984. On display at the exhibition were various goods made with by-products and oddments by consumer-goods workshops at factories and enterprises, housewives' production cooperatives, housewives' workteams, producer teams at public-service establishments in the commercial sector and housewives' public-service teams.

Looking round the exhibition for a long time, he expressed his great satisfaction and put forward a policy of conducting a powerful movement for producing consumer goods on a mass scale, making effective use of the experience gained in the production of the goods on display.

Accordingly, a dynamic "August 3 consumer goods" production campaign for producing a greater number of quality consumer goods was launched on a nationwide scale. The variety and volume of consumer goods produced in this way throughout the country was great, indeed.

Kim Jong Il also directed his concern to improving the work of public services.

The improvement of public services is an undertaking to meet the ever-growing people's material and cultural needs more sufficiently through efficient management of goods supply, public catering services and welfare services.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that new and modern public service centres were built in larger numbers in Pyongyang and other major cities, and their operation was put on a regular basis. He ensured that the organization and method of public services were constantly improved to meet the ever-growing people's demand.

On April 15, 1986, he went round various places of Pyongyang where the working people were enjoying the holiday. Watching people sitting in groups by the Taedong River and barbecuing meat he thought a meat-broiling restaurant should be built in a quiet place, and had it built in Kyonghung Street. Thus a modern service centre was inaugurated in February 1988.

And the Okryu Restaurant was enlarged, and comprehensive public

catering service facilities, such as Changgwang Restaurant Street, and the Hyangmanru Restaurant and the Chongchun Restaurant on Kwangbok Street, were built on a grand scale.

In order to provide the Korean people with better houses, he mapped out a bold and ambitious plan for effecting a revolution in the building of houses, and ensured the building of modern and large-scale building-materials production centres.

He saw to it that the Sangwon Cement Complex was built as a model environmentally friendly factory of modern industry, and mapped out a plan for setting up modern bases for the production of silicate bricks as soon as possible.

On June 21, 1984, Kim Jong Il inspected samples of silicate bricks. The surface of the silicate bricks is so even and neat that a house built with it does not need outside plastering or whitewashing; all that is to be done is to make excellent execution of the joint between the bricks in the course of building. If iron oxide is adequately mixed when making silicate bricks, colourful bricks can be produced to keep the harmony of colour of the buildings. Silicate bricks have a high degree of hardness, making it possible to build high-storeyed houses without using steel reinforcing bars. As the process of their production is simple and they are made with sand and limestone which are abundant in the country, their materials are inexhaustible and their production is economical. Explaining one by one the advantages of silicate bricks, he set the task of building large-scale silicate brick factories.

Later, he saw to it that their annual production capacity which had been calculated at 100 million pieces a year was increased ten times. When the relevant officials could not fix the sites of the factories, he recommended the Anju, Pihyon and Hamhung areas as sites, and fixed the scale and capacity of each factory. In addition, he ensured that a powerful guidance team and construction forces were formed, and that the problems arising in the construction of the silicate brick factories were solved on a preferential basis under the direct control of the relevant Party organizations.

As a result, in December 1986, silicate brick factories with a total annual production capacity of 1,000 million bricks were built and commissioned in a matter of two years.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that the work of building houses with silicate bricks was conducted in a far-sighted way.

On May 13, 1986, when the silicate brick factories were almost at their completion, Kim Jong Il visited the People's Palace of Culture and examined in detail the blueprint for the construction of silicate brick houses. Saying that houses to be built with silicate bricks were nice to see, he instructed that silicate brick houses should be built in several places in Pyongyang on an experimental basis and a model lecture organized.

Later he called the relevant official on several occasions and gave instructions on building exemplary houses and holding model lectures on an all-Party basis, and solved all problems therefrom.

Constructors built various forms of silicate brick houses in an experimental way in Hwasong-dong in Ryongsong District, Anhak-dong in Taesong District and Kangan-dong in Songyo District, in Pyongyang, followed by the arrangement of all-Party model lectures. In this way a fresh turn was effected in the building of houses in towns and rural areas.

Along with this, Kim Jong Il also ensured the building of many modern building-materials production bases, such as the Mangyongdae Aeguk Aluminum Sash Factory and the Pyongyang Slag Foam Block Factory. In addition to the large-scale construction of houses in Pyongyang, he arranged the building of a large number of silicate brick houses in local cities, including South Sinuiju, and rural communities. Thus, the ever-growing people's demand for dwelling houses was satisfied more fully and at a higher level.

Kim Jong Il paid great attention to establishing a sound atmosphere of cultural and emotional life throughout the country.

In his talk to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee, under the title, *On Making Cultural and Emotional Life Prevail throughout the Society*, on January 5, 1989, Kim Jong Il said that cultural and emotional life is a sphere of social life that makes people live a cheerful, beautiful and elevated life with great cultural attainments and that creating an atmosphere of the cultural and emotional life throughout the society and developing it to the full are the intrinsic requirements of a socialist society serving the masses.

In order for the working people to enjoy cultural and emotional life to

their hearts' content, he saw to it that modern theatres, cinemas and stadiums were set up and nice parks and recreation grounds built in places of scenic beauty, and also ensured that various kinds of sports and amusement equipment were produced and supplied in large numbers. Furthermore, he took positive measures for widely encouraging folk games and the colourful celebration of traditional national holidays.

#### 4. FOR A CONTINUOUS UPSWING IN SOCIALIST CONSTRUCTION

Bringing about a continued upswing in socialist construction was an important task for strengthening the country's economic power and improving the people's standard of living, and, at the same time, a serious political problem of defending the banner of socialism to the last against the anti-socialist offensive of the imperialists.

Kim Jong Il commanded the struggle for socialist construction geared to demonstrating the vitality of socialism, the embodiment of the Juche idea.

He initiated a 200-day campaign for making a breakthrough in the fulfilment of the Third Seven-Year Plan on the occasion of the 40<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the founding of the DPRK.

On December 15, 1987, when the first year of the struggle for carrying out the Third Seven-Year Plan was drawing successfully to an end, Kim Jong Il proposed launching a 200-day campaign till the 40<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the founding of the DPRK the following year, and clarified its period, objective and tasks.

He said that the objective of the 200-day campaign was to effect a revolutionary upswing on all fronts of socialist construction so as to make a breakthrough in the fulfilment of the Third Seven-Year Plan and celebrate the 40<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the founding of the DPRK as a grand festival, instructing that the campaign should be launched from February 21, 1988.

Defining capital construction as a major target of the 200-day campaign, he stressed the need to concentrate all efforts on finishing major construction projects, such as power stations, coal mines, metallurgical



industry bases, bases for large-scale chemical industry and production centres for light metals which were of great significance in capturing major heights of the Third Seven-Year Plan and strengthening the power of the independent socialist national economy.

Kim Jong Il advanced the tasks for putting production on a normal footing in all factories and enterprises for fulfilment without fail of their State and export plans by day, by month, by quarter and on all indices, while concentrating efforts on capital construction, solving the transport problem, making a fresh turn in agricultural production, and rapidly developing science and technology.

For the successful implementation of the campaign, he arranged a regular command system by ensuring that the military system was applied in the arrangement of the headquarters of the 200-day campaign in the capital and provinces for the smooth operation of the existing administrative structure and that factories and enterprises were directed by managers and Party committees concerned.

And he made sure that aggressive organizational and political work was conducted to inspire the whole Party and the entire people to the struggle for victory in the 200-day campaign.

The Political Bureau of the Party Central Committee, at its session on February 20, 1988, passed a decision on organizing the 200-day campaign, published slogans for the purpose and addressed a letter from the Party Central Committee to all Party members on the anniversary of the founding of the DPRK. Accordingly, an all-Party discussion and mass rallies in Pyongyang and the provinces for carrying out the letter and slogans of the Party Central Committee took place at a high political and ideological level.

In hearty response to the letter and slogans of the Party Central Committee, the atmosphere of the whole country was charged with enthusiasm for the 200-day campaign geared to greeting the 40<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the DPRK as a grand political festival.

Kim Jong Il regarded the strengthening of the Party's leadership over economic construction as an important means for victory in the 200-day campaign, and took appropriate measures for it.

In order to ensure the successful implementation of the 200-day

campaign, Kim Jong Il made sure, on March 18, 1988, that assistance teams of Party officials were formed and dispatched to the units of the campaign. He taught in detail about the purpose of their dispatch, the naming of the teams, volume of forces to be mobilized and their destinations, as well as the rule of work and life of the team members.

Some days later, examining the plan on their formation, he instructed that the teams should include students of the Party-cadre training centres as well as officials of the Party Central Committee.

Thus, powerful 200-day campaign assistance teams were formed with officials of the Party Central Committee and of the provincial, city and county Party committees and students of the Party-cadre training centres.

As instructed by Kim Jong Il, the 200-day campaign assistance teams of Party officials dispatched to various sectors of the national economy settled in factory hostels, and conducted in an original and substantial way political work among the workers, sharing meals with them, educating them and rallying them closely behind the Party, thus rousing them to the 200-day campaign.

In order to further enhance a sense of responsibility and role among the team members for the purpose of keeping up the elevated atmosphere of the 200-day campaign, Kim Jong Il called, on June 2, 1988, a meeting of the Secretariat of the Party Central Committee, where he comprehensively analyzed and reviewed the success achieved during the first 100 days of the 200-day campaign. On the basis of this, he went on to instruct that all officials should brave the difficulties encountered in the struggle of the second 100 days by displaying a high degree of revolutionary spirit.

The members of the assistance teams of Party officials stimulated Party members and other working people at all sites of the 200-day campaign to further efforts for victory in the 200-day campaign, holding higher the banner of socialism, full of confidence and optimism.

During the 200-day campaign, Kim Jong Il visited various sectors and units, such as the Steel Works No. 8, factories and construction sites in Kanggye and Pyongyang, and the construction sites on Kwangbok Street, construction companies in Sinuiju, the Kyongsong Ceramics Factory of the Kyongsong Ceramics Corporation, the Musan Mining Complex, the

Sangwon Cement Complex and the Science Exhibition of the Academy of Sciences, and guided the campaign on the spot solving knotty problems.

On July 5, 1988, while giving on-the-spot guidance to various sectors of the national economy in North Hamgyong Province, he came across the fact that the rail transport through the Tumangang Railway Station was strained. He ensured that a composite line was laid between Tumangang and Chongjin and all problems arising in its construction and operation were solved. While giving guidance to the Musan Mining Complex on August 19, he grasped in detail the process of its ore production and gave the task for removing overburden, the most knotty problem, by conveyor belt, and adopted all measures needed for it.

During the 200-day campaign, serious problems were solved and a fresh upswing was effected in all places honoured with on-the-spot guidance by Kim Jong Il.

During the period, industrial production increased by 22 per cent over the same period of previous year and the amount of assembling in capital construction was up by 1.8 times over the previous year—a record since the founding of the DPRK. Thus, a bright vista was opened for the successful implementation of the Third Seven-Year Plan.

Kim Jong Il proposed holding the National Meeting of Heroes when the 200-day campaign was at its height. He said in the following vein: **“Let us all live and struggle like heroes!”**—this is the Party’s requirement at the moment and the slogan that we should uphold. Party members and all other working people must be encouraged to advance under this militant slogan so that the whole of society can be imbued with a spirit with which all of them make continued innovation and advance by displaying boundless devotion and an indomitable fighting spirit, wiping out all indolent, easygoing attitudes, conservatism and lethargy, and fight courageously, full of confidence and optimism, sweeping away cowardice and defeatism.

On September 2, 1988, a few days before the 40<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the DPRK, the National Meeting of Heroes was opened in Pyongyang, in the presence of Kim Il Sung and Kim Jong Il amidst great expectations and concern of the Korean people.

The National Meeting of Heroes adopted an appeal to the entire people

calling for another 200-day campaign, by reflecting the firm determination and unanimous will of the participants.

In order to ensure that all the Party members and other working people rose actively in a new 200-day campaign in response to the appeal, Kim Jong Il saw to it that Party organizations at all levels conducted organizational and political work more effectively than ever before.

As a result, an intensive information and promotion campaign was launched and rallies were held one after another at major factories, enterprises and cooperative farms in response to the appeal. Party organizations at all levels reviewed the results of the first 200-day campaign, and held discussions at a high political and ideological level for the successful implementation of the new 200-day campaign.

In keeping with the high-voltage atmosphere of the new 200-day campaign Kim Jong Il made sure that all officials worked and lived in a strenuous and militant way with a high sense of revolutionary spirit, organizing and directing the campaign in a responsible way by giving full play to the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and fortitude. At the same time he intensified the ideological campaign by means of various forms and methods such as meetings for emulation of leading characters in art and literary works, so that officials, Party members and other working people could live and work with a clear revolutionary conscience. In addition, he saw to it that forces were concentrated on carrying out the main tasks of the 200-day campaign—a fresh turn in regular production, in the completion of major projects, in grain production and in the production of consumer goods.

The Party members and other working people displayed their loyalty to the Party and the leader more fully than ever before, and the whole society came to overflow with heroic fighting spirit. As a result, the fresh 200-day campaign launched with elevated political zeal ended in a brilliant victory.

## CHAPTER 24

# THE EFFLORESCENCE AND DEVELOPMENT OF SOCIALIST CULTURE

### 1. FOR CARRYING OUT THE THESES ON SOCIALIST EDUCATION

Kim Jong Il regards education as a fundamental problem deciding the fate of the country and the future destiny of the nation and has always directed particular attention to the development of educational work. In order to bring about a new turn in the work of education, he pushed ahead with the work of carrying out the theses on socialist education.

The *Theses on Socialist Education*, published by President Kim Il Sung at the 14<sup>th</sup> Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Party Central Committee in September 1977, is an educational programme for training people into talented people with independence and creativity and an encyclopedia of socialist education which illumines the way education should follow. Only when a fresh turn was made in educational work by carrying out the educational theses, would it be possible to bring up new generations to be true Juche-type revolutionaries and accelerate the intellectualization of the whole of society.

He said that in order to carry out the theses on socialist education it was imperative to effect an ideological switchover and led all officials of the Party and power organs to fulfil their responsibility and role in the struggle to implement the theses, with a correct attitude and approach to educational work while getting rid of the practice of regarding the work as a work of only a few officials in the educational sector or approaching it in an administrative and business-like way.

While waging a vigorous and intensive information campaign on and

education in the *Theses on Socialist Education*, he saw to it that a mass rally devoted to reception of the theses was organized at a high political and ideological level and the whole country was pervaded by an atmosphere for carrying it out. From October 1977, each provincial, city and county Party committee held an enlarged plenary meeting of officials of the Party and power organs, economic and cultural institutions and educational officials, a meeting devoted to implementation of the theses, and analyzed and reviewed in a thoroughgoing way the past shortcomings revealed in educational work. The enlarged meetings marked an important occasion in establishing a correct attitude and viewpoint of educational work among officials.

Kim Jong Il proposed holding the National Conference of Educational Workers.

Initially officials concerned were preparing the meeting as a small-scale meeting of activists of the educational workers, involving participation of only a few thousands.

Grasping the situation, he instructed that the meeting should be organized as large as the agricultural conference, saying that a large number of officials at all levels of schools in cities and counties should participate in the meeting and listen to the teachings of the President, so as to bring about a turn in educational work. He taught that the meeting should be named the National Conference of Educational Workers and held on a large scale at the Pyongyang Indoor Stadium, involving 15,000 educationists.

Clarifying that the purpose of the meeting was to confirm the greatness and vitality of the theses published by the President and inspire all educational workers and working people to its implementation, he gave specific guidance to the process of working out the report of the meeting as intended by the Party.

The National Conference of Educational Workers was held in a grand style in the presence of President Kim Il Sung from the end of September to the beginning of October 1978 in Pyongyang.

At the meeting, Kim Il Sung made a speech, titled, *Let Us Bring about a Radical Improvement in Education through the Full Implementation of the Theses on Socialist Education*.

Following the conference, Kim Jong Il strove for the implementation of the President's teachings given at the meeting. To this end, he made sure that meetings for reviewing the process of implementation of the theses were held in provinces, cities and counties every year and the work of education was thoroughly conducted as the work of the whole Party, so that all Party organizations and Party officials persistently pushed ahead with the work of implementing the theses on their full responsibilities and teachers at all levels of schools enhanced their sense of responsibility and role still further.

Under the guidance and care of Kim Jong Il, the struggle for implementing the theses on socialist education proceeded vigorously, resulting in firm establishment of the Juche orientation in education, improvement of quality of education and consolidation of the material and technical foundations of education.

On the basis of this success, Kim Jong Il ensured that a revolution was made in education.

In his letter, *On Further Developing Educational Work*, addressed to the National Meeting of Educational Activists on July 22, 1984, Kim Jong Il pointed out as follows:

**“We must bring about a revolution in education to meet the new requirements of the developing revolution, and so improve school education as a whole and raise its quality appreciably so that the new generation will be trained to become useful revolutionary workers, and so that our education will better contribute to the development of science and technology and to socialist economic construction in our country.”**

In his letter, he defined, based on the basic principles of the Juche idea, the essence of socialist education as an undertaking to transform man into a powerful being, and fully elucidated the main content of the educational revolution and the way to carry it out.

In order to bring about a fresh upswing in education through the implementation of the policy of educational revolution, Kim Jong Il directed his primary attention to improving the quality of the universal 11-year compulsory education.

The universal 11-year compulsory education, being a general secondary education, holds an extremely important place in the formation of the world

outlook, intellectual development and development of character among students and in improving the qualitative level of higher education and the ideological and cultural standard of the society as a whole.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that a model school was built in the sector of general education to improve the quality of the 11-year compulsory education, and its example was followed throughout the country.

He had long since elaborated a plan for building an excellent and modern school in the sector of general education and improving education in general through it. In October 1980, he gave the task for building a model school in a fashionable way in Pyongyang. When the design was drawn up, he examined it in person and clarified the direction of construction. He fixed the site of the school in a suitable place by the picturesque Pothong River. Furthermore, he mobilized a strong force of construction, solved the problem of materials and sent a vast amount of funds required for the installation at the best level of educational apparatus and conditions for experiment and practice.

He gave specific guidance and care to the building of the school. When the construction was completed, he named the school **Pyongyang Senior Middle School No. 1** (later changed to Pyongyang Middle School No. 1).

On April 28, 1984, Kim Jong Il visited the Pyongyang Senior Middle School No. 1.

Arriving at the school early in the morning in spite of the rain, Kim Jong Il expressed his satisfaction over the fact that the school had been built well and in a modern way.

Composed of a 10-story main building and an auxiliary building on a wide area, the school consists of classrooms, experimental and practice rooms, an indoor stadium and a full set of facilities for cultural welfare and its articles such as desks, chairs and a variety of equipment for experiment and practice that measure up to the best standards.

He went round the refectory, practice room for girl students, assembly hall, room for machinery practice, indoor stadium and swimming pool. Climbing up and down the stairs of the main building, he inspected scores of laboratories, classrooms and experimental and practice rooms one by one. He instructed that an automatic water apparatus should be installed in





**Kim Jong Il looking round the Pyongyang Senior Middle School No. 1 (February 26, 1985)**

the hand-washing room of the refectory and that sewing machines be replaced with modern ones. He also stressed that a place for automobile practice should be laid out well nearby.

He also looked round one after another a physics laboratory, an electronic machinery laboratory, an electricity laboratory and a chemistry laboratory, instructing that the existing experimental instruments and equipment should be replaced with better ones.

After looking round the school in detail for a long time, he held a consultative meeting of senior officials in the educational sector, where he gave instructions to develop Pyongyang Senior Middle School No. 1 as a model school for developing the educational work of the country as a whole onto a higher stage.

He said that importance should be given to secondary education and great efforts exerted to bring up excellent students, so that they could imbibe general knowledge for secondary education in this period, and that only then could they acquire special knowledge during their university days and write theses for bachelor or doctorate degrees in their twenties.

The Pyongyang Senior Middle School No. 1 was opened on September 1, 1984.

On February 26, 1985, Kim Jong Il visited the Pyongyang Senior Middle School No. 1 again, in company with Kim Il Sung.

Grasping in detail the state of affairs of education and tuition, Kim Jong Il gave instructions on making the maximum use of the favourable educational conditions provided by the Party with utmost care, in order to equip new generations with modern science and technology and bring them up to be able and talented people with strong physical constitutions.

The two rounds of on-the-spot guidance of Kim Jong Il to the Pyongyang Senior Middle School No. 1 were important occasions which marked a breakthrough in the educational revolution and remarkably enhanced the quality of secondary education.

In 1985, local senior middle schools No. 1, modelled on Pyongyang Senior Middle School No. 1 were set up in every provincial seat, as well as in Pyongyang, followed by others in each city and county (district) throughout the country. As a result, a well-organized senior- middle-school-

No. 1-type educational system was established, and a vigorous campaign was launched among all other middle schools of the country to improve their education up to the level of the senior middle schools No. 1.

In order to raise the quality of the universal 11-year compulsory education, Kim Jong Il saw to it that the content and methods of secondary education were improved.

He ensured that the content of secondary education was centred on intensifying political and ideological education, as well as basic science education and education in foreign languages, and that the contents of subjects were so rationally composed as to upgrade art and physical education and basic technical education. He also made sure that heuristic method of teaching was embodied in teaching, education with visual aids and real objects intensified and the method of examination revised in the direction of appraising the actual academic attainments of students, with the main stress on theoretical understanding of what they learned and ability to put it into practice.

In order to improve the scholarly performance of middle school students, Kim Jong Il instituted the “July 15 top honour prize” on February 5, 1987, and set in motion a movement to win the prize, ensuring that the students of the Pyongyang Senior Middle School No. 1 stood in the vanguard of this movement.

In order to improve the training of technicians and specialists in the sector of higher education, Kim Jong Il ensured that Kim Il Sung University and other major universities were built up excellently, followed by other universities gradually.

In August 1984, Kim Jong Il took an important step for improving the work of Kim Il Sung University, and in September the same year had a decision of the Political Bureau of the Party Central Committee, titled, *On Further Improving and Intensifying the Work of Kim Il Sung University*, adopted.

While striving to drastically build up Kim Chaek University of Technology, Kim Hyong Jik University of Education and Pyongyang University of Medicine, and improve the qualitative level of their education, Kim Jong Il endeavoured to promote the work of raising the level of all the universities in the country to that of Kim Il Sung University so as to

upgrade university education as a whole in compliance with the practical requirements of socialist construction and the development trend of modern science and technology.

Directing particular attention to ceaselessly improving and intensifying technical education, he ensured that the number of technical colleges was rapidly increased, the teaching and educational work of the factory, farm and fishermen's colleges was improved and the Grand People's Study House was conducive to enhancing the general technical and cultural level of the working people.

In his talk to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee on December 13, 1986, Kim Jong Il put stress on improving and intensifying the work of school education by arousing social interest in education.

In order to promote the educational revolution more vigorously, he saw to it that the educational problem was discussed in March 1988 at the 13<sup>th</sup> Plenary Meeting of the Sixth Party Central Committee, and inspired all the educational workers and other working people to the struggle for implementing the decision of the plenary meeting.

Guided by the theses on socialist education, the work of school education as a whole was improved and intensified, and the quality of education was decisively enhanced. As a result, it became possible to bring up new generations to be able and talented people, and education came to make better contribution to the development of national science and technology and the building of the socialist economy.

## 2. DEVELOPING NATIONAL SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY ONTO A HIGHER PLANE

Kim Jong Il regarded rapidly developing national science and technology as an important link for expediting socialist economic construction and improving the people's livelihood, and exerted great effort to this end.

He ensured that a great revolutionary turn was effected in the development of science and technology by activating a shock-brigade movement of scientists and technicians.

He pointed out the importance of strengthening creative cooperation among scientists, technicians and producers. He said:

**“Only when scientists, technicians and producers strengthen creative cooperation among them, can they continually develop science and technology with novel ideas, positive initiative and bold practice, and promptly introduce to production scientific achievements and technological innovation plans.”**

Kim Jong Il had been greatly concerned about finding solutions to scientific and technological problems in socialist economic construction by giving free rein to the collective wisdom of scientists and technicians and strengthening their creative cooperation with producers. He kindled the first beacon of the shock-brigade movement of scientists and technicians at the Komdok Mine, a major production base of nonferrous metals.

In summer 1975, Kim Jong Il visited the Komdok Mine. He pointed out the wrong viewpoint with which officials were looking for the reserves of production growth in prolonging the working hours of workers or in the number of workers, not in technical innovation. He gave them the task of increasing the production capacity and consolidating the productive and technical foundation by laying a large, long-distance conveyer belt, making all equipment large-sized and modernized, and perfecting the commanding system of direction and communication for the pit.

However, the task was difficult to fulfil successfully through the efforts of only the scientific and technical forces of the Komdok Mine.

Having acquainted himself with the situation, Kim Jong Il said to the official concerned one day in the middle of September the same year that it would be reasonable to send scientists and technicians to the Komdok Mine, to help it solve its scientific and technological problems. He advised him that competent scientists and technicians should be selected to form shock brigades, and sent to the Komdok Mine and the related smelteries.

In this way, in early October that year the first shock brigade formed with competent scientists and technicians selected from scientific and educational institutions was dispatched to the Komdok Mine.

Kim Jong Il named the first shock brigade the **“July 1 scientists-and-technicians shock brigade”**.

He also sent shock brigades to other relevant units, such as the Munphyong Smeltery and Nampho Smeltery. He established a well-organized work system so that the shock brigades could work as they should, and provided all conditions for their activities.

The shock brigade sent to the Komdok Mine put on a modern footing Ore Dressing Plant No. 2, the productivity of which had been low. It also rounded off its research into a method of collecting ore dust which flowed down the river, collecting a large amount of nonferrous metals every year. The shock brigades sent to the Nampho Smeltery and Munphyong Smeltery introduced a new method of calcination and melting, and increased the production of nonferrous metal products by almost twofold.

On the basis of the success and experience gained in the process of building up the Komdok Mine as a model mine, a standard mine in the country through the movement of a shock brigade of scientists and technicians, Kim Jong Il further extended the scope of the movement on a nationwide scale.

On February 17, 1978, Kim Jong Il formed another shock brigade comprising scientists and technicians with expertise in different fields and sent it to the Kim Chaek Iron Works and other key areas in various sectors of the national economy. He named it the **“February 17 shock brigade of scientists”** and defined its mission as increasing production to the maximum and making the national economy Juche-oriented, modernized and scientifically-based, by introducing the latest achievements of science and technology.

Not only to the mining industry and iron and steel industry but also to various sectors of the national economy, such as the chemical industry, light industry, construction, transport, agriculture and fishing did he dispatch the February 17 shock brigade of scientists to promptly resolve scientific and technological problems by collective wisdom on the spot, thus making a great contribution to production and construction.

In the meantime, he acquainted himself with the achievements made by the shock brigades of scientists and technicians sent to the key areas, and ensured that 519 technological innovation shock brigade<sup>17</sup> involving even technicians and skilled workers working on production site was organized

in every sector of the national economy, so as to accelerate the technological revolution more vigorously.

This was a step geared to effecting a fresh turn in the development of national science and technology by strengthening the creative cooperation of scientists, technicians and workers in the fulfilment of the technological revolution. The formation of the 519 technological innovation shock brigade resulted in the combination of scientific research with the mass technological innovation movement, bringing about an unprecedented upsurge in production. Later, Kim Jong Il changed the name of the 519 technological innovation shock brigade to the April 15 technological innovation shock brigade. In addition, he ensured that the range of control and guidance of the technological revolution undertaken by the three-revolution teams should also include the work of technological innovation shock brigades. He established a well-organized administrative guidance system for science and technology from commissions and ministries under the Administration Council to factories and enterprises.

While continuously expanding and developing the shock-brigade movement of scientists and technicians, Kim Jong Il mapped out an audacious and large-scale plan to upgrade national science and technology to a higher level, and led the struggle for its implementation.

On August 3, 1985, Kim Jong Il made a speech to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee, under the title, ***On the Further Development of Science and Technology***.

In the speech, he referred to the necessity of developing science and technology to a higher stage.

What is important in the development of national science and technology at present, he taught, is to solve the problems of raw materials, fuel and energy, find solutions to the scientific and technological problems arising in modernizing machines and equipment, intensify research in putting technical process of production, production methods and management activities in all sectors of the national economy onto new scientific foundations and develop basic sciences.

He also put forward concrete ways for rapidly developing the country's science and technology.

While arranging vigorous organizational and political work for establishing an atmosphere of attaching importance to science throughout the country in order to quickly develop science and technology, he took measures for the scientific and technological solutions urgently needed for the country's economic development.

Annual and long-term tasks for scientific and technological development were collectively examined in all sectors, organizational work for solving urgent scientific and technological problems arising in each period of time was conducted efficiently, and a strict State system and discipline to examine and introduce the results of research was established.

In addition, advanced science and technology were introduced to suit Korea's situation by stepping up the study of scientific and technological information, and scientific and technological exchanges with various countries all over the world were conducted briskly through active participation in the work of international organizations such as the World Intellectual Property Organization.

The 11<sup>th</sup> Plenary Meeting of the Sixth Party Central Committee in February 1986 seriously discussed the matter of rapidly developing the country's science and technology in the shortest possible time, a national meeting of winners of academic degrees and titles and a national meeting of inventors were held, and a national scientific and technological festival was organized from 1986 to increase the sense of responsibility and role of scientists and technicians.

On November 15, 1987, the day of elections to the city and county people's assemblies, Kim Jong Il visited the Academy of Sciences in company with President Kim Il Sung and voted for a scientist, a candidate for the Phyongsong Municipal People's Assembly. He convened a consultative meeting of senior officials of the Party Central Committee and the Administration Council at a simple meeting room at the Academy of Sciences, and gave instructions that would serve as the guideline in developing the country's science and technology.

Pointing out that the present one was an era of science and technology, he said that science and technology must be developed rapidly if the country was to be prosperous, and that the country would prosper if



efforts were channelled into the development of science and technology.

He went on to say that in order to quickly develop science and technology, investment in the sector of scientific research should be increased, as without doing so science and technology could not be developed. He then arranged the investment of a large amount of funds into the sector and gave the task of making a three-year plan for the scientific and technological development based on effective use of the investment and submitting it to a plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee.

The 13<sup>th</sup> Plenary Meeting of the Sixth Party Central Committee held in March 1988 discussed the matter of further developing science and education.

The plenary meeting was a historic landmark in developing the country's science and technology onto a new and higher stage.

In whole-hearted response to the decision of the meeting, scientists and technicians concentrated their efforts on scientific research for fulfilling the main tasks of the three-year plan for scientific and technical development—electronic engineering, bioengineering, thermodynamics and chemical industry. They made by themselves a 16-bit computer and achieved many other scientific and technological successes during the 200-day campaign. After acquainting himself with these successes, Kim Jong Il visited a science exhibition at the Academy of Sciences on August 31, 1988.

Inspecting the modern equipment made by scientists themselves one by one, he highly praised the scientists and encouraged them to scale a higher peak of science, adopting necessary measures for the solution of pending problems. After going round the exhibition and giving teachings for more than three hours, he posed for a souvenir photo with the scientists.

On the spot, he guided a consultative meeting of senior officials in the sector of science.

Saying that the scientists and technicians of the Academy of Sciences were confronted with the difficult yet honourable task of rapidly developing electronic engineering, metallurgical engineering, laser engineering and other important scientific sectors, Kim Jong Il laid down the task of working hard to develop the country's science and technology as soon as possible, not resting on their laurels. He also adopted specific measures for promptly introducing to production the achievements of scientific research

and pointed out the need on setting up a correct system of guidance of science and technology. He said that in order to develop scientific research into electronics, atomic energy and other branches, the system of guidance must be simplified and unified. He also clarified specific ways for integrating scientific research institutes.

On the same day, Kim Jong Il, who had paid particular attention to building a scientific research base, which was very important for the development of science, adopted measures for stepping up the building of the scientific research base.

Consenting to the building of the scientific base as in the sand model, he said that as the 13<sup>th</sup> Plenary Meeting of the Sixth Party Central Committee had adopted the decision on developing scientific work with unanimous approval, the building of the scientific base should not be delayed, but be completed within two years by the dynamic finish-one-by-one method.

The on-the-spot guidance of Kim Jong Il to the Academy of Sciences marked a great turning point in successfully carrying out the three-year plan for the development of science and technology and raising the country's science and technology onto a new and higher stage, in full response to the decision of the 13<sup>th</sup> Plenary Meeting of the Sixth Party Central Committee.

### 3. A GRAND GARDEN OF JUCHE ART AND LITERATURE

On the basis of the success and experience achieved in the cinema and opera revolutions, Kim Jong Il paid particular attention to making a revolution in drama, and devoted his all to it.

In the early 1970s, he put forward the policy of making a revolution in drama and solved one by one all the problems arising therein, based on independent faith and judgement.

Kim Jong Il set about making a revolution by doing away with the outmoded pattern in the production of plays, the first process of dramatic art.

He decided to re-produce *A Mountain Shrine*, which had been created

by Kim Il Sung during the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle, in keeping with the demands of the times.

On February 15, 1973, he went to the Grand Theatre to watch the State Theatrical Company stage a scene from *A Mountain Shrine*.

Appreciating the staging of *A Mountain Shrine*, though just one scene, as a good attempt, he said that the drama must be completed and put on the stage as soon as possible.

*A Mountain Shrine*, which had been created and put on the stage by Kim Il Sung at the dawn of the Korean revolution as part of his energetic endeavour to transform a wide area of the countryside on a revolutionary pattern and rally all sections of the masses around revolutionary organizations, was a new, unique genre of revolutionary satirical comedy that clarified the problem of human independence.

For this reason, Kim Jong Il selected *A Mountain Shrine* as a model work in creating a new revolutionary drama, and saw to it that creators delved deeply in various ways into the background and purpose of the creation of the work, the social and historical atmosphere reflected in the work and the things which should not be missed in the characters' personalities.

At the outset, the drama workers failed to have a correct understanding of the ideological and artistic characteristics of the original. Therefore, they only regarded it as a work for enlightenment aimed at conquering superstition. They could not get a common understanding of the modality of the work, regarding it as a satirical drama or a light comedy. As a result, they could not work out even a proper script for several years.

Acquainting himself with this situation, Kim Jong Il met officials and creators in the sector of art and literature on November 4, 1977, and gave them important instructions that could serve as the guideline in re-producing *A Mountain Shrine*.

He said in the following vein:

It is true that the revolutionary drama *A Mountain Shrine* contains an enlightening story for awakening the people who are unenlightened. But this masterpiece contains an ideological essence which solves the problem of man's destiny. As for the opinions that it is rather a light comedy than a

satirical drama because there appear as its main characters such positive characters as Tolsoe and Man Chun, who are not the target of satire and that as there appear such hostile class enemies as a landlord and a village head, the target of satire, it cannot be a light comedy, both of the opinions originate from an outmoded idea of dramatic modality. As a satire is a form of drama, aimed at exposing and condemning the outmoded, its main theme must be to expose and scorn the negative. But it cannot be bound by one pattern that only negative characters should appear, regardless of the content of life and the cognitive and educational purpose, as well as the characteristics of the objects, which must be portrayed in the work. To do so is as foolish as attempting to adjust the body of man to ready-made clothes.

He also dwelt in detail on the need to boldly get rid of the old-fashioned outlook on the previous style of drama and employ as many new creative methods and means as possible for stage representation of a new style of revolutionary drama in the course of producing *A Mountain Shrine*.

In the direction of the creation of the drama as set by Kim Jong Il the creative workers stepped up their historical investigation into the original, while at the same time carrying on with the work of completing the script in top gear, thus working out a unique form of drama that immaculately re-produced the ideological and artistic features of the original and combined both the satirical and legitimate aspects of the drama.

A full-dress campaign to stage a new form of revolutionary drama, *A Mountain Shrine*, started in early 1978.

Kim Jong Il encouraged the directors to enhance their role as commanders of the creative group also in dramatic art. He ensured that the outmoded patriarchal and bureaucratic directing system was smashed and a new directing system under which art production and ideological education went together was established. He also ensured that a vigorous ideological campaign was waged to kindle a flame in the struggle for radically transforming the outmoded system of formalistic and naturalist acting which fostered mannerism and exaggeration, affectation and deformation.

Kim Jong Il led the revolutionary drama *A Mountain Shrine* to be created as a new style of drama with a new aspect also in form, as required by a new age and a new life.

The previous creation of drama, still fettered by the outmoded pattern of agreement among the three elements, which absolutized the consensus of time, place and event, was unable to represent the reality in three dimensions and in a lifelike way. It could not show life truthfully due to its artificial concentration on dramatism. However, these stage limitations had been considered unavoidable, because of the characteristics of drama.

On the principle of setting scenes according to the content of life, not setting the content of life to a ready-made plot, and, on this basis, composing the overall plot, Kim Jong Il made sure that *A Mountain Shrine* adopted a new form of multi-scene plot.

The form of multi-scene plot was a form of drama plot, making it possible to present a variety of pictures in great breadth and represent life without interruption by frequently changing time and place even in one scene according to the characters and logic of life in the sequence of dramatic progress.

With the introduction of this form, *A Mountain Shrine* could show many aspects of life in limited time and space by unfolding life in a natural way and yet in a concise and intensive way and harmonious unity. It broke the former outmoded pattern in which the curtain fell after each scene, and unfolded life in a continuous sequence arousing expectations from the next scene even after the change of scene.

In the course of making a revolution in drama Kim Jong Il saw to it that the three-dimensional revolving stage setting that had been successfully introduced to the *Sea of Blood*-style opera<sup>18</sup> was employed creatively in keeping with the characteristics of drama.

With the adoption of this type of stage setting, *A Mountain Shrine* could show all scenes, ranging from the prelude where the title caption rises shedding brilliant rays breaking through dark clouds to the finale, in an uninterrupted flow like in a film screen and made it possible to present various aspects of life by means of a variety of changes in the revolving set and backdrop. It revealed the innermost world of the characters and formatively supported the process of their growth and development. It provided an uninterrupted line of dramatic emotions, drawing the audience deep into the dramatic world and stimulating their emotional response.

Kim Jong Il ensured the introduction of music in *A Mountain Shrine*.

Having long since considered the possibility of better sustaining the emotional world of characters with adequate combination of music in drama, he ensured that music was introduced in such a way as to highlight the merit of drama and overcome its limitation.

Music thus became an indispensable element of *A Mountain Shrine* and a powerful means of dramatic presentation, ensuring a high level of ideological and artistic quality and emotional effect of drama.

Kim Jong Il gave more stimulation to creators and artists in their efforts to smash the outmoded pattern and create a new revolutionary drama.

On June 14, 1978, Kim Jong Il watched *A Mountain Shrine* staged by the State Theatrical Company. Noting that the first step of the drama revolution had been taken, he highly appreciated the fact that the creators had correctly embodied the ideological and thematic requirements of the work on the basis of the original and that they had made a good arrangement of the plot and introduced the success of the three-dimensional revolving stage setting adequately in keeping with the characteristics of the drama.

With the new creation of *A Mountain Shrine*, drama was developed into an art to meet the requirements of the times and the aspirations of the people, and a turn was effected in developing the dramatic art of the working class onto a new and higher plane.

On the basis of the success and experience gained in putting on the stage *A Mountain Shrine*, Kim Jong Il ensured that *Blood at an International Conference*, *A Letter from a Daughter*, *Three Pretenders* and *Celebrations* were rendered excellently into *A Mountain Shrine*-style dramas and staged, thereby further developing the success of the revolution in drama in depth and width.

In the course of the drama revolution that began with the re-production of *A Mountain Shrine* on stage, the idea and theory on the dramatic art was perfected and the Juche-oriented system and method of drama creation was established.

In his work *On the Art of the Drama*, dated April 20, 1988, Kim Jong Il clarified in detail the problems on the drama revolution, dramatic literature

and dramatic interpretation on the stage in an ideological and aesthetic way and in a theoretical and practical way.

In the first period of his guidance to the cinema revolution, Kim Jong Il raised it as one of the principal tasks to bring out the portrayal of the leader, and laid the foundations for the purpose.

As part of his endeavours to this end, he paid primary attention to preparing creators and artistes in a political and ideological way, and in an artistic and practical way.

He was deeply concerned with the work of preparing the creators and artistes of the Paektusan Production Unit in a political and practical way. He either summoned or called on them in spite of his busy schedule and gave them precious teachings for widening their vision of political insight and knowledge. Coming across the fact that in order for them to describe in their works the revolutionary career of President Kim Il Sung, they would need a deep and rich knowledge about the society in those days and a correct and yet sufficient understanding, as well as scientific evidence of the minor details of the event to be depicted in work, he sent them many reference books.

Under Kim Jong Il's guidance, the political and ideological preparedness and the artistic and practical qualifications of the creators and artistes were markedly improved, followed by the provision of solutions to the technological problems and material conditions necessary for the production of revolutionary films.

Basing himself on this preparation, he initiated in June 1975 the creation of a revolutionary film *Flames Spreading over the Land*, the first of its kind devoted to the screen portrayal of Kim Il Sung, and offered a helping hand to its completion excellently in an ideological and artistic way.

In early December 1975, he watched its first rushes and gave instructions that could serve as a guide in the production of the film, on several occasions. Saying that the creators had failed to give a correct description of the revolutionary fighter Kim Hyong Gwon seemingly because of their poor knowledge of him, Kim Jong Il told them about some aspects of Kim Hyong Gwon's life.

Subsequently, the creators could clearly define the seed of the work to be the revolutionary faith and indomitable will, that is, unbending though

broken. Thanks to this new seed, the line of the film was set up and the descriptive system of the work as a whole improved.

On April 12, 1977, Kim Jong Il watched the second rushes until past 3 o'clock in the morning.

He taught that in the work of art and literature life should be described in detail in a philosophical way by delving into the human world, and that an important point was to depict human beings in depth.

Thanks to the guidance of Kim Jong Il, *Flames Spreading over the Land*, the first ever devoted to the portrayal of the President, was completed as a masterpiece which occupies a particular place in educating the people in the revolutionary outlook on the leader.

On the basis of the success and experience gained in the production of the first revolutionary film as a masterpiece of the times, Kim Jong Il pushed ahead with the creation of revolutionary films on a full scale.

He planned to adapt a long epic, *Mt. Paektu*, to a new and special form of revolutionary film that combined dramatic life and poetry. In April 1979 he gave the creators the task of producing this film.

What was beyond the power of the creators in this task was that the flow of life was broken into separate pieces, and the representation was not equal to that of the poem.

After watching the rushes Kim Jong Il analyzed the film's shortcomings one by one, and clarified their cause and the way to correct them, adding that in this film the poem should be recited the way *pangchang*<sup>19</sup> is employed in the revolutionary opera.

The poetic narration, in harmony with pictures, produced depictive effects, which were difficult to achieve with hundreds or thousands of speeches or dramatic actions.

With the function of this poetic narration, the revolutionary film *Mt. Paektu* could be produced as an impressive picture of heroic epic in which vivid pictures are mixed with strong poetic emotion.

The films in portrayal of President Kim Il Sung opened up a new era in the creation of revolutionary film in Korea.

Relying on the precious achievements and experience gained in the portrayal on screen of the President, Kim Jong Il saw that the revolutionary



career of the President was represented in a multi-part film in the form of a series.

In a meeting with the officials of the Party Central Committee who came to extend their greetings on his birthday anniversary in 1980, Kim Jong Il told them that if a film was made with the song *Star of Korea* as its seed, it would add significance to the forthcoming Sixth Congress of the Workers' Party of Korea.

Afterwards, he gave energetic guidance to the whole course of production from the scenario to the completion.

He ensured that a strong creative force was formed and that in the light of the fact that the area of activity of the young communists stretched out to Seoul, Jilin, Wujiazi, Guyushu, Kalun and Harbin, and even as far as Shanghai, a large-sized mock-up location was built.

On October 20, 1980, when the creators had completed the rushes of Part 1 and Part 2 of *Star of Korea*, Kim Jong Il, who was far from the capital on field guidance, watched the rushes till midnight and commented that they had been made well. Then he advised that though the film had been made quite well as a whole, description of details should be processed more profoundly and set forth the direction of revision in a concrete way.

The revolutionary film *Star of Korea* describes the relations between the leader and his followers in the context of life, as intended by Kim Jong Il, thus sincerely unfolding the President's greatness and the unshakable outlook of the young communists on their leader through the depiction of the specific life.

When Part 3 of *Star of Korea* was completed in April 1981, as a follow-up to the successful creation of Part 1 and Part 2, he clarified the direction for creating sequels and put forward a plan for producing them in ten parts in all.

In this way, the multi-part feature film *Star of Korea* in cyclical form came to be successfully produced in ten parts in all, thus making a great contribution to bringing up Party members and other working people to be Juche-motivated revolutionaries with a clear outlook on the leader.

In succession to the multi-part feature film *Star of Korea*, which reflects the history of the President's early revolutionary activities, Kim Jong Il said

that the multi-part film in the form of a series depicting the revolutionary career of the President in the subsequent periods should be made. He advised that the title should be *The Sun of the Nation* and that the subtitle of each part should be given as required by its own originality in keeping with the title. He also made clear the theme of life to be treated in each part of the film, as well as the ideological contents of the theme required for each period.

In response to his intention, the creators and artistes produced the revolutionary film *The Sun of the Nation* Part 1 and Part 2—each consisting of the first and second volumes, in a little over one year by the end of 1988, and released them.

With the successful production of the multi-part revolutionary films *Star of Korea* and *The Sun of the Nation* in the cyclical form under the guidance of Kim Jong Il, the production of revolutionary films reached a new and higher plane.

In parallel with the creation of multi-part revolutionary films in the form of a series, Kim Jong Il led the work of producing films portraying the revolutionary family of the President, such as *The Bodyguard*, *The Green Pine Tree* and *A Revolutionary Fighter*, as revolutionary films of high ideological and aesthetic value.

The revolutionary films became a true textbook of the revolutionary career of Kim Il Sung and the brilliant revolutionary traditions of the Party, and a weapon of struggle instilling into the people the truth of the Juche revolutionary cause and confidence in its victory.

Along with the creation of revolutionary films, Kim Jong Il saw to it that a great turn was effected in the whole process of film production. He ensured that the feature films *A Revolutionary*, *The Road to the Front*, *The County Party Chief Secretary* and *Wolmi Island*, which portray Juche-type model people, were excellently created on the basis of the original persons, thereby consolidating the achievements of the cinema revolution and further enriching the flower garden of the Juche cinema art.

Kim Jong Il, who had always directed particular attention to the development of cinema art, ensured that the mock-up location which guaranteed material and technical provisions for the brilliant development

and efflorescence of the Juche cinema art was built into a production base for the creation of feature films.

One day in September 1980, he clarified the direction and way for building a mock-up location on the hill behind the Korean Film Studio. On December 21, the next year, he gave on-the-spot guidance at the mock-up location of which the first-stage construction had been finished.

According to his plan, the mock-up location, composed of many buildings and various objects, was constructed on a wide area.

Kim Jong Il directed close attention to the development of light music and electronic music of the Korean style.

In the early 1980s, he ensured the arrangement of the Wangjaesan Light Music Band as a model unit of the Korean-style light music, entrusted with a mission to create traditional national music with modern musical instruments.

Under the several rounds of his guidance, the Wangjaesan Light Music Band set an example of national, yet modern light music in the Korean style, by bringing out the distinctive features of the sentiment and flavour intrinsic in Korean melodies, with unique instrumental composition combined with electronic instruments.

Kim Jong Il also ensured the development of electronic music in the Korean way.

Electronic instruments, an ensemble of up-to-date science and technology, have an excellent feature of adjusting tone and sound in a varied and flexible way. An effective use of electronic instruments, therefore, can ensure the width and depth of musical representation and thus create music popular with the Korean people.

Kim Jong Il set it as a principle in introducing and developing electronic instruments to create music and develop it in such a way as to satisfy the aesthetic tastes and sentiments of the Korean people with electronic instruments, and opened up a new history of modern electronic music, a brilliant era of Korean-style electronic music, in which music is represented in a beautiful, sound and sentimental way, sustaining gentle and elegant melodies in the main, playing Korean tunes with electronic instruments.

On June 4, 1985, the 48<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the victorious Pochonbo Battle, Kim Jong Il organized the Pochonbo Electronic Band with a

mission to pave a new way for the development of electronic music.

He led the creators and artistes of the Pochonbo Electronic Band to conduct an energetic activity for musical creation, on the basis of the Party's Juche-oriented ideas on aesthetics and on art and literature.

He gave explanations about all problems arising in the whole process of representation ranging from the creation to the performance, helping them to broaden their artistic horizons and stimulating their energetic zeal for artistic creation. In this way, he brought them up as master hands of creation, all-round artistes and creators capable of bringing out excellent re-production of any music.

Under his guidance, the Pochonbo Electronic Band has grown into a reliable art group, a model art troupe of electronic music, that has developed the art of electronic music onto a new and higher plane and plays a leading role in the development of the Juche-oriented musical art, remaining true to the Party's revolutionary cause.

Kim Jong Il attached primary importance to the creation of good music before anything else, while at the same time giving energetic guidance to creating a new opera.

He engaged in the production of the national classical work *The Tale of Chun Hyang* as a national opera to meet the aesthetic tastes of the present times, on the basis of the principle and method of the *Sea of Blood*-style opera.

One day in March 1988, he assigned the Pyongyang Art Troupe to the task of making the national opera *The Tale of Chun Hyang* and taught that it should be represented well in keeping with the requirements of the Juche era and the ideological and aesthetic sentiments of the people, different from previous operas or films under the same title.

Afterwards, while guiding the course of its creation on several occasions, he elucidated all aesthetic problems arising in describing the basic message of the work, the personalities of the characters, content and form of representation, songs and so on in compliance with the aesthetic tastes and emotional aspects of the times.

On October 28, while guiding the creative course of the opera, he said that the basic message of *The Tale of Chun Hyang* was to lay bare the reactionary nature of the feudalistic caste system under which people were

discriminated against according to whether they were rich or poor, and men and women of different castes were not allowed to love each other or live together, and that the bottom line of *The Tale of Chun Hyang* was to criticize the discrimination against people according to their castes.

He saw to it that the dramatis personae were analyzed and appraised from the class standpoint on the principle of the Juche-oriented viewpoint, and, on this basis, defined correctly and portrayed in keeping with the aesthetic tastes of the people in the present age.

In this way, the basic idea of the national opera *The Tale of Chun Hyang* came to be highlighted and the dramatis personae represented excellently.

In the meantime, Kim Jong Il concerned himself with the production of many dance pieces reflecting socialist reality based on good music, while at the same time directing the work of inventing a scientific and popular Juche-oriented dance notation.

As early as January 17, 1972, when he was giving on-the-spot guidance to the Mansudae Art Troupe, he hardened his determination to invent a dance notation.

That day he dropped in at the dance practice room and saw the dancers in the process of re-creating *Janggo Dance* that had been created earlier. He was in deep thought when he found them racking their brains to remember the movements and order of the dance. Previously he had faced such a situation several times. He said there and then that it was a great defect that there was no method for marking choreographic composition, and told the officials concerned that they could surely work out a dance notation if they buckled down to it.

Later, he organized a dance notation research group with noted choreographers, veteran dancers and competent dance teachers, and guided its work scores of times, clarifying the matters of principle to be adhered to in making the dance notation.

On a visit to the theatre one day, he carefully looked round the results of the research displayed with visual aids for a long time. He then taught that the dance notation under research in Korea should be correctly expressive of all detailed actions of dance, yet plain enough for everyone to understand easily, and that ensuring scientific accuracy, popularity and universality precisely

meant working out a perfect Juche-oriented and popular dance notation.

Afterwards, he paid frequent visits to the research group to acquaint himself with their research. Sometimes he summoned the researchers to give them relevant advice or spent nights with them. One day he asked them to make a note of a foreign ballet with dance notations and got the students of the University of Music and Dance to re-produce the movements by reading the notations. Another time, he took necessary measures for the dance notation to be widely deliberated and examined by art troupes and educational institutions.

As an outcome of the strenuous efforts of the research group, the basic pattern of the dance notation was made at long last. However, it had too many notation symbols and the principle of their combination was too complex. Its basic symbols were as many as 85.

In late November 1978, Kim Jong Il met officials engaged in the study of the dance notation and said to the following effect: In order to make a popular dance notation, it is imperative to reduce its symbols by as many as possible, before anything else, so that it is easy to understand and convenient to use in making notes of movements. Figuratively speaking, the symbols of dance notation are the same as the alphabet in linguistics. As letters are combined to make a word having a meaning, so should be the case with the dance notation, in which only basic notation symbols are defined and they are combined in various forms to mark dance movements. Our dance notation must be made plain enough for not only dance specialists but also members of the art groups in factories and rural areas, as well as young students, to easily understand and learn.

As instructed by Kim Jong Il, the research group furthered their research work and thus produced a dance notation made up of 34 symbols in all—19 marks playing the same role as consonants and 15 marks playing the role of vowels. These 34 marks, when combined in the same way as the letters of the Korean alphabet are combined, can make scientific and popular notes of various forms of dance movements.

In this way, in February 1987 an alphabetical dance notation appeared in the world, followed by a choreographic score.

As a result, the lingering limitations in the creation, re-production,

dissemination and preservation, scientific research and education work owing to the lack of unique dance notation were removed and a bright vista was opened for the development of the art of dance on a scientific basis.

#### 4. RAPID DEVELOPMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH SERVICE

Kim Jong Il channelled great efforts into giving full play to the advantage of the Juche-oriented socialist system of public health established by Kim Il Sung and further improving public health service to meet the demands of the developing situation.

In a talk to senior officials of the public health sector, titled, *On the Further Development of Public Health Service*, on April 9, 1974, Kim Jong Il clearly indicated the direction for developing public health service onto a high plane.

He directed his primary attention to carrying out the Party's policy on preventive medicine for further development of public health service.

He ensured that a vigorous struggle was waged for preventing diseases and environmental pollution, with the main stress put on sanitary and anti-epidemic work. Before anything else, he saw to it that measures to prevent infectious diseases were taken thoroughly.

In the summer of 1977, cholera broke out in various countries, rapidly spreading to areas near Korea.

While setting up a thoroughgoing system for medical inspection, the relevant sector stepped up the preparations for producing a preventive against cholera. However, the preventive produced with expensive materials would be needless if the danger of cholera was dispelled, and it would be useless when its period of validity was over. Such being the case, officials in the economic sector were hesitating about its production, anxious about the compensation for its production cost.

Acquainting himself with the situation, Kim Jong Il ensured that the state would compensate for the production cost even if the preventive medicines were not used, and took measures for producing emergency anti-epidemic medicines every year.

Thanks to the people-oriented health policy pursued by Kim Jong Il, infectious diseases such as cholera and influenza, which had swept over the world, could not pass the boundary of Korea. Even if they broke out on rare occasions, they quickly became impotent.

Preventing environmental pollution is an important task for carrying out the Party's policy on preventive medicine.

He said that even if industry developed, environmental pollution could surely be prevented once factories and enterprises took thoroughgoing measures, and that the point at issue was how the officials worked with what viewpoint and attitude to improve the people's health. He ensured that the health sector set up proper pollution observation system, gave a strict supervision and control so that factories and enterprises would not produce environmental pollution, and intensified scientific research for preventing it.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that in building a factory strict measures were taken to prevent environmental pollution that damages the people's life and health.

Kim Jong Il made sure that the work of medical treatment and service was further improved and stepped up for the further development of public health service.

In order to improve the method of diagnosis and treatment, he ensured that new methods of clinical experimental test, function-diagnosis, organ transplantation, micromanipulation, the use of radioisotope and laser and various other advanced methods of diagnosis and treatment were widely introduced and the traditional Koryo medicine and modern medicine were combined appropriately.

He said that a correct combination of Koryo medicine and modern medicine was an important policy which the Party held fast to in public health service, and adopted a positive measure for developing Koryo medicine.

In July 1975, a national meeting of officials in the sector of Koryo medicine was held in Pyongyang. The meeting marked an important turning-point in further developing Koryo medicine, a traditional national medicine, to suit the realistic requirements of socialist construction.

A brisk campaign was launched among health workers to improve their level of knowledge about Koryo medicine and rectify their wrong viewpoint of and attitude to this medicine. Facilities of treatment by Koryo medicine



were reinforced to supply sufficient conditions for the treatment so that the scope of treatment by Koryo medicine was widened. *Uibangryuchwi*, one of the three classics on Koryo medicine, was published under Kim Jong Il's meticulous care.

Effective folk remedies were introduced in the treatment through the investigation of folk remedies and systematizing of them in a scientific and theoretical way. At the same time, natural therapeutic means such as hot spring and mineral waters were developed and introduced for upgrading the medical treatment of the working people.

Kim Jong Il energetically led the struggle for carrying out the Law on Public Health of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea adopted at the Fourth Session of the Sixth Supreme People's Assembly in April 1980 and the tasks set for the public health sector at the Sixth Party Congress, and for putting health services on a modern and scientific basis.

As part of his endeavour to translate his daring and ambitious plan for putting the public health service on a modern and scientific footing in keeping with the requirements for the rapid development of modern science and technology, Kim Jong Il arranged the construction of specialized hospitals equipped with state-of-the-art medical appliances.

He got fine preventive dental hospitals built for the people.

From ancient times having good teeth has been said to be one of the Five Blessings.

Noting that the Workers' Party of Korea, a working-class party, spares nothing for the benefit of the working class, Kim Jong Il had a preventive dental hospital, equipped with up-to-date medical equipment based on modern science and technology, built in Hamhung, a city populated by a large number of workers.

On his visit to this hospital on June 29, 1981, he looked round the treatment rooms with up-to-date equipment and expressed great satisfaction, saying that the hospital was large, modern and excellent.

When he entered a treatment room on the second floor, installed with an ultrasonic scaler and up-to-date all-purpose dentist's chairs, his guide told him that foreigners wondered why Korea was buying facilities, which were only used for a king or a president in other countries, for a local hospital.

Exclaiming jocosely that there is no king in Korea, Kim Jong Il added meaningfully that it was nothing to worry about. He said in Korea the people are masters, and it was the working people who should use that equipment.

After the grand opening ceremony of the hospital on September 8, 1981, the Hamhung Preventive Dental Hospital treated first the workers of Hungnam and Komdok, true to Kim Jong Il's intention.

During his on-the-spot guidance of the work of Hamhung on March 11, 1986, Kim Jong Il expressed great satisfaction over a report that the people were pleased with the good treatment at the Hamhung Preventive Dental Hospital.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that a fine preventive dental hospital was newly built also in Pyongyang and that it was furnished with modern facilities and equipment. Under his guidance new branches of dental hospitals were set up in all cities and counties throughout the country for better prevention and treatment of dental problems for the people.

He combined the work of enhancing the level of specialization in medical service with that of rapidly developing medical science and technology.

In order to decisively improve the level of specialization in medical research and service in keeping with the trend of development of modern medical science, Kim Jong Il took measures for setting up in general hospital specialized hospitals by sectors, under which special sectoral departments classified by internal organs and diseases were organized, and forming in a concentrated way specialized sections or specialized sectoral research centres in the selected hospitals in the capital and local areas. In consequence, in the Red Cross General Hospital of Korea were set up the specialized digestive system hospital, the specialized respiratory system hospital, the specialized circulatory system hospital and the specialized neuralgia hospital, all equipped with up-to-date facilities. Also, in the treatment and prevention institutions at the central and provincial levels and the research institutes under the Korean Academy of Medical Science were formed scores of research centres classified by sectors.

Kim Jong Il spared nothing for the modernization of all hospitals with the best medical instruments.

In January 1976, there was held in Korea an exhibition of medical science and technology of a foreign country. The modern medical equipment on display there, if purchased, would make a great contribution to the improvement of the people's health. But the equipment was so expensive that officials were hesitant about the purchase.

On his visit to the exhibition, Kim Jong Il inspected the equipment carefully, before instructing the officials to purchase them, saying that the problem of medical equipment was vital to the life or death of the people.

At the same time as making available up-to-date medical appliances at an enormous cost, he saw to it that a vigorous struggle was waged for producing and supplying medicines and medical appliances by means of domestic resources.

When 5,000 sets of surgical instruments were produced by the manufacturers of medical appliances on the occasion of the 30<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the founding of the DPRK through a brisk labour campaign, Kim Jong Il sent them to all ri people's hospitals in the country.

On the occasion of the 71<sup>st</sup> birthday of President Kim Il Sung in 1983, Kim Jong Il made sure that the Mangyongdae X-ray Factory was built in a modern way so that X-ray equipment, the kernel of the technical equipment of hospitals, was produced and supplied domestically. On September 26 the same year, he gave instructions on equipping relevant hospitals with a device for super-high-pressure radiotherapy, a computerized tomographic device and other modern medical equipment, and took measures for an active assistance for the process.

In order to improve medical service, Kim Jong Il strove to decisively enhance the responsibility and role of medical workers, the direct performers of the mission.

In a letter addressed to the National Conference of Health Workers in April 1985, Kim Jong Il pointed out:

**“Devotion is a spiritual and moral feature of health workers who are in charge of the life and health of the people.”**

He led all medical workers to cherish warm love for people and great devotion to patients.

One day in January 1976, Kim Jong Il heard that doctors of a hospital

sent away a woman patient as they considered her illness incurable. He summoned a senior official in the sector of public health and said in the following vein:

Probably the doctors did so because her disease was hardly curable even if she was treated in the hospital. They should not have handled the matter in such a brusque manner. They seem to know about diseases, but not about the fact that man is precious. However skillful he or she may be, a doctor cannot properly diagnose a patient's disease unless he or she values man. In seeing patients, doctors must regard man as precious. Only then can they regard patients as their comrades-in-arms and have a resolution that they must cure their diseases without fail. Medicine in Korea is a people-oriented medicine which embodies the Juche idea. Therefore, if they concern themselves with only diseases, but forget that man is precious, in diagnosing patients and treating them, they cannot fulfil their duty as medical workers entrusted with a mission to protect the people's lives and promote their health. Doctors must always value people. All health workers must have a correct viewpoint of the people and treat patients with all devotion.

Bearing in mind Kim Jong Il's instructions that primary attention must be paid to the preciousness of man rather than diseases, medical workers exerted all their devotion to the treatment of patients.

A scaffold worker who had had an accident and had been pronounced past all hope of recovery, revived after being in a coma for 270 hours, and recovered his health. A journalist who had been diagnosed as having 19 serious diseases and had been on the verge of death for 60 days, recovered and returned to his post. These and other miraculous stories will go down forever as the legend of love produced by the people-oriented, socialist health policy pursued by Kim Jong Il.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that the problem of health service was discussed at the 13<sup>th</sup> Plenary Meeting of the Sixth Party Central Committee held in March 1988, followed by the Partywide and nationwide struggle for carrying out the decision of the plenary meeting, with the result that a fresh revolutionary turn was effected in public health service.

Under the guidance of Kim Jong Il to public health service, the

advantage of the socialist health system was further displayed and the people's health was improved day by day.

## 5. ADVANCING A JUCHE-ORIENTED POLICY ON PHYSICAL CULTURE AND SPORTS

Kim Jong Il, who had long since shown his close concern for physical culture and sports, decided to effect a revolutionary turn in this work by carrying out a Juche-oriented and popular policy of physical culture and sports.

In early July 1970, he had a hotline installed to link the room of the official in charge of sports and his own office. He called the official to check the performance of the line and told the official to report to him by phone about any problems related to physical culture and sports.

Some days later, he called an official of the Party Central Committee, and stressed the position and role of physical culture and sports in the revolution and construction. Attributing inertia in the work of physical training and sports in the past to the absence of a regular work system and faithful officials in this sector, he said that he himself would take charge of physical training and sports.

Having taken direct charge of sports affairs, Kim Jong Il elucidated the Juche-oriented tactics of sports so that sportspersons could display the honour of Juche Korea in international competitions.

He said that sportspersons must implement the requirements of relying on the strength of ideology, fighting spirit, speed and skill.

One day in April 1972, Kim Jong Il took time out of his tight schedule to watch a football match played by the national football team held in a local stadium.

The players displayed all their energy and skills from the beginning, but neither of the sides scored. As time passed, the game became slow and the zeal of players grew tepid.

Having carefully watched the performance of players, Kim Jong Il called an official after the game. Analyzing in detail the merits and demerits revealed in the course of the game, he mentioned that a high ideological

spirit should be displayed in the game. He said that displaying a high ideological spirit in a sport means that all the players in the game should deal with all situations in the game on their own initiative, with a high sense of ideological consciousness and revolutionary zeal, in other words, all players must strive to defeat the opposing team by drawing on the might of ideological weapon. He stressed that displaying a high ideological campaign is the very key to victory in sports.

Up to that time people had discussed many times the physical preparation, tactics and skill of the players for victory, but no one had paid attention to the factor by which to define them in a unified way.

That day he also referred to a speed campaign, stressing that speed campaign is literally a tactic of the speedy game, in other words, the basic method of Korean style by which to play the game, putting the main stress on the offensive relying on the fastest possible movements. He continued that a speed campaign is not only a Juche-oriented tactic based on the ideological and mental features and physical constitution of sportspersons but also a scientific and modern tactic which meets the trend of development of the world sports technology, adding that they must firmly uphold a speed campaign as a basic method of a game.

The following day, there was held a game between the national team and the film studio football team. Kim Jong Il inquired about the result and called in the evening an official of the football team of the film studio. He pointed out that although the players were said to have played the game with a stubborn fighting spirit, they had failed to record a good result because of their lack of skill. He advised that players should intensify training, putting the main stress on enhancing their personal skill.

Afterwards he took every available occasion to stress the need for launching a vigorous technical campaign. He said that a technical campaign is the tactic by which to defeat the opponent with technical and tactical superiority as well as ideological and spiritual superiority, by giving full play to special skill and tactics of Korean style, literally a technical competition and tactical competition, adding that it requires well-thought-out sporting tactics along with the improvement of the players' personal skill.

In late June 1972, Kim Jong Il inspected the training ground of the football

players of the April 25 Sports Team. Having watched for a long time the players in training, he said to the senior official of the team that one of the defects of the players was the weak fighting spirit revealed among some of them. Noting that an athletic game requires a fighting spirit, he added that the campaign to display the fighting spirit is a sporting tactic by which to play in the spirit of boundless devotion and sacrifice with an indomitable will.

The staunch fighting spirit of sportspersons is not cultivated of its own accord, he stressed, but only through an intensive training along with an uninterrupted ideological training.

After elucidating the Juche-oriented sporting tactics, Kim Jong Il exerted great efforts to get them manifested in the course of each game.

In order to make a new breakthrough in the development of sports, with the April 25 Sports Team as pivot, Kim Jong Il gave guidance to its training and games on several occasions, and helped it to fully meet the requirements of ideological campaign, fighting spirit, speed campaign and technical campaign.

In the course of receiving the guidance of Kim Jong Il, the April 25 Sports Team grew into a strong team with a high level of sporting tactics.

Not only in football but also in shooting, boxing, table tennis, volleyball and other events, which suit the physique of Koreans and are winnable by them, he saw to it that the Juche-oriented sporting tactics were embodied so that remarkable successes were achieved.

In order to rapidly develop women's volleyball, Kim Jong Il arranged the formation of the April 25 Women's Volleyball Team and gave on-the-spot guidance to its training on scores of occasions in 1976 alone.

His plan to raise Korea's sporting skills to world standards with the April 25 Sports Team as a model on the basis of the Juche-oriented sporting tactics bore rich fruits.

In the world championships, Olympic Games and many other international competitions in the 1970s and the subsequent period, Korean sportspersons achieved victories by relying on a powerful ideological campaign, high speed, fighting spirit and technical skills, and thus glorified the country.

Pak Yong Sun, who took part in the women's singles of the 33<sup>rd</sup> World Table Tennis Championships held in India in February 1975, made

continuous attacks by giving full play to her ideological preparedness and fighting spirit and thus gained the world championship. She held the honour of the “Queen of World Table Tennis” twice.

The April 25 Football Team on a tour of Japan in March 1974, took the initiative in each game and won victory after victory, thus displaying the might of Juche-oriented sports. Later on, the Korean football players took first place several times at the 13<sup>th</sup> Universiade held in Kobe, Japan, and many other international competitions.

Boxers, too, defeated strong opponents from the United States, Britain and several other countries, and won gold medals at the 21<sup>st</sup> Olympic Games.

In other sports, such as shooting, judo, wrestling, gymnastics and ice-skating, the Korean players glorified the country.

Considering that if physical culture and sports were truly to be undertakings for the masses, all members of society had to take an active part in sporting activities, and that only then would it be possible to prepare the working people soundly for labour and national defence, and develop sporting skills, Kim Jong Il exerted great efforts into popularization of physical culture and sports.

To this end he took revolutionary measures for making physical training and sports part of the everyday life of the people in all sectors and units.

He ensured that factories and enterprises organized amateur sports teams in which workers could conduct sporting activities briskly, without giving up their production activities. He also took measures for agricultural workers to markedly develop their physical activities. Besides, he set up a strict discipline under which central organs and all other institutions and enterprises performed morning exercises and running as parts of the routine daily schedule and saw that new physical exercises conducive to physical training were created and disseminated. In June 1987, he acquainted himself with the situation of the physical fitness examination and adopted positive measures for setting a month for examining physical fitness of all the people on the list.

In order to popularize physical culture and sports, Kim Jong Il directed special attention to developing sporting activities at schools. He ensured that schools improved the quality of physical training lessons and widely conducted extracurricular sporting activities, focusing on helping students



grow tall, develop their bodies in a harmonious way, acquire a basic knowledge of physical training and master more than one sporting skill. In particular, he advanced a policy of each school specializing in a sports event and ensured its thoroughgoing implementation.

Kim Jong Il defined developing physical training and sports focusing on defence sports as the main content of the Party's policy for physical culture and sports and as a key principle to be adhered to in the promotion of Juche-oriented physical culture and sports, and made sure that defence sports was the core in developing popular physical training. In order to popularize physical training for national defence and raise its events to a high level at the earliest possible time, he saw to it that all sectors and units stepped up various sporting activities for national defence. Consequently, contests of defence sports were widely organized and broad sections of young people and children were enrolled in defence sports clubs or maritime sports clubs formed throughout the country for a variety of defence and maritime sporting activities.

The National Meeting of Sportspersons held from late November to early December 1985 at Kim Jong Il's initiative reviewed the brilliant achievements and experience gained in physical culture and sports in the past. It was a milestone in effecting a new turn in physical culture by carrying out the Party's policy on physical training and sports.

Fathoming in depth the ebullient revolutionary enthusiasm of athletes following the National Meeting of Sportspersons, Kim Jong Il, in his talk, *On Popularizing Physical Training and Sports and Developing Sporting Skills Rapidly*, given to officials in this field on May 19, 1986, urged the development of the country's sporting skills to the high level as soon as possible in keeping with the trend of the development of modern sporting skills.

Noting that an important matter in developing sporting skills was to thoroughly establish the Juche orientation, he said that the basic direction for the development of sporting skills at present was to develop the skills of the events, which suit the tastes and physical constitution of the Korean people and in which success is assured, on a preferential basis, while developing those of all other events at the same time, and stressed the need for raising the skills of the sportspersons, the very performers of the undertaking to develop sporting skills, and stepping up scientific research work concerning physical culture.

Kim Jong Il mapped out a plan to build a sports village in Angol, Mangyongdae District, where a football ground and gymnasiums for each event are available, motivated by his intention to build many modern sporting facilities and, on this basis, further develop the country's sporting skills.

Kim Jong Il took personal control of the whole course of the building of the sports village, ranging from the drawing of the blueprints of gymnasiums to the supply of materials and equipment and measures for their production, and gave detailed guidance to the process.

With the 40<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the founding of the DPRK approaching, a modern and comprehensive centre for physical culture was laid out covering an area of 1,750,000 square metres. Available in this centre are the open-air Sosan Football Ground with 25,000 seats and an indoor gymnasium for each event, such as the Combat Sports Gymnasium, the Weightlifting Gymnasium, the Volleyball Gymnasium, the Basketball Gymnasium, the Indoor Swimming Pool Complex, the Table-tennis Gymnasium, the Athletics Gymnasium, etc, all built with special architectural beauty. It has restaurants for sportspersons, rest rooms and all other conditions for sporting activities. Over 40 competitions in 20 events can be held simultaneously in this centre.

On September 3, 1988, Kim Jong Il attended the opening ceremony of the sports village, in company with President Kim Il Sung. While making the round of the football ground and many gymnasiums, Kim Jong Il expressed his great satisfaction with their unique and splendid construction. President Kim Il Sung named the Angol sports village, as large as a street and with many gymnasiums, Chongchun Street (Youth Street-Tr.).

Afterwards, Kim Jong Il arranged the construction of the modern Taekwon-Do Hall, the only one of its kind in the world, covering an area of 60,000 square metres, so that the World Taekwon-Do Championships could be held there.

In October 1985, he mapped out a plan for building a new, large stadium on Rungna Islet, for the forthcoming 13<sup>th</sup> World Festival of Youth and Students. He personally oversaw the whole course of construction and gave directions to it so that it was completed to the best standards and at the earliest possible date.

His painstaking efforts to construct the stadium on Rungna Islet as a grand monumental edifice were unprecedented.

In mid-December 1986, when the builders finished an immense amount of work to lay the foundation of the project and set about the building of the main frame, Kim Jong Il came to know that some materials needed for construction were in short supply, and adopted a specific measure for supplying the materials promptly.

On May 24, 1987, when the project for the main frame was at its height, Kim Jong Il climbed Moran Hill and viewed the construction, saying that the scale of the stadium was really great and that it would look higher than Moran Hill once it was capped with a roof. He added that such a huge project as the stadium could be undertaken only by an industrial state with the strong foundation of an independent national economy, and not by a country with a weak economic foundation.

Stressing that day that the stadium should be built well, he gave detailed instructions that the roofing, which is important in the building of a stadium, should be done well, and a car park and road should be laid out well in correspondence with the scale and accommodation capacity of the stadium.

On July 5 the same year, he gave on-the-spot guidance for the construction of the stadium and pointed out essential aspects. On July 19, he said that if the stadium was covered with a vaulted roof, it would look more gigantic, and instructed that the materials needed for the construction should be supplied in a concentrated and sufficient way for the completion of the project earlier than scheduled.

Encouraged by the guidance of Kim Jong Il, the constructors pooled their creative wisdom and efforts, and introduced to the roofing a “method of extended assembling of the frame of a parachute-style roof”, and many other new methods and technical innovation plans, thus creating an unprecedented speed in construction.

Kim Jong Il inspected the construction site of the stadium again. There and then he took measures for quickly carrying by ships and railways the steel roof truss and slope arch made by factories and enterprises all over the country to avoid any hindrance to the building, and simultaneously pushing ahead with the building of the stadium and the arrangement of the surrounding area.

Now that gymnasiums and stadiums are being built in a modern way, we should equip them with modern sport apparatus and facilities sufficiently, he

said and instructed that the stadium on Rungna Islet should be equipped with an LCD screen for the spectators to see the scenes of the game and scores conveniently, a rubber running track and a modern comprehensive scoreboard.

Under his care, the stadium was completed successfully in 1989.

In the light of the fact that the inauguration ceremony of the stadium was to be held on April 29 on the occasion of May Day in the presence of President Kim Il Sung, it was named the May Day Stadium.

The May Day Stadium is one of the world's prominent grand stadiums, with a seating capacity of 150,000 and occupying an area of 207,000 square metres. The roof, 90,000 square metres wide, covers the whole area of the seats, the part of the roof over the seats spreading as far as 60 metres.

The shape of the stadium is executed in a unique form, with the first-ever parachute-type roof supported by large semi-circular arches.

The stadium has sufficient conditions for football games and international and national field and track and all other events, for the training of players and for accommodation of spectators.

Kim Jong Il set the site of a football ground on Yanggak Islet in the middle of the Taedong River. Inspecting its blueprint and sand table, he clarified in detail its form and content, as well as the scale of its construction, and made efforts for the earliest completion of its construction.

In this way, the Yanggakdo Football Ground, finely equipped with a natural-turf pitch measuring up to international standards, 400-metre running track, training ground for five types of combat sports, and other modern sports and service facilities capable of accommodating international and national games was built in a grandiose way.

Kim Jong Il also saw to it that an all-purpose indoor stadium, a swimming pool and a sportspersons' hotel were built in every provincial capital, a gymnasium, an indoor swimming pool, an outdoor swimming pool and a stadium in every city and county seat, a modern all-purpose training hall and a stadium for each sports team, and a gymnasium and a swimming pool at schools. In addition, various sports facilities were set up in institutions, enterprises and houses of culture. These facilities constituted a material and technical foundation on which to develop the country's physical culture and sports to a higher standard.

## CHAPTER 25

# LOFTY LOVE FOR FELLOW COUNTRYMEN

### 1. FOR THE REUNIFICATION OF THE COUNTRY

The main causes of failure in the Korean people's endeavour to achieve national reunification over the past scores of years following the division of the country and the nation were foreign dominationist schemes and interference, and the US occupation of south Korea and separatist manoeuvres.

In order to put an end to foreign domination and interference and reunify the country independently, it was imperative to thoroughly isolate and weaken the United States and the separatists of all hues, who were toeing the US line, in the international arena.

Kim Jong Il ensured that energetic external activities were conducted to deal a telling blow to the splittist manoeuvres of the United States at the 30<sup>th</sup> Session of the UN General Assembly.

With the 30<sup>th</sup> Session of the UN General Assembly, which was expected in the autumn of 1975, approaching, the United States suddenly suggested a "resolution" on the dissolution of the "UN Command" on the condition that the armistice agreement would be maintained.

The "resolution" demanding dissolution of the "UN Command", which the United States had used for over 20 years as a means of veiling the true colours of its aggressor army, produced a shocking effect. Unaware of the sinister design of the United States, some countries were to support it, harbouring an illusion about it.

After examining the worldwide repercussions from the US "resolution", Kim Jong Il pinpointed its aim as being geared to creating an impression

that the United States was interested in Korea's reunification and security so that it could hold in check any DPRK's draft resolution concerning the withdrawal of the US army that might be proposed if the Korean issue was raised at the 30<sup>th</sup> Session of the UN General Assembly, and separate the US troops from the UN forces, thus perpetuating its occupation of south Korea and dividing Korea in two forever. He taught that in order to achieve a decisive victory by turning the temporary disadvantage caused by the crafty US trick to good account, a dynamic diplomatic offensive should be launched. He added that once the cunning intention of the United States with regard to its suggestion about the dissolution of the "UN Command" was disclosed, even those countries that had been supporting the US position with an illusion about the "resolution" would turn against it. Stressing that we must get them caught in the trap laid by themselves, he said that we must launch vigorous external activities to lay bare their wicked scheme.

Thus, an unprecedentedly large-scale diplomatic offensive of Korea was commenced in more than 90 countries. In the course of this offensive, many countries came to realize the crafty intention of the United States to continually occupy south Korea by changing its cap of "UN Command" to that of the "US army", and separate Korea in two forever.

One day in July 1975, Kim Jong Il said to the following effect:

The on-going struggle in and around the UN Headquarters is a very serious and fierce political confrontation over the problem of national reunification, the most urgent task of our revolution. We must pay due attention to victory in voting, as a matter of course, but, more importantly, put the United States on the defensive and drive it into a tight corner, inflicting a great political and moral defeat on the United States in the presence of the world public.

As far as the principle required for driving the enemy into a corner in the light of the strategic outlook was concerned, Kim Jong Il suggested President Kim Il Sung's proposal for replacing the armistice agreement with a peace treaty and the proposal for observing the principles of the North-South Joint Statement.

As a result, DPRK's resolution reflecting its fair and principled stand and demand was adopted at last by an overwhelming majority.

This was a stern punishment meted out to the United States, which had

been hindering Korea's reunification, disguising its identity as the aggressor by usurping the name of the United Nations. At the same time, it was a clear manifestation of international support and encouragement for the consistent line and policy of the Workers' Party of Korea and the DPRK Government for the country's independent and peaceful reunification.

With a view to attaining the country's independent and peaceful reunification as soon as possible, President Kim Il Sung put forward at the Sixth Congress of the Workers' Party of Korea the policy of founding the Democratic Federal Republic of Koryo (DFRK) and the 10-point policy for the reunified country.

As soon as the Report to the Sixth Party Congress was published, Kim Jong Il saw to it that the Party organ and many other publications carried articles of explanation about the policy for the founding of the federal state and the 10-point policy for the reunified state. He ensured that the conferences of the working people's organizations for carrying out the decision of the Sixth Party Congress discussed the fighting tasks to realize the policy for founding the DFRK, and sent to the relevant sectors in south Korea letters in the name of the conferences calling for joint struggle to put into practice the new policy for national reunification.

At the same time, he ensured that the external information work on the policy of founding the DFRK was launched in a variety of forms and with a variety of methods.

Kim Jong Il ensured a series of rational proposals for putting into effect the policy of the founding of the DFRK were advanced.

According to his plan and intention, a joint meeting of political parties and public organizations, held in Pyongyang in November 1980, adopted letters to the south Korean people and overseas compatriots, appealing for a preliminary meeting to set up the preparatory committee for founding the DFRK. The Central Committee of the Democratic Front for the Reunification of the Fatherland (DFRF) sent letters to 5,300 fellow countrymen of all walks of life in south Korea and abroad, offering an important proposal for realizing the policy of founding the DFRK, and made them public over the radio for the patriotic figures who were in prison in south Korea.

In August 1981, the Central Committee of the DFRF made a statement,

proposing a conference for the promotion of national reunification to be attended by the representatives of political parties and public organizations in north and south Korea and overseas Korean compatriots. The Committee for the Peaceful Reunification of the Fatherland proposed in February the following year holding a joint meeting of 100 leading politicians from the north, south and abroad as a consultative body for national reunification, and made public the list of its participants.

Kim Jong Il ensured that an atmosphere of national reconciliation and unity was created on the basis of the rapidly increasing enthusiasm of the nation for reunification.

In order to reunify the country by founding the DFRK, all fellow countrymen in the north and the south should, above all, trust each other and endeavour to promote reconciliation and cooperation, surpassing their differences in ideology and ideals, religious faith and system, and from the standpoint of being one nation and the same fellow countrymen. Removing mutual distrust and misunderstanding, antagonism and feeling of confrontation and achieving national reconciliation and unity is a prerequisite for founding the unified federal state.

Kim Jong Il devoted himself to reconnecting the severed bloodline of the nation.

In the period from late August to early September in 1984 it rained heavily in Seoul and in the wide areas of south Korea, inflicting a crushing calamity on more than 200,000 south Korean people.

Deeply worried about the unexpected disaster imposed upon the people in the south, Kim Jong Il adopted measures for sending to the flood victims relief goods permeated with brotherly love, true to the lofty intention of President Kim Il Sung.

On September 8 the same year, a decision of the Central Committee of the DPRK Red Cross Society was made public by radio and other communication networks on sending to south Korean flood victims 50,000 *sok* (one *sok* equals about 144 kg–Tr.) of rice, 500,000 metres of cloth, 100,000 tons of cement, and a large amount of medicine.

This was unanimously welcomed by the south Korean compatriots and progressive people across the world.



However, the south Korean authorities who were only seeking the perpetuation of the country's division and the prolonging of their power, heedless of the misfortunes of the nation, attempted to use the relief measure for their dishonest political purpose. On September 14 the south Korean authorities, in the name of the south Korean Red Cross Society, released a "statement" that they would receive the relief goods under the condition that they were transported as a whole within September.

The attitude of the south Korean side flabbergasted the world public and stirred up the indignation of the Korean compatriots at home and abroad.

Nevertheless, Kim Jong Il subordinated everything to delivering the feelings of brotherly love to the south Korean people as soon as possible. When the south Korean side attempted to break off the talks at the working-level contact of the north-south Red Cross societies on the delivery and reception of the relief goods by attaching unreasonable conditions, Kim Jong Il saw to it that their dishonest attempt was frustrated through sincere persuasion and with the generosity of brotherly love.

When the freight vessel *Taedonggang*, which was on its way to Inchon Harbour in the south, carrying cement permeated with the brotherly love of the people in the north, was suddenly stranded, and the south Korean authorities responded by saying that they no longer wanted the cement, Kim Jong Il roused the people and had 12,000 tons of cement laden on board the large cargo vessels, *Sunchon* and *Ryongnamsan*, within 15 hours so that the whole amount of relief goods could reach the south Korean flood victims on time.

With the relief goods as a momentum, the interrupted north-south Red Cross talks were resumed after a lapse of 12 years.

One day in mid-May 1985, a few days before the forthcoming Eighth North-South Red Cross Talks to be held in Seoul according to the agreement of both sides, Kim Jong Il told the officials preoccupied with the practical problems of the Red Cross talks that they should suggest exchanging art troupes between the north and the south on the occasion of the 40<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the country's liberation. He said that if the north and the south exchanged art troupes and held performances with

programmes of national content, it would exert a favourable influence on creating an atmosphere for national unity and reunification.

To the officials, who were overcome with excitement by the new proposal, Kim Jong Il said to the following effect:

If we put forward the matter of exchanging art troupes this time, the south side may suggest mutual visits by separated families. We should accept willingly and bring to realization both the exchange of art troupes and the exchange of visiting groups. We must not hesitate to do anything at all needed for sharing the feelings of fraternity and re-linking the bloodline of the nation. We have nothing to hesitate about on the way of patriotism for the nation. We must always think of the nation above all else.

Thanks to the initiative and the ensuing measure taken by Kim Jong Il, a large number of artistes and visitors were able to visit Pyongyang and Seoul, crossing the barrier of division after 40 years of national separation. The whole process of exchanges of art troupes and home-visiting groups that proceeded from September 20, 1985 was a significant period in which the irresistible will of the entire Korean people in the north and the south for reunification was demonstrated at home and abroad. It was a historic event of great significance in removing misunderstanding and distrust between the fellow countrymen in the north and the south, creating an atmosphere of national reconciliation and unity, re-linking the severed bloodline of the nation and accelerating the country's reunification.

Frightened by the rapidly mounting zeal for reunification among south Korean people with the compatriotic relief measure and the exchanges of Red Cross art troupes and home-visiting groups as the momentum, the United States resorted more tenaciously to its attempt for the permanent division of Korea and for a new war.

Now that the huge forces in the north and the south of Korea were confronting each other with the demarcation line in between, and tens of thousands of US troops and more than 1,000 nuclear weapons had been deployed in south Korea, it was imperative to remove the military confrontation between north and south and the danger of renewed war in order to realize the policy of founding the federal republic.

Kim Jong Il took measures one after another to this end.

In 1986, a year of international peace, he ensured that a proposal for stopping all military exercises during the period of north-south dialogue and creating a nuclear-free, peace zone on the Korean peninsula for peace and relaxation of tension in Korea was advanced, and an important measure involving 150,000 KPA troops in the peaceful construction of the country taken.

In order to put into effect the proposal for holding high-level north-south political and military talks and the proposal for disarmament, Kim Jong Il got the Premier of the DPRK Administration Council and the Minister of the People's Armed Forces to send a co-signed letter to their south Korean counterparts on three occasions between January and February 1987, suggesting high-level north-south political and military talks and urging them to respond. In July the same year, in accordance with his initiative, the DPRK Government made a statement proposing a large-scale phased reduction of armed forces and took the positive measure of unilaterally discharging 100,000 men and officers from all arms and services, dispatching them to sites of socialist construction. In addition, in November 1988 it proposed a comprehensive peace plan.

These proposals and measures proceeded from the firm standpoint of realizing comprehensive and complete disarmament, removing the danger of war and accelerating peaceful reunification, not in words, but in deeds.

## 2. DEVELOPING THE WORK OF CHONGRYON TO A HIGHER STAGE

Kim Jong Il, in a talk to senior officials of the Party Central Committee, titled, *On Giving Active Assistance to the Work of Chongryon*, on March 25, 1975, clarified the way Chongryon (the General Association of Korean Residents in Japan) should follow, and wisely led the struggle for its implementation.

Kim Jong Il directed primary attention to ideological education geared to firmly preparing Chongryon officials and Korean nationals in Japan as true overseas citizens of the DPRK.

He saw to it that Chongryon vigorously conducted ideological

education, focusing on education in Party policy, in revolutionary traditions and in socialist patriotism, and widely employed various forms and methods of education proper to the special characteristics of Chongryon working with compatriots living in a capitalist society.

Kim Jong Il regarded art and literature as a powerful means of bringing up Chongryon officials and Korean nationals in Japan as true overseas citizens. He encouraged Chongryon art groups to improve their roles.

He saw that Chongryon artistes went through a special course of learning and training for the revolutionary opera *Song of Mt. Kumgang* in the homeland and arranged the formation of the Kumgangsán Opera Troupe with the central art troupe of the Korean residents in Japan that had gone through the special course for the revolutionary opera as its parent body. The formation of this opera troupe was an important step taken to push ahead with ideological education through art and literature.

The Kumgangsán Opera Troupe actively conducted the performance of the revolutionary opera *Song of Mt. Kumgang* and a variety performance of music and dance, at the same time giving active support to the local song and dance troupes in various parts of Japan, so that they could fully discharge their mission and duty as the itinerant art groups of Chongryon engaged in artistic activities for the implementation of patriotic work, and so do their bit for the work of ideological education of Chongryon.

Kim Jong Il paid profound attention to enhancing the spirit of national independence of Chongryon workers and other Korean nationals in Japan.

In order to instil in Korean nationals in Japan national pride and confidence that they are overseas DPRK citizens, he put forward in April 1979 a policy of realizing short-term visit to the homeland by Korean nationals in Japan, and had a hotel for them built on the outskirts of Mt. Kumgang, a world-renowned spot of scenic beauty. He also provided a passenger ship, *Samjiyon*, for the use of the short-term visitors. The visit, which started in August the same year, marked an occasion for Korean nationals in Japan to witness the reality of their prospering socialist motherland, and thus cherish the honour of being overseas citizens of Juche Korea. It also provided an opportunity for the officials of the *Joson Sinbo*, *Korean Pictorial* and other press organs of Chongryon to visit various places

in the homeland and collect first-hand information on the success of socialist construction achieved by the people in the homeland, aspects of their lives and the excellent cultural heritage of the nation to introduce them through those publications.

Kim Jong Il strengthened Chongryon and built up its mass foundation.

He ensured that its ranks of cadres, the organizational backbone and the educators of the masses, were formed of officials who were faithful to their country and nation, popular and influential among the compatriots and possessed of organizational ability and driving power, and that they were given ceaseless education and training through organizational life and practical activities.

Kim Jong Il helped Chairman Han Tok Su and other Chongryon officials to fulfil their role as officials of the dignified organization of overseas citizens of the DPRK.

In keeping with the reality in which change of generation was taking place in the composition of the ranks of cadres of Chongryon, he saw to it that Chongryon examined young people through practice and kept them as reserve cadres, training them in a far-sighted and systematic way, while giving revolutionary education to the students of Joson University and students of graduating classes of Korean high schools so as to bring them up as reliable backbone of Chongryon.

Kim Jong Il strove to enhance the role of the Chongryon organizations at all levels, such as chapters and branches, and improve their work with the masses of compatriots of all strata.

The model branch movement was intensified as a mass movement of compatriots to strengthen branches, the basic organizations of Chongryon, and the sub-branch movement was launched to consolidate branches and bring closer the fraternal ties between Chongryon organizations and the masses of compatriots.

He led Chongryon to intensify its guidance of such integral organizations and bodies as the Federation of Korean Workers in Commerce in Japan, the Korean Youth League in Japan and the Union of Democratic Korean Women in Japan, establish a correct work system whereby Chongryon organizations could improve their work with the broad masses of compatriots, and make

its officials go among the compatriots and dynamically conduct the work of educating and leading them.

True to his intention, the officials of Chongryon organizations at all levels launched a campaign to “visit 100,000 households of compatriots”, a mass campaign for the education of compatriots, the largest of its kind since the formation of Chongryon, from March to April 1975, which marked a significant occasion in intensifying the work among the masses.

Kim Jong Il paid attention to preparing the younger generation as the reliable heirs carrying on the bloodline of the patriotic movement of Chongryon.

Given the situation that the younger generation of Korean nationals in Japan, who were born and growing up in Japan, were emerging as the masters of patriotic activities of Chongryon, Kim Jong Il saw to it that Chongryon conducted work with them, with the main stress put on making them remain true to their origin as Koreans, love the socialist motherland and their nation, and inherit the cause of patriotism.

He led it to teach the Korean language and Korean history and geography to the new generation of Korean compatriots, so that they could have pride and self-confidence as Koreans, love their homeland and nation and keep their Korean souls at work and at play.

In December 1974, he said in the following vein:

The democratic national education of Chongryon is very important work. The formation of a nation originates in its language and letters. If Korean children in Japan do not know the Korean language and letters and history, they will forfeit their national rights and qualities and, in the end, even their national identity. Wherever they may live, Koreans must speak Korean, learn the Korean letters and know about Korean history. Koreans must be every inch Koreans.

In November 1978, Kim Jong Il said that since the second and third generations of Korean nationals in Japan were growing up without seeing their country, it was important for them to be given visual education about their homeland. He sent to all the schools of Chongryon immersed specimens of fish from the Taedong River and the East and West Seas of Korea, specimens of trees from Mt. Paektu, ore specimens, stuffed zoological specimens and various other visual materials.

In order to implant more deeply the national spirit in the minds of the students of Joson University and provide them with the best educational conditions, Kim Jong Il had a history museum built in the university.

In late January 1981, he said that on the occasion of the 25<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the inauguration of Joson University the motherland would have to do something worthy of the occasion and that it would be advisable to make a present of a big history museum to the university. He added that the museum, if arranged with the display of relics and historical materials representative of important periods of Korean history, such as the primitive age and Kojoson (Ancient Korea), Koguryo and Palhae, would be a perfect museum of Korean history.

In late May the same year, 520 pieces of precious relics and historical materials, including valuable authentic articles representative of the historical periods from the primitive age to the March First Popular Uprising<sup>20</sup> of 1919, such as human fossils, axe of the Bronze Age, Koguryo mural paintings, earthenware of Palhae and relics from Kulpho-ri, North Hamgyong Province, and 400 exhibition plans and drawings, were delivered to Joson University.

At last the history museum of Joson University was opened. With valuable historical materials on display, the museum confirms the fact that Korea has a history of 5,000 years and the Korean people are a resourceful nation who have created a brilliant culture since ancient times.

Giving top priority to the work of education for Chongryon, Kim Jong Il ensured that the homeland gave vigorous support to this work, and sent educational funds and scholarships to Chongryon every year without fail.

One day in December 1987, after inquiring into the provision of educational funds to Chongryon as meticulously as a parent would do, he said that the vast amount of educational funds sent year by year was permeated with the love of President Kim Il Sung for the children of the compatriots of Chongryon, and that sending educational funds to Chongryon was as good as delivering the feeling of affection of the President to the children of compatriots. He continued that he would love to send all of the property of the country just for the benefit of educating the

rising generation of Chongryon and that the homeland should spend its earnings on nothing but such an undertaking.

Entering the latter half of the 1980s, Chongryon greeted a new turning point in its development.

In a talk, titled, *On Further Improving and Strengthening the Work of Chongryon to Meet the Demand of the Developing Situation*, given to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee on September 15, 1986, Kim Jong Il set forth a strategic policy on effecting a new turn in the work of Chongryon.

In his talk, he stressed once again that modelling Chongryon on the Juche idea is a strategic target Chongryon should finally attain in its endeavour to embody the Juche idea in the movement of Koreans in Japan.

He taught that in order to make a fresh advance in its work, Chongryon should develop in a new way and on the basis of the changed reality the work of building up its ranks organizationally, before anything else, and further improve and intensify ideological work to meet the demand of the developing situation. In addition, he clarified the tasks for improving its work, for making new progress in its external activities to strengthen international solidarity with the Japanese people and all other peoples of the world and for conducting an energetic struggle in defence of the democratic national rights of the compatriots.

Kim Jong Il said that in order for Chongryon to carry out its tasks successfully, all of its sectors and units must establish a new attitude towards work, and all officials should work energetically with a high sense of responsibility, and set forth specific ways for the purpose.

In order to carry out his policy on the movement of Koreans in Japan, Chongryon convened its 14<sup>th</sup> Congress in the Korean House of Culture in Tokyo from September 26 to 28, 1986, and defined its policy of epoch-making significance in patriotic activities, in keeping with the prevailing situation and the changed circumstances of Chongryon, and thus set up a new milestone in the development of the movement of Koreans in Japan.

Kim Jong Il ensured that Chongryon directed primary attention to consolidating its mass foundation by winning over the broad masses of compatriots.



Saying that the most important thing at that time in uniting the masses of compatriots was to work properly with Korean merchants and entrepreneurs, he set forth uniting merchants and entrepreneurs behind it through its efficient work with them as a key organizational line of Chongryon.

In a talk to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee on March 25, 1975, he said,

**“Korean merchants and entrepreneurs are the basic masses of Chongryon and the main force of the movement of Koreans in Japan.”**

He continued that although they were living in a capitalist society, they were not people who were interested in money alone, thinking nothing of their homeland. He added that it was his unshakable will to trust them as revolutionary comrades and work alongside them, hand in hand.

Highly praising the merchants and entrepreneurs of Chongryon as true patriots who were devoting their all to the prosperity of their homeland, he had the Order of Kim Il Sung, the title of Labour Hero and other high-class commendations awarded to patriotic merchants and entrepreneurs, and had factories, hospitals and equipment named after them, glorifying their patriotic deeds forever.

One day in November 1981, Kim Jong Il suggested erecting monuments to loyalty made of natural granite in the compounds of the factories which merchants and entrepreneurs had presented to the homeland, and ensured that such monuments were erected in various factories they had presented to hand down their patriotism and loyalty to posterity forever.

In May 1986, inquiring into the preparations for a tour of the Pyongyang Students and Children’s Art Troupe to Japan, he received a report that some patriotic merchants and entrepreneurs were sick in bed.

Asking what had been done to help them, he said that when they were sick in bed, Korean compatriots living in an alien land must yearn for their homeland more keenly than ever, and that tonics should be sent to them on the occasion for their recovery. He got the Pyongyang Students and Children’s Art Troupe to take wild insam (ginseng) and antlers of young deer to them and give encouragement to them.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that Chongryon further intensified ideological



**Kim Jong Il talking with officials of Chongryon (December 29, 1986)**

work among officials and other compatriots in Japan, as required by the developing situation.

He made sure that, given the particular situation that due to the change of generation among the Korean nationals in Japan there appeared some young people who were not well aware of the preciousness and gratefulness of their homeland or were thinking as if they could live without a homeland, Chongryon ceaselessly intensified education in the homeland among the rising generation, focusing on instilling in them love for and devoted service to the homeland, in close combination with education in the revolutionary traditions, and in comparison with the past status of Korean compatriots in Japan. He also ensured that it stepped up education among the compatriots to raise their sense of national self-respect so that they cherished a strong sense of the Korean-nation-first spirit, and pride and self-confidence as the Korean nation and sustain the national identity. In addition, he saw to it that it educated the compatriots to love Chongryon so that they could value Chongryon organizations, approach them with respect and live and work relying on them.

He also led Chongryon to set up a rational network of education, lecture and information services and operate it on a regular basis, and establish a propagation system suited to the reality wherewith to make an effective use of all means of propagation.

Kim Jong Il led Chongryon and the Korean nationals in Japan to take an active part in the patriotic work of Chongryon.

He said that the most important part of the patriotic work of Chongryon is to make an active contribution to the cause of national reunification, and ensured that Chongryon conducted organizational and political work aimed at contributing to national reunification in a bold and dynamic way.

Kim Jong Il made sure that Chongryon organizations at all levels always regarded national reunification as the first and foremost task, and adopted practical measures for organizing and mobilizing all officials and other compatriots in this work.

He ensured that the work of joint ventures between Korean merchants and entrepreneurs in Japan and the homeland was promoted in accordance with their interests, business conditions, types of business and property status.

In order to bring about a revolutionary upswing in the patriotic work of Chongryon, Kim Jong Il initiated in June 1987 an “honoured patriotic flag movement”, a new type of mass movement.

He saw that Chongryon under the slogan, “Let all of us take part as one in patriotic work, those with money contributing money, those with knowledge devoting knowledge, and those with strength offering strength,” defined a clear stage-by-stage target, and conducted the organizational and political work in a scrupulous way, thus pushing ahead with the movement vigorously as an all-embracing mass movement involving all institutions and units in the fields of education, culture, mass media, the economy, etc., and all compatriots.

Taking full account of the importance of the role played by Chongryon officials, especially veteran cadres, in developing Chongryon as an organization of overseas compatriots, Kim Jong Il met each and every veteran official of Chongryon on a visit to the socialist motherland, and gave them instructions that would serve them as the guide at work and at leisure, so that the veteran revolutionaries of Chongryon could play their hardcore role in ensuring the continuity of the patriotic work of Chongryon and of the movement of Koreans in Japan while keeping their posts in good health.

On May 15, 1985, Kim Jong Il met Ri Kye Baek, vice-chairman of Chongryon, who, on a visit to the motherland as the head of the congratulatory group of Korean nationals in Japan on the occasion of the 73<sup>rd</sup> anniversary of the birth of President Kim Il Sung, had been taking a rest and getting treatment at a hot spring. He said to Ri that only when veteran revolutionaries stayed long at the helm in Chongryon would it be possible to properly conduct education for the compatriots of the second and third generations, who were born in Japan and had no knowledge about the past, and that the veteran revolutionaries of Chongryon should educate them well so that they would not become naturalized in Japan.

One day Kim Jong Il acquainted himself with the process of the preparations for the function for the 30<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the founding of Chongryon. With regard to the report to the meeting devoted to the occasion, he said that as the meeting was literally a function to commemorate the 30<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the formation of Chongryon, the report must mention the fact

that Chairman Han Tok Su was one of the founders of Chongryon and had performed distinguished services in establishing the system of the Juche idea in Chongryon. He also made sure that Han's distinguished services were appraised in the speech at the banquet given in honour of the group of Korean nationals in Japan Han had led on a visit to the homeland to express thanks to the motherland on the 30<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the formation of Chongryon, on the evening of the day they arrived.

### 3. RALLYING FIRMLY AROUND THE GREAT NATIONAL UNITED FRONT

In order to firmly rally the whole nation around a great national united front for the country's reunification, President Kim Il Sung set forth a policy of achieving the steadfast tripartite solidarity of Koreans of the north, the south and abroad.

Kim Jong Il strove for the realization of unity between the northern and overseas compatriots as the first step for firmly rallying the whole nation around a great national united front under the banner of national reunification.

He opened the door wide for a large number of overseas compatriots to visit Pyongyang and led them to strive for the patriotic undertaking for reunification, so that they could play a vanguard role in materializing the solidarity between the compatriots in the north and abroad.

The overseas Koreans who expressed their willingness to visit Pyongyang were all different from one another in social position, status and career. Some of them were on the payroll of the US authorities, some had once held important posts in political and military circles in south Korea and some were capitalists, clergymen, famous educationists or scientists. Others were long-standing opposition figures who had struggled for the democratization of south Korean society, some had followed the anti-communist road all their lives, and some had even committed crimes against the nation. Most of them had been against communism and against the north in their ideologies and political views.

Nevertheless, if they were aspiring after the country's reunification, Kim Jong Il gave them a warm welcome, overlooking their pasts and transcending the differences in ideology and political view.

He gladly welcomed them to visit the northern part of Korea, and made every arrangement for them to sit together with their fellow countrymen in the homeland and talk about reunification in an open-minded manner.

Following the road of patriotism for reunification opened by Kim Jong Il, President Choe Hong Hui of the International Taekwon-Do Federation visited the northern part of Korea from his home in Canada in September 1980, followed by the Rev. Kim Song Rak, president of the Society for the Promotion of National Reunification and adviser to the South Korean Churches Association in the United States, in the summer of the following year, and by Chairman Choe Tok Sin of the Paedal National Association in the United States. Besides, composer Yun I Sang from West Germany and many other noted compatriots in Europe and the United States came to Pyongyang one after another.

Fathoming their wishes and aspirations to redeem themselves from their pasts and contribute at least to the cause of national reunification, the historic task of the nation, Kim Jong Il arranged for them to meet with President Kim Il Sung.

The overseas personages who returned from their visit to the northern part of the country where the soul of the nation is alive and the spirit of national prosperity is vibrant, published in books and articles or told the overseas Koreans what they had seen and felt. Many books and articles written by them, such as *The Nation and I*, *Crossing the Division*, *The Uncompleted Diary at Home Village*, and *The People of the Northern Part Whom I Met*, heightened the wish of overseas compatriots to visit the socialist motherland, and further stimulated their ardour for the reunification of the country.

Kim Jong Il ensured that overseas compatriots with different ideologies, political views, religious beliefs and careers actively turned out in the work of forming progressive and patriotic overseas organizations, thus spurring the maturity of conditions for solidarity between the northern and overseas Korean compatriots.

A large number of overseas compatriots in various parts of the world came to the homeland and expressed their willingness to take part in the patriotic movement for the nation in their respective regions and countries. They readjusted their existing organizations that had been formed at random or actively participated in forming progressive organizations for independence, democracy and reunification.

The compatriots of all strata in Los Angeles, in the United States, organized the Association for National Reunification in North America (Thonghyop) in February 1987, and Korean nationals in the then Soviet Union proclaimed in November 1989 the formation of the Association for the Promotion of the Reunification of Korea with the ideal of love for the country and the nation.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that the dialogues and negotiations between the northern and overseas compatriots were held in an active way, with the result that all overseas compatriots rallied around the great national united front for national reunification.

The Committee for the Peaceful Reunification of the Fatherland and other relevant institutions and organizations in the north sent letters to overseas democratic figures and religious bodies suggesting multilateral contacts, dialogues and negotiations, and launched energetic activities for the purpose, in order to realize solidarity between the northern compatriots and those abroad.

As a result, the chairman of the Overseas Christians Federation for Korean Unification in West Germany and his party visited Pyongyang in June 1981 and had contacts with the Committee for the Peaceful Reunification of the Fatherland. Both of them reached an agreement on holding many-sided dialogues between the Korean nationals at home and abroad, in order to form a joint consultative organization at the earliest date for founding the DFRK. On the basis of this success, an agreement was reached on holding a dialogue between the northern and overseas compatriots and Christians on national reunification, followed by brisk preparations for the dialogue.

Kim Jong Il was deeply concerned with the successful holding of the dialogue, a big step towards formation of the united front.

To the delegation composed of politicians, Christians, scholars, professors and men of the press and a famous art troupe to be dispatched to the dialogue, he taught that although the overseas compatriots and Christians taking part in the dialogue had been influenced by anti-communism, they should treat them warmly and broadmindedly with compatriotic affection, and show them the noble features of true patriots and genuine revolutionaries. He also said that during the period of dialogue a joint art performance on an “evening of culture” staged by both artistes from the homeland and overseas compatriots, a joint demonstration by Taekwon-Do instructors from home and abroad and a Korean film show should be organized.

Foreseeing that there would be obstructive manoeuvres by separatists within and without against the dialogue, Kim Jong Il adopted appropriate countermeasures.

Under the deep concern of Kim Jong Il, the dialogue between the northern compatriots and overseas compatriots and Christian compatriots was held in Vienna, Austria, from November 3 to 6, 1981.

This dialogue, the first of its kind in the 36 years of the country’s division, was an important occasion for promoting reconciliation and unity between the two sides, and accelerating the country’s independent and peaceful reunification.

The dialogue participants published a joint statement, which confirmed the policy of founding the DFRK as a “reunification programme which correctly embodies the historical desire of the nation and takes account of the internal and external conditions”, and adopted with unanimous approval an appeal to all Korean compatriots at home and abroad.

The dialogue was an important step forward in the implementation of the national task of the country’s independent and peaceful reunification. It instilled in all the compatriots aspiring after reunification confidence and courage in the conviction that if the compatriots at home and abroad were united based on the national ideal, they could do a fine job for the reunification of the country. At the same time, it dealt a telling blow to the separatists within and without obstructing national reunion and reunification and seeking the perpetual division of the country, running counter to the trend of the times.



On the basis of this success, Kim Jong Il ensured that the dialogue was carried on and developed as a pan-compatriotic dialogue.

As a result, the second dialogue of the northern and overseas compatriots and Christian compatriots for national reunification was held in Helsinki, Finland, in December 1982. In December 1984 a pan-compatriotic dialogue between the northern and overseas compatriots was held in Vienna, Austria, followed by the formation of the National Alliance for the Country's Reunification.

The National Alliance for the Country's Reunification was a non-permanent consultative body for ensuring a broad and normal dialogue between the northern and overseas compatriots. The formation of this body provided a framework for promoting unity between fellow countrymen scattered around the world, rousing them energetically to the patriotic struggle for national reunification, overcoming the spontaneous and dispersed character of the reunification movement and re-launching this movement purposefully and in a unified way.

Thanks to the driving force of the great national united front and the leadership of Kim Jong Il, the dialogue between the northern and overseas compatriots proceeded briskly, giving rise in the latter half of the 1980s to the formation of the Headquarters for the Promotion of the Pan-National Rally for the Country's Peace and Reunification in Japan, America and Europe.

All this showed that the conditions for pan-national dialogue and negotiations and for the tripartite solidarity among Koreans in the north, the south and abroad were mature.

On the occasion of the 13<sup>th</sup> World Festival of Youth and Students, held in Pyongyang in 1989, Kim Jong Il provided an opportunity for the compatriots at home and abroad attending the festival to gather, exchange opinions and achieve solidarity.

The compatriots attending the festival gathered with a burning desire for national reunification, exchanged opinions and conducted various activities for strengthening solidarity in the struggle for national reunification. Of special significance here was the Rally for Promoting National Reunification held on July 9, 1989, at the Pyongyang Indoor Stadium and attended by more than 10,000 Korean compatriots at home and abroad,

including Korean nationals in Japan and 3,000 compatriots from other parts of the world such as the then Soviet Union, China, America, Europe and Australia.

The rally gave full support to the proposal of the Committee for the Peaceful Reunification of the Fatherland for organizing a significant pan-national rally for national reunification at Panmunjom on August 15, 1990, with the delegates of compatriots from the north, the south and abroad. The rally also adopted unanimously the Declaration on National Reunification and the Appeal to Compatriots at Home and Abroad.

The Rally for Promoting National Reunification brought about the convergence of the opinions of the compatriots by giving play to the patriotic desire to put an end to the national division and hasten the day of reunification, demonstrated to the whole world that the aspiration of the Korean people was solely national independence and the country's reunification, despite their differences in the place of residence, ideas and ideals, and further strengthened the solidarity among Korean compatriots at home and abroad.

---

---

## CHAPTER 26

# FOR INDEPENDENCE, PEACE AND FRIENDSHIP

### 1. A HISTORIC VISIT TO CHINA

The Communist Party and national leadership of China had long looked forward to a visit by Kim Jong Il. And in April 1982, while in Korea to extend congratulations to President Kim Il Sung on his 70<sup>th</sup> birthday, General Secretary of the Central Committee of the CPC Hu Yaobang grasped Kim Jong Il firmly by the hand, and told him that the entire Chinese people were earnestly awaiting a visit to China by him. Then in September of the same year, he told Kim Il Sung, who was on a visit to China, that he was eagerly looking forward to Kim Jong Il's visit to China. Deeply appreciative of this heartfelt desire of the Chinese leaders and people, and with the noble intention of boosting the progress of Korea-China friendship, which Kim Il Sung together with the older generation of Chinese leaders had caused to blossom, from generation to generation, Kim Jong Il decided on a trip to China.

On May 21, 1983, the widespread publicity given by the Chinese media to Kim Jong Il's work, titled, *Let Us Advance under the Banner of Marxism-Leninism and Juche Idea*, raised worldwide speculation that Kim Jong Il was about to visit China.

In June 1983, amidst great attention and expectations worldwide, starting with political and media circles and spreading to social circles, Kim Jong Il embarked on his trip to China. Enjoying an enthusiastic welcome from the Chinese leaders and people and their treatment overflowing with warmth, Kim Jong Il opened a new chapter in Korea-China friendship.

Although it was an unofficial visit, the Chinese side made unprecedentedly

lavish preparations for it, and the Party and government even sent high-ranking officials to the border city of Dandong to greet Kim Jong Il with all courtesy.

When Kim Jong Il arrived at Beijing Railway Station on June 2, he found it jam-packed with people there to welcome him in their best holiday attire, clasping bunches of flowers and waving coloured ribbons and flowery towels. Hu Yaobang, at the head of a group of senior officials of the Party, government and army, met Kim Jong Il on the station concourse. Apart from on the occasion of Kim Il Sung's earlier visit to China, this was the first time for a General Secretary of the Communist Party of China to come personally to the railway station or airport to meet a foreign guest.

Such a grand reception and welcome, dispensing with diplomatic protocol, was an effusive sign of the happiness of the Chinese leadership and people at meeting Kim Jong Il and testimony to how deep the sentiment of friendship of the Chinese people was toward the Korean people.

Despite the fact that he had just returned from a trip abroad, and the sixth sessions of China's National People's Congress and People's Political Consultative Committee were due, and so this was a very busy time, Hu put off pressing matters of State and the Party to attend personally to all the details of Kim Jong Il's scheduled itinerary to the exclusion of everything else, starting with meeting him and accompanying him on his tour of some of China's regions.

Kim Jong Il repeatedly asked to be accompanied by lower-ranking officials on his regional tour, but Hu was adamant, and insisted on going with him, regardless of his busy schedule. Whether it was a courtesy call, a banquet, a discussion, or whatever, Hu took every opportunity to be present; he was with Kim Jong Il for over 50 hours.

Hu Yaobang arranged every convenience for Kim Jong Il to understand China as well as possible and to meet the members of the Presidium of the Political Bureau of the Central Committee of the CPC, members and candidate members of the Political Bureau, secretaries of the Secretariat, and vice-premiers and members of the State Council.

Kim Jong Il was given an especially warm reception by Deng Xiaoping, head of the CPC's Advisory Committee.

Meeting Deng Xiaoping, Kim Jong Il said that he was afraid that the extraordinary welcome he had received must have interfered with the workers' production activities and the students' studies, and that it seemed that he had not kept his promise that this visit would be an unofficial one. Thereupon, Deng said that it would only be an unofficial one if it were not reported in the newspapers, and that it was normal to treat an honoured guest in this way.

Kim Jong Il received warm and sincere welcomes and a large number of presents not only from the CPC Central Committee but also from local Party organizations and the units he inspected. This clearly showed that Kim Jong Il robustly pushed forward the traditional friendship between Korea and China put in place by Kim Il Sung.

In the course of his tour of China, Kim Jong Il left a deep and indelible impression on the Chinese leaders and people, and further deepened the feeling of friendship between Korea and China.

The speeches and talks Kim Jong Il gave at meetings and banquets during his visit to China aroused deep feelings among the Chinese leadership. At the grand reception banquet on the first day of his visit, Kim Jong Il affirmed that just as the revolutionary struggles of the peoples of Korea and China were continuing from generation to generation, so the traditional friendship and solidarity between the parties and peoples of the two countries should be carried on from generation to generation, as the strengthening of the progress of this traditional friendship and solidarity was an imperative demand welling up from the basic interests of the revolutions of the two countries.

In the course of talks and consultations with top-ranking Chinese cadres on numerous occasions, Kim Jong Il pointed out the necessity to consolidate the progress of Korea-China friendship from generation to generation, expounded on Korea's revolutionary struggle and construction, and the reunification issue. They also had frank and open-minded discussions on international matters of common concern.

On several occasions Kim Jong Il particularly expounded on the unshakable stance of the Workers' Party of Korea regarding vigorously strengthening the development of the traditional friendship between Korea

and China based on the solid friendship between President Kim Il Sung and the Chinese leadership.

Given a tumultuous send-off by the Chinese people, Kim Jong Il left Beijing on June 3 on an extensive regional tour of Qingdao, Nanjing, Hangzhou and Shanghai. On this tour, he met people of all walks of life, firming up the feelings of friendship between the peoples of the two countries.

Wherever he went on this tour—whether visiting the North Sea Fleet and the brewery in Qingdao, or the Mai Ling Canned Foods Factory in Shanghai—his breadth of knowledge of the relevant item of attention astonished the personnel there.

On the first leg of his regional inspection tour, Kim Jong Il visited the base of the People's Liberation Army's North Sea Fleet in the port city of Qingdao in Shandong Province. As the captain of a missile frigate was explaining to the visitor the modern armament of his ship, both the Chinese interpreter and the one in Kim Jong Il's entourage had difficulty distinguishing between a torpedo and a mine in their translation.

Thereupon, Kim Jong Il explained that what they meant was a depth charge, and that what they had just been viewing was sound-detection gear, giving an explanation of tasks and armaments of the frigate to the interpreters and the other people accompanying him.

Looking round the Mai Ling Canned Foods Factory in Shanghai, after he had inspected the process of canning meat, vegetables and fruits, Kim Jong Il asked how the cans were sterilized. When the interpreter translated the reply as they were sterilized for eight minutes at 120 degrees C, Kim Jong Il surprised everyone by saying that the temperature should be raised by four to five degrees. The interpreter thereupon again asked the official in the sterilizing section what the temperature was, and had to admit, to his chagrin, that he had made a mistake, and that the sterilization temperature was indeed 124 degrees C.

Witnessing these incidents, a Chinese leader who had been accompanying Kim Jong Il on his tour right from the start was unable to conceal his admiration that at every factory he visited there was nothing that Kim Jong Il did not know.

During his tour of China Kim Jong Il displayed his lofty character and sublime and attractive humanity.

Returning to Beijing after winding up the regional tour, Kim Jong Il paid a call at the residence of Deng Yingchao, widow of China's former Premier Zhou Enlai and veteran female revolutionary, and chairwoman of the National Committee of the Chinese People's Political Consultative Committee.

Stepping out of his car, he rushed towards Deng Yingchao, then in her eighties, who was hurrying to meet him, and gave her a warm handshake and a genial greeting.

Grasping Kim Jong Il by both hands, Deng Yingchao was as delighted as when she had met President Kim Il Sung himself, and she said in a voice choked with emotion: "Coming here like this, you have made my house and garden shine with the rays of friendship!"

She ushered him inside, and they sat together. Before their conversation, Kim Jong Il rose to say a few words of courtesy. As he did so, Deng Yingchao sprang to her feet, flustered, and over and over again begged him to remain seated. But, as Kim Jong Il insisted on remaining standing while he delivered his salutations, Deng Yingchao said that she too would remain standing.

Bowing to Deng Yingchao's wish, Kim Jong Il resumed his seat. He then conveyed greetings and kind regards from President Kim Il Sung, and informed Deng Yingchao that the President was in good health. He also told her that the Korean people held Deng Yingchao in high esteem as a female revolutionary who had travelled a long road of revolutionary struggle for many years.

Kim Jong Il said that President Kim Il Sung cherished affectionate remembrances of the meaningful days when he had been especially close to Zhou Enlai, and that although Zhou Enlai had been dead for many years the President never lost an opportunity to reminisce about him.

Known as a hardy female revolutionary who did not know how to cry, nevertheless, hearing Kim Jong Il's heartfelt words, Deng Yingchao was unable to suppress her strong emotion; her eyes brimmed with tears, and she was too choked up to speak. All those present too shed scalding tears.

When it was Deng Yingchao's turn to speak, the Chinese translator was too overcome with emotion to do his job, and the interpreter accompanying Kim Jong Il had to translate Deng Yingchao's words full of sincerity.

Before bidding him farewell, Deng Yingchao told Kim Jong Il that his visit to China was incomparably more meaningful than that of anyone else except President Kim Il Sung, and that she would never forget it.

Taking his leave, Kim Jong Il several times urged Deng Yingchao not to accompany him down the steps, but she protested. "When will I see Comrade Kim Jong Il again? When the Party leader of a most cherished brotherly country comes all the way to my house to visit me, how can I simply see him off from the doorway? I certainly cannot see off the leader of the Korean people in such a manner." Saying that she had to accompany him as far as his car, and grasping him firmly by the hand, she walked down the steps with him. Moreover, she stayed in the same spot until Kim Jong Il's car disappeared into the distance, gazing at it with adoring eyes.

Whether he was meeting China's veteran revolutionaries or ordinary people, Kim Jong Il unfolded a beautiful picture of Korea-China friendship.

During his tour of China, Kim Jong Il covered 25,000 *ri* (one *ri* equals 0.4 km-Tr.) by train, and leading Chinese officials even went so far as to toast him on his "25,000-*ri* Long March".

Even while hastening on this long journey Kim Jong Il personally took care of many matters, reaching decisions one by one. In the sweltering summer heat of the Chinese mainland, while keeping to his tight schedule of speeches, discussions and inspections, Kim Jong Il kept up with his ordinary workload.

Through a variety of talks and consultations, Kim Jong Il discussed with his hosts in a sincere manner important matters of mutual concern both national and international, and through his tightly scheduled regional inspection tour and informal contacts, became closer to China's leadership, and responsible officials in the Party, government and military. Moreover, by inspecting factories, enterprises, military establishments, monumental buildings, revolutionary sites and scenic spots, he became acquainted with China's reality. In the evenings he personally prepared speeches and got ready for discussions and meetings assigned for the following day.



That was not all. From time to time, while touring a city, he would take notice of the local people's neat clothing and shoes, and when he returned to his lodging he would discuss how to improve the clothing and footwear of the Korean people, and then give detailed instructions to the relevant officials back home by phone. One evening, he gave meticulous instructions to his entourage that when they returned to Korea they should complete manufacturing essential equipment that President Kim Il Sung was concerned about.

Just as at home so during his China trip, the light in the room where Kim Jong Il was working would sometimes shine all night.

At the completion of his historic visit to the People's Republic of China, Kim Jong Il left Beijing and returned home on June 13.

Two days later, the Seventh Plenary Meeting of the Sixth Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea heard a report on Kim Jong Il's historic visit to the People's Republic of China.

## 2. THE 13<sup>TH</sup> WORLD FESTIVAL OF YOUTH AND STUDENTS

The 13<sup>th</sup> World Festival of Youth and Students, known as the Pyongyang Festival, wrote a brilliant page in the annals of the world festival of youth and students.

The successful Pyongyang Festival was a fruition of Kim Jong Il's leadership.

Kim Jong Il ensured that Pyongyang proposed hosting the 13<sup>th</sup> World Festival of Youth and Students, and the noble ideal of the festival movement was maintained steadfastly.

Since the First Festival held in Prague, capital of the then Czechoslovakia, in July 1947, the festival had contributed over the previous 40 years to fighting against imperialism, ensuring the peace and security of the world and promoting friendship and unity among youth and students the world over. Entering the 1980s, it began to lose its revolutionary nature; it was reduced to an international venue for merry-making.

It became imperative to defend the anti-imperialist character and militant solidarity inherent in the festival.

Kim Jong Il thought that the 13<sup>th</sup> World Festival of Youth and Students should be held in Korea, a country that was upholding the banner of anti-imperialist struggle and socialism, with clear-cut ideals, so as to become a grand political festival that would live up to its original progressive nature and open a new phase in the effort for anti-imperialist solidarity and anti-imperialist joint struggle.

It was not easy to host the festival in Asia, in which such a festival had never been held, particularly in Korea, which is divided into two and is in constant danger of imperialist aggression and war.

Nevertheless, Kim Jong Il saw to it that energetic external activities were undertaken to realize Pyongyang's bid for the 13<sup>th</sup> festival by youth and students' delegations of Korea in major international conferences and gatherings sponsored by the World Federation of Democratic Youth and the International Union of Students and in various countries. He clarified their orientation of concrete activities and tactics to prevail over those who were not happy with Pyongyang's bid for the festival, those who attempted to weaken the anti-imperialist nature of the festival, and those who were showing reservations about Pyongyang's bid.

He ensured that the festival's slogan was "For Anti-Imperialist Solidarity, Peace and Friendship!" and that the slogan was decided as part of a package deal at the international meeting that would decide the venue of the festival.

Thus, the US-led reactionaries' attempt to emasculate the anti-imperialist nature of the festival and weaken its political significance was frustrated, and Pyongyang was decided as the host of the festival.

After that, Kim Jong Il concerned himself with the preparations for the festival.

Brisk external activities were conducted to create an international atmosphere favourable for the festival and to highlight the significance of the festival by inviting large numbers of youth and student delegations and high-level guests of honour, including heads of State and party.

On February 15, 1987, while talking to the senior officials of the Party Central Committee, Kim Jong Il got acquainted with the preparations that had been made, and said that relevant officials of the Party Central Committee should throw themselves wholeheartedly into the task.

In order to highlight the noble ideal and political character of the festival, and train youth and students politically and ideologically, he held a talk with the senior officials of the Party Central Committee on October 12, 1988, under the title, *The Present Times and the Tasks of the Young People*. After analyzing the historic mission and duty of the youth movement, he clarified the ways for developing the movement as required by the present times.

Calling on the young people to rise up for the anti-imperialist struggle cherishing their mission for the times and history, he said:

**“The young people of our times must meet their honourable responsibility to history and mankind by dedicating themselves to the anti-imperialist cause of independence, find the true value of a genuine life in this cause and add luster to their lives.”**

He continued that young people should strive to defend the peace and security of the world, and to develop sound ideas and culture that conform to the people’s aspirations for independence. Pointing out the heavy responsibility the young people of Korea had assumed for the times, he said that the 13<sup>th</sup> World Festival of Youth and Students should be held in line with its ideals of anti-imperialism, peace and friendship.

Kim Jong Il launched a gigantic operation to round off the construction projects and furnish the venues for the festival events at a high standard, and roused the entire Party, the whole country and all the people to their implementation, supported by colossal sums of money and materials.

Under his guidance, the material preparations were also made for a successful festival.

Kim Jong Il channelled his particular effort to preparing all the festival events so that they could be held on a level unprecedented in the festivals’ history in their contents, forms and scales.

He saw to it that the opening and closing ceremonies and all other events of the festival were prepared in a characteristic fashion and in conformity

with the festival ideals, so as to upgrade the political, ideological, cultural and artistic standards of the festival.

For the opening and closing ceremonies, the part and parcel of the festival, he went over their plans on two occasions, on June 6 and July 30, 1988, respectively.

At that time, to underline the fact the festival was being held in Korea, creative workers were putting stress on showing at the opening and closing ceremonies the successes achieved by Korea in the political, economic and cultural fields.

Grasping this deviation in their plans, Kim Jong Il pointed out their short-sightedness, and said that the ceremonies should create a holiday atmosphere acceptable to people from all over the world and that the feeling of welcome and congratulations to the festival participants should run through the contents of the events.

With the seed of celebration and welcome discovered by Kim Jong Il, the opening and closing ceremonies came to be infused with the contents of extending a warm welcome and congratulations to the youth and students who would come to the festival from all parts of the world with the ideals of anti-imperialist solidarity, peace and friendship.

Putting forward the tasks for optimizing the artistic and technical rendering of the opening and closing ceremonies, he said that change of scenes at the backdrop of the ceremonies should be reduced and instead scenes of dancing and showing artistic skills should be unfolded in the arena, thus sustaining the atmosphere by means of refreshing, lively traditional dances.

He also gave instructions on the whole process of the opening ceremony—extending honour to President Kim Il Sung the moment he appears on the platform, a grand and fascinating procession of delegations entering the venue, signalling of the opening of the festival by men in military uniforms of Koguryo times blowing horns, lighting of the festival torch and performance by female taborers and a mixed brass band—and of the closing ceremony—alighting of fairies on Mt. Kumgang, stage art of folk dances and combined performance of acrobats, including trapeze artistes.

While going over the plans for the opening and closing ceremonies for



**Kim Jong Il, in company with Kim Il Sung, at the opening ceremony of the 13<sup>th</sup> WFYS (July 1, 1989)**

the first time, Kim Jong Il came to know that it was planned that, following the custom of the festival, some young men in Western suits would blow bugles signalling the opening of the festival. Instructing the officials to prepare costumes with a national flavour, he said that the signalmen in graceful and yet glamorous uniforms of Koguryo generals would look wonderful. He continued that it would be ideal for the signalmen to blow horns, not bugles or trumpets.

The general's uniform of Koguryo days is a military uniform proper to warriors, a uniform dignified, glamorous and overflowing with the resourcefulness and valour of the Korean people. The horn, an acme of the industrial art of Koguryo, is a national instrument with a low and gentle tone.

When the uniforms and horns were produced, he examined them in person and expressed his satisfaction only after he heard that they had been authenticated by the scholars of the Folklore Museum. And learning that the signalmen were expected to number 30, he advised that 300 men in three rows would be more suitable, as that number would match the spacious May Day Stadium.

In this way, the general's uniform and the horn of Koguryo days, which had been handed down as mere relics of Korean ancestors, came to make their appearance at the Pyongyang Festival, demonstrating the mettle and valour of the Korean nation.

The combined performance of acrobats, which captivated the spectators during the closing ceremony, became a masterpiece of acrobatic art under Kim Jong Il's initiative and guidance.

On the day of the closing ceremony a globular stage symbolic of the earth was to float in the air against the backdrop of the star-studded night sky. Spotlights were to illuminate the stage. From five spots, symbolic of the five continents, male and female trapeze artistes were to fly towards the stage.

This enchanting scene of the theme, *We Have Many Friends*, was an indispensable part of embodying the ideals of the festival in the closing ceremony.

While enjoying the rehearsal of the opening and closing ceremonies, Kim Jong Il said that it was a novel idea to stage a fascinating acrobatic

performance and that the performance at the closing ceremony would further highlight the ideas of friendship and unity.

Kim Jong Il also ensured that the artistic and cultural programmes were so arranged as to meet the ideals of the festival, the festival songs, including *Song of the Pyongyang Festival*, and various festival posters were created in a large number and disseminated, and the festival venues were decorated appropriately.

The 13<sup>th</sup> World Festival of Youth and Students was held from July 1 to 8, 1989. Participating in the festival were 20,000 foreigners, including delegations of 1,245 youth and students' organizations in 180 countries and delegates of 64 regional and international organizations. Hundreds of high-ranking personages, including the president of Zimbabwe, chairman of the Revolutionary Party of Tanzania and heads of party and government of 90 countries, participated in the festival as guests of honour. The holding in Pyongyang of an international festival with the participation of so many delegations and so high-ranking guests of honour was the first of its kind in the history of Korea.

The festival gained further momentum by participation by a great number of overseas Koreans and a delegate of Jondaehyop (National Council of Student Representatives), an organization of one million south Korean students, who came to Pyongyang at great personal risk because of the hostility of the south Korean authorities.

Kim Jong Il, in company with President Kim Il Sung, attended the opening and closing ceremonies of the festival, highlighting the meaningfulness of the festival.

The highlights of the Pyongyang Festival, which opened amidst world attention, were its opening and closing ceremonies held in the May Day Stadium. All the scenes, from the traditional lighting of the festival torch, the first scene of the opening ceremony, to the chorus and dance *Let Us Meet Again on the Road of Peace*, the last scene of the closing ceremony, were uniquely spectacular scenes and masterpieces of human wisdom.

The symposium on anti-imperialist solidarity and other political events were held with success in various parts of Pyongyang. The mass gymnastics display *Korea Today* staged by 50,000 youth and students, torchlight

procession, 5,000-strong artistic performance *Song of Joy*, and other colourful cultural and artistic events, sports events, setting up of clubs of various nations, hosting of the Day of Korea were all held on levels highest in the history of the festival for their political and ideological contents, unique forms, national colouring and high degree of discipline and organization.

The Pyongyang Festival held under the slogan, “For Anti-Imperialist Solidarity, Peace and Friendship!” discussed the urgent problems facing the world, and adopted an appeal which extended encouragement to the people of the world who are fighting against war and for peace, democracy, national sovereignty and social progress, and support to the revolutionary cause of the Korean people.

The 13<sup>th</sup> World Festival of Youth and Students demonstrated to the whole world the might of the Korean people, including its youth and students, who are united single-heartedly around the WPK and their leader, and the advantages of the socialist system of Korean style. It also contributed greatly to consolidating the ties of friendship and unity among the progressive youth and students of the world, to inspiring the world youth and student movement and the movement of the progressive people of the world against war and imperialism and for peace and independence, and to accelerating global independence.

The world lavished praise on the Pyongyang Festival, calling it “a perfect festival going beyond human imagination”, and “the greatest festival, unprecedented in the history of the festival movement”.



## NOTES

**1. O Jin U**—A veteran of the anti-Japanese revolution. After the country's liberation, he served as Chief of the General Staff of the Korean People's Army and Minister of the People's Armed Forces. He was conferred the title of Marshal of the Korean People's Army on April 20, 1992. He died on February 25, 1995. p.3

**2. Rim Chun Chu**—A veteran of the anti-Japanese revolution. In the days of the anti-Japanese armed struggle, he engaged in Party work in the Korean People's Revolutionary Army. After the country's liberation, he worked at important posts of the Workers' Party of Korea and the State. He was appointed Vice-President of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea in April 1983 and died on April 27, 1988. p.3

**3. Choe Hyon**—A veteran of the anti-Japanese revolution. His original name was Choe Tuk Kwon. During the Fatherland Liberation War, he fought as commander of a division and later of a corps of the Korean People's Army. After the war he served as Minister of the People's Armed Forces and Vice-Chairman of the DPRK National Defence Commission. He died on April 9, 1982. p.8

**4. Five major fronts of socialist construction**—Capital construction, industry, agriculture, transport and fisheries. At the Eighth Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea held in February 1974, Kim Il Sung put forward the policy of scaling the objectives of the Six-Year Plan of the National Economy ahead of schedule and hitting the targets of socialist economic construction in the near future by enlisting the entire Party and all the people. Kim Il Sung made it clear that in this grand socialist construction efforts should be concentrated on the

five fronts for the immediate period ahead. p.21

**5. O Jung Hup**—Commander of the Seventh Regiment of the Korean People’s Revolutionary Army during the anti-Japanese armed struggle. In the days of the Arduous March (December 1938-March 1939) he disguised his regiment as the Headquarters and lured the pursuing Japanese troops to safeguard the real Headquarters. He was killed in action on December 17, 1939. p. 40

**6. Panmunjom Incident**—An incident the US troops in south Korea provoked on August 18, 1976, in the Panmunjom joint security area. The incident is also called the “August 18 incident”. That day the GIs began to cut down a tree within the area. Their action breached a prior agreement that such work must be agreed upon by both sides first. As the guards of the Korean People’s Army demanded suspension of their illegal act, the GIs attacked them. The hand-to-hand fighting that ensued claimed several casualties on both sides. p. 47

**7. Raktong River**—The river that flows from Kangwon Province in south Korea to the South Sea of Korea, through North and South Kyongsang provinces.

In the first period of the Fatherland Liberation War the Korean People’s Army launched a counterattack against the aggressors and advanced as far as the line of the Raktong River. p. 54

**8. Juche farming method**—A method of farming scientifically and technologically as suited to the climatic and soil conditions of Korea, biological features of crops and actual characteristics of every field, so as to gather rich harvests. Embodying the requirements of the Juche idea that every undertaking should be done to conform to the actual situation by enlisting the creative wisdom and strength of the masses, it demands that high-yielding seeds should be cultivated, the principle of the right crop at the opportune time and on the right soil observed in farming and the requirements and opinions of the peasants respected in guiding their work. p. 66

**9. Kapsan-Musan Guard Road**—A border guard road the Japanese imperialists built between Kapsan and Musan, a northern border region, in order to check a thrust into Korea by the Korean People’s Revolutionary Army.

The main force of the Korean People's Revolutionary Army, under Kim Il Sung's command, marched 40 km along this road in broad daylight on May 21, 1939, when it made a thrust into Korea. p. 94

**10. Battle in the Musan area**—A campaign the main force of the Korean People's Revolutionary Army fought under Kim Il Sung's command in the Musan area of northern Korea on May 22 and 23, 1939. The victorious campaign demonstrated the might of the Korean People's Revolutionary Army, inspired the Korean people with confidence in national liberation and dealt a heavy political and military blow to the Japanese military occupiers. p. 94

**11. 400-km-long Journey for Learning**—A journey Kim Il Sung made all alone at the age of 11. As he was instructed by his father that one must know Korea well to fight for the Korean revolution, he left Badaogou, Changbai County, China, on March 16, 1923, and arrived at his native home in Mangyongdae, Korea, on March 29. p. 101

**12. 400-km-long Journey for National Liberation**—A journey Kim Il Sung made with the determination that he would not return to the motherland until it became independent. He left his native home in Mangyongdae on January 22, 1925, and arrived at Badaogou, Changbai County, China, on February 3. p. 101

**13. Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement**—An all-people movement to step up socialist construction by dint of the three revolutions—ideological, technological and cultural. It is a movement to transform all members of the society into true revolutionaries, to equip the national economy with the latest technology, and to improve the working people's cultural and technical attainments and provide them with the conditions for cultured lives. p. 111

**14. Down-with-Imperialism Union**—An organization Kim Il Sung formed on October 17, 1926. The immediate task of the union was to overthrow Japanese imperialism and achieve Korea's liberation and independence, and its final objective was to build socialism and communism in Korea and, further, destroy imperialism everywhere and build communism throughout the world. p. 151

**15. December 1956 Plenary Meeting of the WPK**—The Plenary

Meeting of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea held from December 11 to 13, 1956. The meeting discussed the national economic plan for 1957, the first year of the Five-Year Plan, and the ways for carrying it out. Stressing at the meeting that a great upsurge should be brought about in socialist construction by efficient political and organizational work for arousing the enthusiasm of the masses, Kim Il Sung advanced the slogan, "Let us fulfil the Five-Year Plan ahead of schedule by increased production and economization!" The meeting ushered in a period of great upsurge in socialist construction. p. 190

**16. Let-one-machine-tool-make-another movement**—A mass movement in Korea, by which every machine-tool in industrial enterprises produced one machine-tool or more in addition to its major task. While guiding a flax mill on the spot in Kyongsong County, North Hamgyong Province in March 1959, Kim Il Sung got acquainted with the fact that the workers in the mill produced machine-tools with the existing five cutting machines. He planned the let-one-machine-tool-make-another movement, taking his cue from this mill.

The Enlarged Meeting of the Presidium of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea, held in May 1959, decided that the movement should be conducted in all factories and other industrial enterprises. The working class in Korea produced 13,000 machine-tools in addition to their set tasks in one year. The movement was launched again in the 1980s. p. 203

**17. 519 technological innovation shock brigade**—groups organized to implement the tasks of technological revolution set forth by President Kim Il Sung at the 19<sup>th</sup> Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea. p. 243

**18. *Sea of Blood*-style opera**—An opera of a new type created to meet the demands of the new era, free from all manner of outdated patterns of the conventional opera. The creative work, applying Kim Jong Il's policy of opera revolution, is guided by the principles of serving the people, sustaining national characteristics and plainness.

The term, *Sea of Blood*-style opera, came into being in 1971, when *The Sea of Blood*, a play Kim Il Sung had produced in the 1930s, was adapted as an opera.

For the revolutionary and socialist content, introduction of stanzaic song—a basic form of people’s music—and *pangchang*, into music, and introduction of orchestral music, dance and stage art based on Korean painting, this type of opera ushered in a new era in the development of opera. p. 250

**19. *Pangchang***—a type of singing off-stage or off-screen for an opera, film, dance or play to explain or complement the inner world of the main character, the dramatic circumstances and the flow of the drama. p. 253

**20. March First Popular Uprising**—A nationwide uprising of the Korean people for independence from Japanese colonial rule. Kick-started by a mass anti-Japanese demonstration in Pyongyang on March 1, 1919, the uprising quickly spread to Seoul and the rest of Korea, and to the Korean settlements in Japan, Northeast China and the Maritime Territory of Russia. The uprising reached its climax in late March and early April, and the people participating in the uprising numbered 2 million by the end of May. Though brutally suppressed by the Japanese imperialists, the uprising demonstrated the ardent patriotism and unbreakable stamina of the Korean people, dealt a great blow to Japanese colonial rule and heightened the Korean people’s national consciousness. p. 284